Google

This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

APPLETONS'

Ar

Be
Bu

Ca
Ci
Co
Cr

Fr

H

'EN-

with

reat.

otes.

gica,

ergil.

In-

A Latin Grammar, for Schools and Colleges. Revised edition. 1881.
The Elements of Latin Grammar, for Schools.
A Latin Reader   or's Latin Grammar.
A Latin Reade
A New Latin   , Notes, and Vocabulary.

STANDARD CLASSICAL TEXT-BOOKS.

Harkness, Albert. Series of Latin Text-Books. 12mo:

A Practical Introduction to Latin Composition. For Schools and Colleges.

Cæsar's Commentaries on the Gallic War. With Notes, Dictionary, etc.

Preparatory Course in Latin Prose Authors, comprising Four Books of Cæsar's Gallic War, Sallust's Catiline, and Eight Orations of Cicero. With Notes, Illustrations, a Map of Gaul, and a Special Dictionary.

Sallust's Catiline. With Notes and a Special Dictionary.

Cicero's Select Orations. With Notes, etc.

The same, with Notes and Dictionary.

This series has received the unqualified commendation of many of the most eminent classical professors and teachers in our country, and is already in use in every State of the Union, and, indeed, in nearly all our leading classical institutions of every grade, both of sch⸺ 'd college.

Horace. See LINCOLN.

Johnson, E. A. Cicero's Select Orations. With Notes. 12mo.

Latin Speaker. See SEWALL.

Lincoln, John L. Horace. With Notes, etc. 12mo.

—— —— Livy. With Notes, Map, etc. 12mo.

Lindsay, T. B. Cornelius Nepos. With Notes, Vocabulary, Index, and Exercises. Illustrated. 12mo.

Livy. See LINCOLN.

Quintilian. See FRIEZE.

Quintus Curtius Rufus. See CROSBY, W. H.

Sallust. See BUTLER and STURGUS, and HARKNESS.

Sewall, Frank. Latin Speaker. Easy Dialogues, and other Selections for Memorizing and Declaiming in the Latin Language. 12mo.

Spencer, J. A. Cæsar's Commentaries. With Notes, etc. 12mo.

Tacitus. See TYLER.

Thacher, Thomas A. Cicero's de Officiis. Three Books, with Notes and Conspectus. 12mo.

Tyler, W. S. Germania and Agricola of Tacitus. With Notes, etc. 12mo.

—— —— Histories of Tacitus. With Notes. 12mo.

Vergil. See FRIEZE.
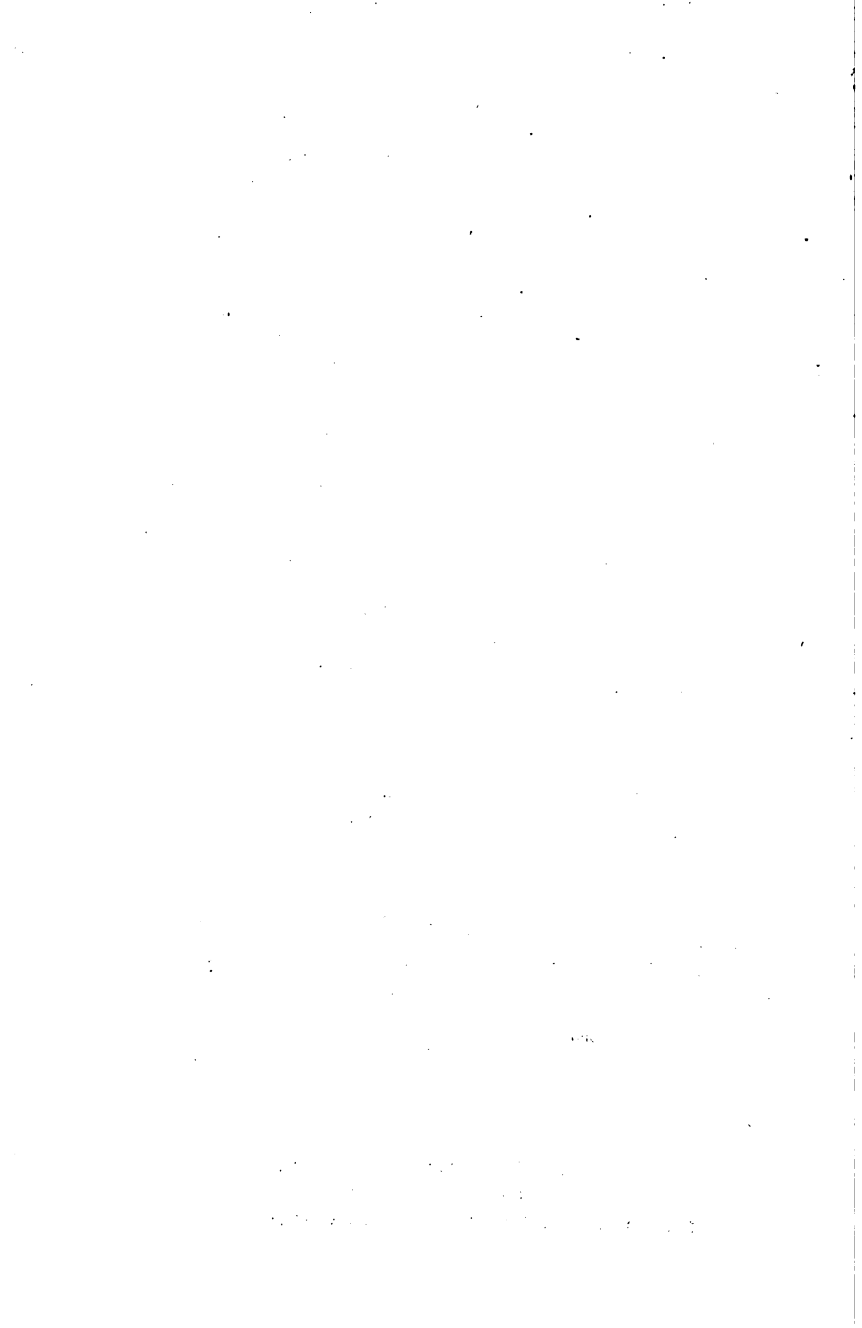
GREEK.

Anabasis. See BOISE and OWEN.

Antigone. See SMEAD.

Arnold, T. K. First Greek Book. Edited by SPENCER. 12mo.

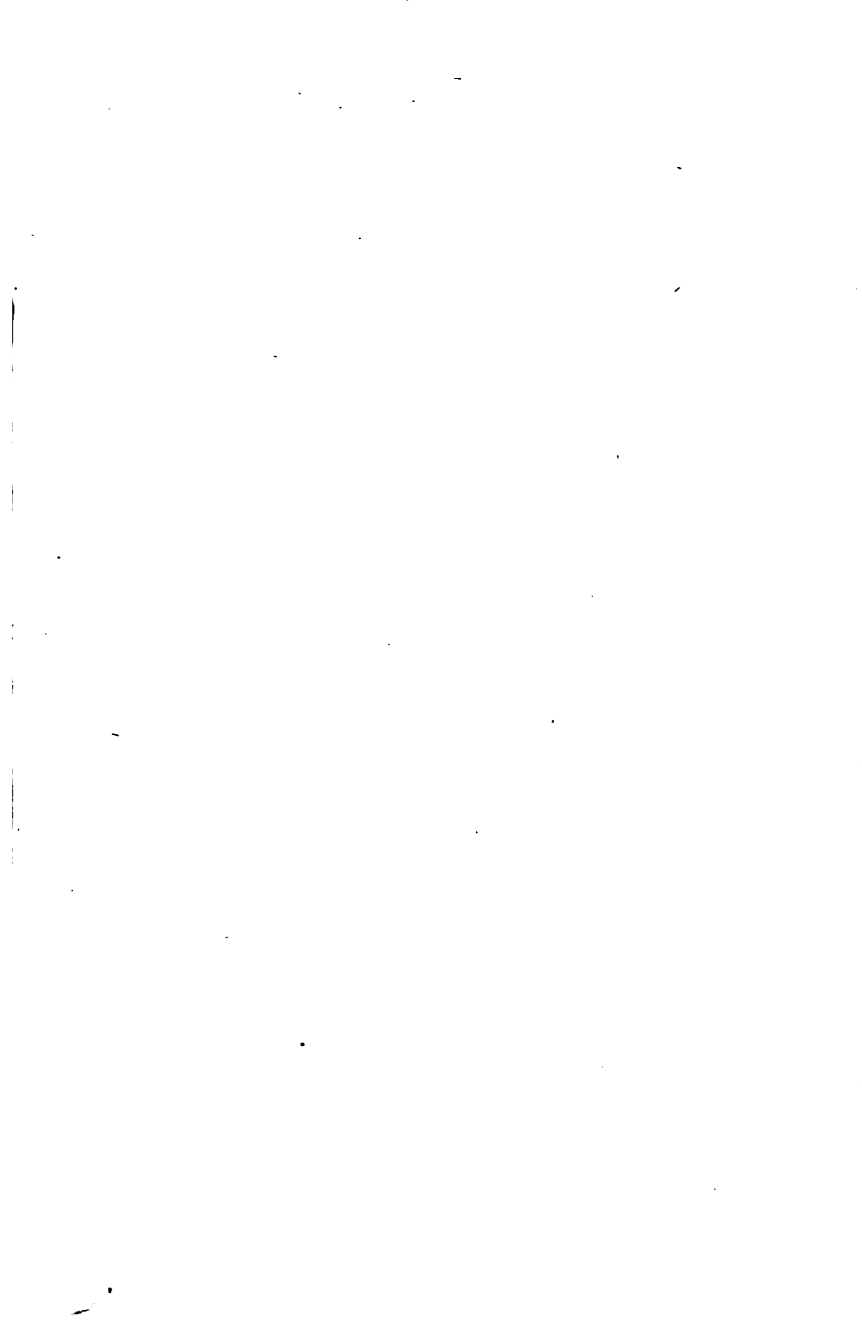—— —— Greek Prose Composition. By SPENCER. 12mo.

—— —— Second Greek Prose Composition. By SPENCER. 12mo.
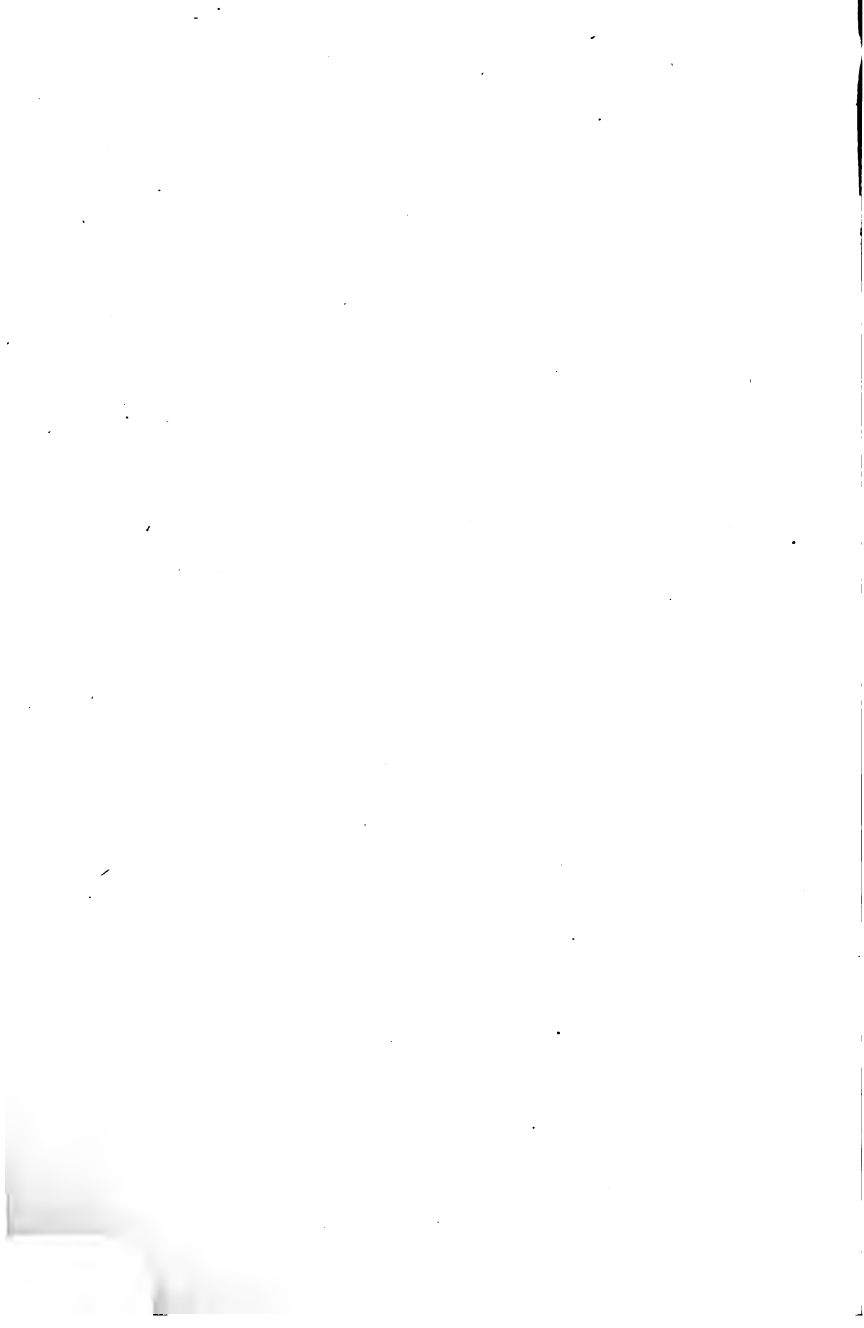
A

COMPLETE LATIN COURSE

THE

FIRST YEAR,

COMPRISING

AN OUTLINE OF LATIN GRAMMAR, AND A SERIES OF
PROGRESSIVE EXERCISES IN READING AND
WRITING LATIN, WITH FREQUENT
PRACTICE IN READING
AT SIGHT.

BY

ALBERT HARKNESS, Ph.D., LL.D.,
PROFESSOR IN BROWN UNIVERSITY.

NEW YORK:

D. APPLETON AND COMPANY,
1, 3, AND 5 BOND STREET.
1884.

PREFACE.

THE volume now offered to the public is intended to furnish the pupil a complete course for his first year in the study of Latin. It conducts the beginner through the common forms and inflections of the language, introduces him to the leading principles of its syntax, and aims to prepare him to enter with success upon the consecutive study of Caesar or of any of the less difficult Latin authors. It comprises an Outline of Latin Grammar, Progressive Exercises in Reading and Writing Latin, eighteen pages of Connected Discourse from Caesar, Directions for Reading at Sight, Suggestions to the Learner, Notes, a Latin-English and an English-Latin Vocabulary.

The Paradigms and Rules are introduced in the exact form and language of the author's Grammar. Thus the great objection to many First Latin Books, that they fill the memory of the pupil with forms of statement that must be laid aside as soon as he passes to his Grammar, is entirely obviated in this volume.

The *Latin Exercises* are taken chiefly from Caesar's Commentaries on the Gallic War. They are made so strictly progressive, that the learner will find it perfectly easy, in the latter part of the volume, to make the transition from classified sentences to connected discourse. The

English Exercises are modelled after the Latin, and involve the same constructions and the same vocabulary.

The *Exercises in Reading at Sight* consist of easy passages of connected discourse from Caesar's Commentaries. They are so arranged that all the words and constructions involved in any given exercise are introduced and used in previous lessons. The pupil, therefore, who has learned all the vocabularies, and has been faithful in his other work, will find little difficulty in reading at sight in accordance with the directions given him. The important point is not that he should translate any given passage absolutely at sight, but that he should master it without help from any source whatever. The exercises are intended to encourage independent work, to promote self-reliance in study, and to give facility in reading and appreciating Latin.

The *Suggestions to the Learner* are intended not only to point out to the beginner the process by which he may most readily and surely reach the meaning of a Latin sentence, but also to aid him in expressing that meaning in idiomatic English. Experience has abundantly shown the need of such directions. The beginner's first efforts to solve the problem presented by a Latin sentence are too often little better than a series of unsuccessful conjectures, while his first translations are purely mechanical renderings, with little regard either to the thought of his author or to the proprieties of his mother-tongue.

I am happy in this connection to acknowledge my obligations to my esteemed friend, Mr. Edward H. Cutler, the accomplished Head-Master of the Newton High School. His accurate scholarship and large professional experience have contributed greatly to the value of every part of the work. The vocabularies are all from his hand.

The work which appears entire in this volume is also published without the *Grammatical Outline,* under the title: *Progressive Exercises in Reading and Writing Latin, with*

Frequent Practice in Reading at Sight, intended as a Companion Book to the Author's Latin Grammar.

Teachers who use the author's Latin Series in connection with the Standard Edition[1] of his Latin Grammar, may now choose for their classes during the first year of their Latin studies any one of the following courses : —

1. *The Complete Latin Course for the First Year.*
2. *The Grammar, and the Progressive Exercises in Reading and Writing Latin.*
3. *The Grammar, and the New Latin Reader.*

Each of these courses will be found to furnish an adequate preparation for the reading of any of the less difficult Latin authors. In making the selection, teachers will have an opportunity to gratify their individual preferences, and to consult the special needs of their schools.

---

[1] Those who retain the earlier edition of the Grammar will find the *Introductory Latin Book* and the *Latin Reader* adapted to it. The editions of Latin Authors may be had with references to either edition of the Grammar, at the option of the instructor.

BROWN UNIVERSITY, PROVIDENCE, R.I.,

July, 1883.

CONTENTS.

FIRST YEAR'S LATIN COURSE.

LESSON I.

LATIN ALPHABET.

1. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

1. LATIN GRAMMAR treats of the principles of the Latin language.

2. The Latin alphabet is the same as the English, with the omission of *w*.

3. Letters are divided according to the position of the vocal organs at the time of utterance into two general classes, vowels and consonants,[1] and these classes are again divided into various subdivisions, as seen in the following

CLASSIFICATION OF LETTERS.

I. VOWELS.

1. OPEN VOWEL[2]	a	
2. MEDIAL VOWELS	e	o
3. CLOSE VOWELS[3] i	y	u

---

[1] If the vocal organs are sufficiently open to allow an uninterrupted flow of vocal sound, a vowel is produced, otherwise a consonant; but the least open vowels are scarcely distinguishable from the most open consonants.

[2] In pronouncing the open vowel *a* as in *father*, the vocal organs are fully open. By gradually contracting them at one point and another we produce in succession the medial vowels, the close vowels, the semivowels, the nasals, the aspirate, the fricatives, and finally the mutes, in pronouncing which the closure of the vocal organs becomes complete.

[3] *E* is a *medial* vowel between the open *a* and the close *i;* *o* a *medial*

1

<div style="text-align:center">II. CONSONANTS.[1]</div>

	GUTTURALS.	DENTALS.	LABIALS.
1. SEMIVOWELS, *sonant*[2] . . .	i or j = y		v = w
2. NASALS, *sonant*	n[3]	n	m
3. ASPIRATE, *surd*[2]	h		
4. FRICATIVES, comprising :			
1. *Liquids, sonant* . .		l, r	
2. *Spirants, surd* . . .		s	f
5. MUTES, comprising:			
1. *Sonant mutes* . . .	g	d	b
2. *Surd mutes* . . .	c, k, q	t	p

NOTE. — $X = cs$, and $z = ds$, are double consonants, formed by the union of a mute with the spirant *s*.

4. Diphthongs are formed by the union of two vowels in one syllable.

NOTE. — The most common diphthongs are *ae, oe, au*, and *eu*. *Ei, oi*, and *ui* are rare.

<div style="text-align:center">PHONETIC CHANGES.</div>

22. Vowels are often weakened, *i.e.*, are often changed to weaker vowels.

The order of the vowels, from the strongest to the weakest, is as follows:

---

vowel between the open *a* and the close *u* ; *y* was introduced from the Greek.

　[1] Observe that the consonants are divided:
　　I. According to the ORGANS chiefly employed in their production, into
　　　1. Gutturals — *throat letters*, also called Palatals.
　　　2. Dentals — *teeth letters*, also called Linguals.
　　　3. Labials — *lip letters.*
　　II. According to the MANNER in which they are uttered, into
　　　1. Sonants, or *voiced letters.*
　　　2. Surds, or *voiceless letters.*
　　[2] The distinction between a *sonant* and a *surd* will be appreciated by observing the difference between the sonant *b* and its corresponding surd *p* in such words as *bad, pad*. *B* is vocalized, *p* is not.
　　[3] With the sound of *n* in *concord, linger*. It occurs before gutturals: *congruenter*, suitably.

a, o, u, e, i[1]

Thus a is changed to o . . . u . . . e . . . i.
o to u . . . e . . . i.
u to e . . . i.
e to i[2]

Carmen,[3] *carmenis, carminis,* a song, of a song; *faciō, cōn-faciō, cōn-ficiō,* I make, I accomplish; *factus, in-factus, in-fectus,* made, not made; *teneō, con-teneō, con-tineō,* I hold, I contain; *tuba, tuba-cen, tubi-cen,* a flute, a flute-player.

30. A Guttural — **c, g, q, (qu)** or **h,** — before **s** generally unites with it and forms **x**:

Ducs, dux, leader; *pācs, pāx,* peace; *rēgs, rēcs, rēx,* king; *lēgs, lēcs, lēx,* law; *coqusī, cocsī, coxī,* I have cooked; *trahsī, tracsī, traxī,* I have drawn.

31. **S** is generally changed to **r** when it stands between two vowels:

Flōsēs, flōrēs, flowers; *jūsa, jūra,* rights; *mēnsāsum, mēnsārum,* of tables; *agrōsum, agrōrum,* of fields; *esam, eram,* I was; *esāmus, erāmus,* we were.

33. PARTIAL ASSIMILATION. — A consonant is often partially[4] assimilated by a following consonant. Thus before the surd **s** or **t,** a sonant **b** or **g** is generally changed to its corresponding surd, **p** or **c**:

Scrībsī, scrīpsī, I have written; *scrībtus, scrīptus,* written; *rēgsī, rēcsī, rēxī (30),* I have ruled; *rēgtus, rēctus,* ruled.

---

[1] The change from *a* through *o* to *u* is usually arrested at *u,* while *a* is often changed directly through *e* to *i* without passing through *o* or *u.* Thus the open *a* is changed either to the close *u* through the medial *o,* as seen on the right side of the following vowel-triangle, or to the close *i* through the medial *e,* as seen on the left side:

Open vowel . . . . *a*
Medial vowels . . . . . *e* *o*
Close vowels . . . . . . *i* *u*

[2] But *u, e,* and *i* differ so slightly in strength that they appear at times to be simply interchanged.

[3] Here *e* in *carmen* becomes *i* in *carminis, a* in *faciō* becomes *i* in *cōn-ficiō,* etc.

[4] That is, it is adapted or accommodated to it, but does not become the same letter.

LESSON II.

PRONUNCIATION OF LATIN.[1]

2. *Lesson from the Grammar for those who adopt the Roman Method of Pronunciation.*[2]

5. VOWELS. — The vowel sounds are the following: —

LONG.			SHORT.		
ā like *ä* in father:	ā'-rīs.[3]	a like *a* in Cuba:[5]	a'-met.
ē " *e* " prey;[4]	ē'-dī.	e " *e* " net:	re'-get.
ī " *ī* " machine:[4]	ī'-rī.	i " *i* " cigar:	vi'-det.
ō " *ō* " old:	ō'-rās.	o " *o* " obey:	mo'-net.
ū " *u* " rule:[4]	ū'-nō.	u " *u* " full:	su'-mus.

1. A short vowel in a long syllable is pronounced short: *sunt*,[6] *u* as in *sum, su'-mus.* But see 16, note 2.

3. I preceded by an accented *a, e, o,* or *y,* and followed by another vowel, is a semivowel with the sound of *y* in *yet* (7): *A-chā'-ia* (A-kä'-yä).

4. U in *qu,* and generally in *gu* and *su* before a vowel, has the sound of *w: quī* (kwē), *lin'-gua* (lin'-gwä), *suā'-sit* (swä'-sit).

---

[1] In this country three distinct methods are recognized in the pronunciation of Latin. They are generally known as the *Roman,* the *English,* and the *Continental Methods.* The pupil will, of course, study only the method adopted in the school.

[2] Those who adopt the English Method will now turn to page 6, — *Lesson from the Grammar for those who adopt the English Method of Pronunciation.*

Those who adopt the Continental Method will turn to page 9, — *Lesson from the Grammar for those who adopt the Continental Method of Pronunciation.*

[3] The Latin vowels marked with the *macron* ‾ are *long in quantity,* i.e. in the duration of the sound (16); those not marked are *short in quantity;* see 16, note 3.

[4] Or *ē* like *ä* in made, *i* like *ē* in me, and *ū* like *oo* in moon.

[5] The short vowels can be only imperfectly represented by English equivalents. In theory they have the same sounds as the corresponding long vowels, but occupy only half as much time in utterance.

[6] Observe the difference between the *length* or *quantity* of the vowel and the *length* or *quantity* of the syllable. Here the vowel *u* is short, but the syllable *sunt* is long; see 16, I. In syllables long irrespective of the length

6. Diphthongs. — In diphthongs each vowel retains its own sound:

> **ae** (for *ai*) like the English ay (yes): *mēn'-sae.*[1]
> **au**   like *ow* in how: *cau'-sa.*
> **oe** (for *oi*) like *oi* in coin: *foe'-dus.*[2]

7. Consonants. — Most of the consonants are pronounced nearly as in English, but the following require special notice:

> **c** like *k* in king: *cē'-lēs* (kay-lace), *cĭ'-vĭ* (kē-wē).
> **g** " *g* " get: *re'-gunt, re'-gis, ge'-nus.*
> **j** " *y* " yet: *jŭ'-stum* (yoo-stum), *ja'-cet.*
> **s** " *s* " son: *sa'-cer, so'-ror, A'-si-a.*
> **t** " *t* " time: *ti'-mor, tō'-tus, āc'-ti-ŏ.*
> **v** " *w* " we: *va'-dum, vĭ'-cĭ, vĭ'-ti-um.*

8. Syllables. — In dividing words into syllables, make as many syllables as there are vowels and diphthongs: *mō'-re, per-suā'-dē, mēn'-sae.*[3]

3. *Pronounce the following words according to the Roman Method.*[4]

1. Hō'-ra (*an hour*), hō'-rae (*of an hour*), hō-rā'-rum (*of hours*), hō'-rīs (*by hours*). 2. Glō'-ri-a (*glory*), glō'-ri-ae (*of glory*), glō'-riā (*with glory*). 3. Dō'-num (*a gift*), dō'-nĭ (*of a gift*), dō'-nō (*with a gift*), dō'-na (*gifts*), dō-nō'-rum (*of gifts*), dō'-nīs (*with gifts*). 4. Cī'-vis (*a citizen*), cĭ'-vĭ

---

of the vowels contained in them, it is often difficult and sometimes absolutely impossible to determine the *natural quantity* of the vowels; but it is thought advisable to treat vowels as short in all situations where there are not good reasons for believing them to be long.

[1] Combining the sounds of *a* and *i*.

[2] *Ei* as in *veil, eu* with the sounds of *e* and *u* combined, and *oi* = *oe*, occur in a few words: *dein, neu'-ter, proin.*

[3] Join to each vowel as many of the consonants which precede it — one or more — as can be conveniently pronounced at the beginning of a word or syllable: *pa'-ter, pa'-trēs, ge'-ne-rī, do'-mi-nus, nō'-scit, si'-stis, clau'-stra, mēn'-sa, bel'-lum, tem'-plum, ēmp'-tus.* But compound words must be separated into their component parts, if the first of these parts ends in a consonant: *ab'-es, ob-ī'-re.*

[4] After finishing this exercise those who adopt the *Roman Method,* will omit the *English* and the *Continental Method* and turn to Lesson III.

(*for a citizen*), cī′-vēs (*citizens*), cī′-vi-um (*of citizens*), cī′-vi-bus (*for citizens*).   5. Mī′-les (*a soldier*), mī′-li-tis (*of a soldier*), mī′-li-tī (*to a soldier*), mī′-li-tēs (*soldiers*), mī′-li-tum *of soldiers*), mī-li′-ti-bus (*for soldiers*).

2. *Lesson from the Grammar for those who adopt the English Method of Pronunciation.*

9. Vowels. — Vowels generally have their long or short English sounds.

10. Long Sounds. — Vowels have their long English sounds — **a** as in *fate,* **e** in *mete,* **i** in *pine,* **o** in *note,* **u** in *tube,* **y** in *type* — in the following situations : —

1. In final syllables ending in a vowel : —

Se, si, ser′-vi, ser′-vo, cor′-nu, mi′-sy.

2. In all syllables, before a vowel or diphthong : —

De′-us, de-o′-rum, de′-ae, di-e′-i, ni′-hi-lum.[1]

3. In penultimate[2] syllables before a single consonant, or before a mute followed by a liquid : —

Pa′-ter, pa′-tres, ho-no′-ris, A′-thos, O′-thrys.

4. In unaccented syllables, not final, before a single consonant, or before a mute followed by a liquid : —

Do-lo′-ris, cor′-po-ri, con′-su-lis, a-gric′-o-la.

1. A *unaccented* has the sound of *a final* in America: *men′-sa, a-cu′-tus, a-ma′-mus.*[3]

11. Short Sounds. — Vowels have their short English sounds — **a** as in *fat,* **e** in *met,* **i** in *pin,* **o** in *not,* **u** in *tub,* **y** in *myth* — in the following situations : —

---

[1] In these rules no account is taken of the aspirate *h :* hence the first *i* in *nihilum* is treated as a vowel before another vowel; for the same reason, *ch, ph,* and *th* are treated as single mutes; thus *th* in *Athos* and *Othrys.*

[2] Penultimate, the last syllable but one.

[3] Some give the same sound to *a final* in monosyllables: *da, qua;* while others give it the *long* sound according to 10, 1.

1. In final syllables ending in a consonant : —

A'-mat, a'-met, rex'-it, sol, con'-sul, Te'-thys ; except post, es final, and os final in plural cases: res, di'-es, hos, a'-gros.

2. In all syllables before *x,* or any two consonants except a mute followed by a liquid (10, 3 and 4) : —

Rex'-it, bel'-lum, rex-e'-runt, bel-lo'-rum.

3. In all accented syllables, not penultimate, before one or more consonants : —

Dom'-i-nus, pat'-ri-bus. But —

1) **A, e,** or **o** before a single consonant (or a mute and a liquid), followed by *e, i,* or *y* before another vowel, has the long sound: *a'-ci-es, a'-cri-a, me'-re-o, do'-ce-o.*

2) **U,** in any syllable not final, before a single consonant or a mute and a liquid, except *bl,* has the long sound: *Pu'-ni-cus, sa-lu'-bri-tas.*

12. DIPHTHONGS. — Diphthongs are pronounced as follows:

Ae like *e : Cae'-sar, Daed'-a-lus.*[1] | **Au** as in author: *au'-rum.*
Oe like *e : Oe'-ta, Oed'-i-pus.*[1] | **Eu**[2] as in neuter: *neu'-ter.*

13. CONSONANTS. — The consonants are pronounced in general as in English. Thus : —

I. **C** and **G** are *soft* (like *s* and *j*) before *e, i, y, ae,* and *oe,* and *hard* in other situations[3]: *ce'-do* (se'-do), *ci'-vis, Cy'-rus, cae'-do, coe'-pi, a'-ge* (a'-je), *a'-gi ; ca'-do* (ka'-do), *co'-go, cum, Ga'-des.*

II. **S, T,** and **X** are generally pronounced as in the English words *son, time, expect: sa'-cer, ti'-mor, rex'-i* (rek'-si). But —

1. *S, T,* and *X* are aspirated before *i* preceded by an accented syllable and followed by a vowel, — *s* and *t* taking the sound of *sh,* and *x* that of *ksh : Al'-si-um* (Al'-she-um), *ar'-ti-um* (ar'-she-um), *anx'-i-us* (ank'-she-us).

---

[1] The diphthong has the *long sound* in *Cae'-sar* and *Oe'-ta,* according to 10, 3, but the *short sound* in *Daed'-a-lus* (Ded'-a-lus) and *Oed'-i-pus* (Ed'-i-pus). according to 11, 3, as *e* would be thus pronounced in the same situations.

[2] *Ei* and *oi* are seldom diphthongs, but when so used they are pronounced as in *height, coin: hei, proin. Ui,* as a diphthong, with the long sound of *i,* occurs in *cui, hui, huic.*

[3] *C* has the sound of *sh* —

1. Before *i* preceded by an accented syllable and followed by a vowel: *so'-ci-us* (so'-she-us);

2. Before *eu* and *yo* preceded by an accented syllable: *ca-du'-ce-us* (ca-du'-she-us), *Sic'-y-on* (Sish'-y-on).

2. *S* is pronounced like *z* —

1) At the end of a word, after *e, ae, au, b, m, n, r : spes, praes, laus, urbs, hi'-ems, mons, pars ;*

2) In a few words after the analogy of the corresponding English words: *Cae'-sar,* Caesar; *cau'-sa,* cause; *mu'-sa,* muse; *mi'-ser,* miser, miserable, etc.

3. *X* at the beginning of a word has the sound of *z : Xan'-thus.*

14. SYLLABLES. — In dividing words into syllables —

1. Make as many syllables as there are vowels and diphthongs: *mo'-re, per-sua'-de, men'-sae.*

2. Distribute the consonants so as to give the proper sound to each vowel and diphthong, as determined by previous rules (10–12): *pa'-ter, pa'-tres, a-gro'-rum, au-di'-vi, gen'-e-ri, dom'-i-nus.*

3. *Pronounce the following words according to the English Method.*[1]

1. Men'-sam (*a table*),[2] men'sā (*with a table*), men'sae (*tables*),[3] men-sa'-rum (*of tables*),[4] men'-sis (*with tables*). 2. Ho'-ram (*an hour*),[5] ho'-rae (*of an hour*),[6] ho'-rae (*hours*), ho-ra'-rum (*of hours*).[7] 3. Scho'-la (*a school*),[8] scho'-lae (*schools*), scho-la'-rum (*of schools*). 4. Co-ro'-na (*a crown*),[8] co-ro'-nae (*crowns*),[9] co-ro'-nis (*with crowns*). 5. Ci'-vis (*a citizen*),[10] civ'-i-um (*of citizens*), civ'-i-bus (*for citizens*). 6. Car'-men (*a song*),[11] car'-mi-nis (*of a song*), car'-mi-ne (*with a song*).[12] 7. Rex (*a king*),[13] re'-gis (*of a king*),[14] re'-gi (*for a king*), re'-gum (*of kings*).[14] 8. A'-ci-em (*a line of battle*),[15] a'-ci-e (*with a line of battle*), a'-ci-es (*a line of battle*).[16]

---

[1] After completing this exercise those who adopt the English Pronunciation of Latin, omitting the Continental Method, will turn to Lesson III.

[2] 11, 2; 11, 1.
[3] 11, 2; 12; 10, 1.
[4] 11, 2; 10, 3; 11, 1.
[5] 10, 3; 11, 1.
[6] 10, 3; 12; 10, 1.
[7] 10, 3 and 4; 11, 1.
[8] 10, 3; 10, 4, 1).
[9] 10, 4; 12; 10, 1.
[10] 13, I. and II.; 10, 3; 11, 1.
[11] 13, I.; 11, 2; 11, 1.
[12] 11, 3; 10, 3; 10, 1.
[13] 13, II.
[14] 13, I.; 10, 3; 11, 1.
[15] 11, 3, 1)); 13, I., footnote; 11, 1.
[16] 13, II., 2.

2. *Lesson from the Grammar for those who adopt the Continental Method of Pronunciation.*

5. VOWELS. — The vowel sounds are the following: —

LONG.			SHORT.		
ā like ä in father:	*ā′-ris*.[1]		a like *a* in Cuba:[3]	*a′-met*.	
ē " *e* " prey:[2]	*ē′-dī*.		e " *e* " net:	*re′-get*.	
ī " *i* " machine:[2]	*ī′-ri*.		i " *i* " cigar:	*vi′-det*.	
ō " *ō* " old:	*-ō′-räs*.		o " *o* " obey:	*mo′-net*.	
ū " *u* " rule:[2]	*ū′-nō*.		u " *u* " full:	*su′-mus*.	

1. A short vowel in a long syllable is pronounced short: *sunt*,[4] *u* as in *sum*, *su′-mus*. But see 16, note 2.

3. I preceded by an accented *a, e, o,* or *y,* and followed by another vowel, is a semivowel with the sound of *y* in yet (7): *A-chā′-ia* (A-kä′-yä).

4. U in *qu,* and generally in *gu* and *su* before a vowel, has the sound of *w*: *qui* (kwē), *lin′-gua* (lin′-gwä), *suā′-sit* (swä′-sit).

6. DIPHTHONGS. — In diphthongs each vowel retains its own sound: —

ae (for *ai*) like the English ay (yes): *mēn′-sae*.[5]
au   like *ow* in how: *cau′-sa*.
oe (for *oi*) like *oi* in coin: *foe′-dus*.[6]

13. CONSONANTS. — The consonants are pronounced in general as in English. Thus: —

---

[1] The Latin vowels marked with the *macron* ‾ are *long in quantity,* i.e. in the duration of the sound (16); those not marked are *short in quantity*; see 16, note 3.

[2] Or *ē* like *ā* in made, *i* like *ē* in me, and *ū* like *oo* in moon.

[3] The short vowels can be only imperfectly represented by English equivalents. In theory they have the same sounds as the corresponding long vowels, but occupy only half as much time in utterance.

[4] Observe the difference between the *length* or *quantity* of the vowel and the *length* or *quantity* of the syllable. Here the vowel *u* is short, but the syllable *sunt* is long; see 16, I. In syllables long irrespective of the length of vowels contained in them, it is often difficult and sometimes absolutely impossible to determine the *natural quantity* of the vowels; but it is thought advisable to treat vowels as short in all situations where there are not good reasons for believing them to be long.

[5] Combining the sounds of *a* and *i*.

[6] *Ei* as in *veil, eu* with the sounds of *e* and *u* combined, and *oi = oe,* occur in a few words: *dein, neu′-ter, proin*.

I. **C** and **G** are *soft* (like *s* and *j*) before *e, i, y, ae,* and *oe,* and *hard* in other situations:[1] *cē'-dō* (sā'-do), *cī'-vis, Cȳ-rus, cae'-dō, coe'-pī, a'-ge* (ā'-je), *a'-gī; ca'-dō* (kä'-do), *cō'-gō, cum, Gā'-dēs.*

II. **S, T,** and **X** are generally pronounced as in the English words *son, time, expect: sa'-cer, ti'-mor, rēx'-ĭ (răk'-sĕ).* But —

1. *S, T,* and *X* are aspirated before *i* preceded by an accented syllable and followed by a vowel — *s* and *t* taking the sound of *sh,* and *x* that of *ksh: Al'-si-um* (Al'-she-um), *ar'-ti-um* (ar'-she-um), *anx'-i-us* (ank'-she-us).

2. *S* is pronounced like *z* —

1) At the end of a word, after *e, ae, au, b, m, n, r : spēs, praes, laus, urbs, hi'-ems, mōns, pars ;*

2) In a few words after the analogy of the corresponding English words: *Cae'-sar,* Caesar; *cau'-sa,* cause; *mū'-sa,* muse; *mi'-ser,* miser, miserable, etc.

3. *X* at the beginning of a word has the sound of *z : Xan'-thus.*

14. SYLLABLES. — In dividing words into syllables make as many syllables as there are vowels and diphthongs : *mō'-re, per-suā'-dē, mēn'-sae.*[2]

3. *Pronounce the following words according to the Continental Method.*

1. Hō'-ra (*an hour*), hō'-rae (*of an hour*), hō-rā'-rum (*of hours*), hō'-rīs (*by hours*). 2. Glō'-ri-a (*glory*), glō'-ri-ae (*of glory*), glō'-riā (*with glory*). 3. Dō'-num (*a gift*), dō'-nī (*of a gift*), dō'-nō (*with a gift*), dō'-na (*gifts*), dō-nō'-rum (*of gifts*), dō'-nīs (*with gifts*). 4. Cī'-vis (*a citizen*), cī'-vēs (*citizens*), cī'-vi-um (*of citizens*), cī'-vi-bus

---

[1] *C* has the sound of *sh* —

1. Before *i* preceded by an accented syllable and followed by a vowel: *so'-ci-us* (so'-she-us);

2. Before *eu* and *yo* preceded by an accented syllable: *cā-dū'-ce-us* (ca-du'-she-us), *Sic'-y-ōn* (Sish'-y-on).

[2] Join to each vowel as many of the consonants which precede it — one or more — as can be conveniently pronounced at the beginning of a word or syllable: *pa'-ter, pa'-trēs, ge'-ne-rī, do'-mi-nus, nō'-scit, si'-stis, clau'-stra, mēn'-sa, bel'-lum, tem'-plum, ēmp'-tus.* But compound words must be separated into their component parts, if the first of these parts ends in a consonant: *ab'-es, ob-ī'-re.*

(*for citizens*). 5. Mĭ'-les (*a soldier*), mĭ'-li-tis (*of a soldier*), mĭ'-li-tī (*to a soldier*), mĭ-li-tēs (*soldiers*), mĭ'-li-tum (*of soldiers*), mī-li'-ti-bus (*for soldiers*).

LESSON III.

QUANTITY. — ACCENTUATION.

4. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

QUANTITY.

16. Syllables are in quantity or length either long, short, or common:[1]

I. LONG. — A syllable is long in quantity —

1. If it contains a diphthong or a long vowel: *haec, rēs.*[2]

2. If its vowel is followed by *j, x,* or *z,* or any two consonants, except a mute and a liquid:[3] *dux, rēx, sunt.*[4]

II. SHORT. — A syllable is short, if its vowel is followed by another vowel, by a diphthong, or by the aspirate *h : di-ēs, vī-ae, nĭ"-hil.*[5]

---

[1] Common, *i.e.* sometimes long and sometimes short.

[2] See note 3, below.

[3] That is, in the order here given, with the mute before the liquid; if the liquid precedes, the syllable is long.

[4] Observe that the vowel in such syllables may be either long or short. Thus it is long in *rēx,* but short in *dux* and *sunt.*

[5] By referring to pages 4 and 8, it will be seen, that, in the Roman Method and in the Continental, *quantity* and *sound* coincide with each other: a vowel long in quantity is long in sound, and a vowel short in quantity is short in sound. But, by referring to 10 and 11, it will be seen, that, in the English Method, the quantity of a vowel does not at all affect its sound, except in determining the accent (18). Hence, in this method, a vowel long in quantity is often short in sound, and a vowel short in quantity is often long in sound. Thus in *rēx* and *sŏl,* the vowels are long in quantity; but by 11, 1, they have the short English sounds: while in *ave, mare,* the vowels are all short in quantity; but by 10, 1 and 3, they all have the long English sounds. Hence, in pronouncing according to the English Method, determine the place of the accent by the quantity, according to

III. COMMON. — A syllable is common, if its vowel, natu-
rally [1] short, is followed by a mute and a liquid : *a-grĭ.*

NOTE 1. — Vowels are also in quantity either long, short, or common;
but the quantity of the vowel does not always coincide with the quantity
of the syllable.[2]

NOTE 2. — Vowels are long before *ns* and *nf*, generally also before *gn*
and *j* ; *cōn'-sul, in-fē'-līx, rēg'-num, hū'-jus.*

NOTE 3. — The signs ¯, ˘ are used to mark the quantity of vowels, the
first denoting that the vowel over which it is placed is *long*, the second
that it is *common*, i.e. sometimes long and sometimes short: *a-mā'-bŏ.*
All vowels not marked are to be treated as short.[3]

ACCENTUATION.

17. Words of two syllables are always accented on the
first : *mĕn'-sa.*

18. Words of more than two syllables are accented on
the *Penult*,[4] if that is long in quantity ;[5] otherwise on the
Antepenult :[4] *ho-nō'-ris, cōn'-su-lis.*[6]

3. A secondary or subordinate accent is placed on the second or
third syllable before the primary accent — on the second, if that is the
first syllable of the word, or is long in quantity, otherwise on the
third: *mo'-nu-ē'-runt, mo'-nu-e-rā'-mus,*[7] *in-stau'-rā-vē'runt.*

18, and then determine the sounds of the letters irrespective of quantity,
according to 10–13.

[1] A vowel is said to be *naturally* short, when it is short in its own
nature; i.e. in itself, without reference to its position.

[2] Thus in long syllables the vowels may be either long or short, as in
rēx, dux, sunt (see foot-note 6, p. 4). But in short syllables the vowels are
also short.

[3] See p. 4, foot-note 6. In many works short vowels are marked with
the sign ˘ : *rĕgĭs.*

[4] The penult is the last syllable but one ; the antepenult, the last but
two.

[5] Thus the quantity of the *syllable*, not of the *vowel*, determines the
place of the accent : *regen'-tis*, accented on the penult, because that *sylla-
ble* is *long*, though its *vowel* is *short;* see 16, I., 2.

[6] In the subsequent pages, the pupil will be expected to accent words
in pronunciation according to these rules.

[7] In the English Method divide thus: *mon'-u-e'-runt, mon-u-e-ra'-mus.*

I. GENDER.

41. There are three genders:[1] *Masculine, Feminine,* and *Neuter.*

NOTE. — In some nouns, gender is determined by signification; in others, by endings.

42. GENERAL RULES FOR GENDER.

I. Masculines: —

1. Names of *Males; Cicerŏ; vir,* man; *rēx,* king.

2. Names of *Rivers, Winds,* and *Months: Rhēnus,* Rhine; *Notus,* south wind; *Mārtius,* March.

II. Feminines: —

1. Names of *Females: mulier,* woman; *leaena,* lioness.

2. Names of *Countries, Towns, Islands,* and *Trees: Graecia.* Greece; *Rōma,* Rome; *Dēlos,* Delos; *pirus,* pear-tree.

II. PERSON AND NUMBER.

44. The Latin, like the English, has three persons and two numbers. The first person denotes the speaker; the second, the person spoken to; the third, the person spoken of. The singular number denotes one; the plural, more than one.

7. *In this exercise give the* GENDER *and* NUMBER *of each noun, and tell whether it is* COMMON *or* PROPER.

1. Caesar (*Caesar*), Alexander (*Alexander*), Graecia (*Greece*). 2. Mātrēs (*mothers*), māter (*a mother*), Hispānia (*Spain*). 3. Pater (*a father*), patrēs (*fathers*), Rhēnus (*the river Rhine*). 4. Puer (*a boy*), puerī (*boys*), puella (*a girl*), puellae (*girls*). 5. Sicilia (*Sicily*), Sparta (*the city Sparta*), mīles (*a soldier*), mīlitēs (*soldiers*).

---

[1] In English, *gender* denotes *sex.* Accordingly, masculine nouns denote *males;* feminine nouns, *females;* and neuter nouns, objects which are *neither male nor female.* In Latin, however, this natural distinction of gender is applied only to the names of *males* and *females;* while, in all other nouns, gender depends upon an artificial distinction, according to grammatical rules.

LESSON V.

NOUNS. — CASES.

8. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

45. The Latin has six cases: [1] —

NAMES.	ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS.
Nominative,	Nominative.
Genitive,	Possessive, or Objective with *of.*
Dative,	Objective with *to* or *for.*
Accusative,	Objective.
Vocative,	Nominative Independent.
Ablative,	Objective with *from, with, by, in.*

1. Oblique Cases. — The Genitive, Dative, Accusative, and Ablative are called the Oblique Cases.

2. Locative. — The Latin has also a few remnants of another case, called the Locative, denoting the *place in which.*

9. *In this exercise give the* GENDER, NUMBER, *and* CASE *of each noun, and tell whether it is* COMMON *or* PROPER.

1. Rēgis (*of a king*), rēgī (*for a king*), rēgēs (*kings*),[2] rēgum (*of kings*), rēgibus (*for kings*). 2. Rēgīna (*a queen*),[2] rēgīnae (*for the queen*), rēgīnīs (*to queens*). 3. Graecia (*Greece*), Graeciae (*for Greece*). 4. Cicerōnis (*of Cicero*), Cicerōnī (*for Cicero*). 5. Fīlius (*a son*), fīlia (*a daughter*), fīliō (*to a son*), fīliae (*to a daughter*). 6. Rhēnī (*of the river Rhine*), Rhodanō (*by the river Rhone*), Notō (*by the south wind*), Mārtiō (*in March*). 7. Fīlia (*the daughter*) rēgis (*of the king*) laudātur (*is praised*). 8. Fīliam (*the daughter*) rēgis (*of the king*) laudant (*they*

---

[1] The *case* of a noun shows the relation which that noun sustains to other words; as, *John's book.* Here the *possessive case* shows that John sustains to the book the relation of *possessor.*

[2] Treat as a *Nominative* any form which cannot be shown from its meaning to be in any other case.

praise).[1] 9. Caesar (*Caesar*) mīlitēs (*the soldiers*) laudat (*praises*). 10. Mīlitēs (*the soldiers*) laudantur (*are praised*). 11. Rōmulus(*Romulus*) Rōmam (*Rome*) condidit(*founded*).

LESSON VI.

NOUNS. — FIRST DECLENSION.

10. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

46. **STEM AND SUFFIXES.** — The process by which the several cases of a word are formed is called Declension. It consists in the addition of certain suffixes to one common base, called the stem.

1. Accordingly each case-form contains two distinct elements: the *stem*, which gives the general meaning of the word, and the *case-suffix*, which shows the relation of that meaning to some other word. Thus in *rēg-is*, of a king, the general idea, *king*, is denoted by the stem *rēg ;* the relation *of*, by the suffix *is*.

2. Cases Alike. — But certain cases are not distinguished in form.

1) The *Nominative*, *Accusative*, and *Vocative in neuters* are alike, and in the plural end in *a*.

2) The *Nominative* and *Vocative* are alike, except in the singular of nouns in *us* of the second declension (51).[2]

3) The *Dative* and *Ablative Plural* are alike.

3. Characteristic. — The last letter of the stem is called the STEM-CHARACTERISTIC, or the STEM-ENDING.

47. **FIVE DECLENSIONS.** — In Latin there are five declensions, distinguished from one another by the *stem-characteristics* or by the *endings* of the *Genitive Singular*, as follows : —

---

[1] LATIN ORDER: The daughter of the king they praise.
  ENGLISH ORDER: They praise the daughter of the king.
[2] And in some nouns of Greek origin.

		CHARACTERISTICS.	GENITIVE ENDINGS.
DEC.	I.	ă	ae
	II.	o	ī
	III.	i *or* a consonant	is
	IV.	u	ūs
	V.	ĕ	ĕī

NOTE 2. — The case-suffixes, by which the several cases are formed, appear distinct and unchanged only in nouns with consonant-stems, while in all others they are seen only in combination with the characteristic, *i.e.* with the final vowel of the stem.

NOTE 3. — The *ending* produced by the union of the *case-suffix* with the *characteristic vowel* may for convenience be called a CASE-ENDING.

FIRST DECLENSION. — A NOUNS.

48. Nouns of the first declension end in
   a and ē—*feminine;* ās and ēs—*masculine.*[1]

Nouns in *a* are declined as follows :

SINGULAR.

EXAMPLE.	MEANING.	CASE-ENDING.
Nom. mēnsa,	*a table,*[2]	a
Gen. mēnsae,	*of a table,*	ae
Dat. mēnsae,	*to, for a table,*	ae
Acc. mēnsam,	*a table,*	am
Voc. mēnsa,	*O table,*	a
Abl. mēnsā,	*from, with, by a table,*	ā

PLURAL.

Nom. mēnsae,	*tables,*	ae
Gen. mēnsārum,	*of tables,*	ārum
Dat. mēnsīs,	*to, for tables,*	īs
Acc. mēnsās,	*tables,*	ās
Voc. mēnsae,	*O tables,*	ae
Abl. mēnsīs,	*from, with, by tables.*	īs

1. Stem. — In nouns of the first declension, the stem ends in ā.

2. In the PARADIGM, observe that the stem is *mēnsa*, and that the several cases are distinguished from one another by their case-endings.

[1] That is, nouns of this declension in *a* and *ē* are feminine, and those in *ās* and *ēs* are masculine.

[2] *Mēnsa* may be translated *a table, table,* or *the table.*

3. **Examples for Practice.** — Like *mēnsa* decline: —

Ala, wing; *aqua,* water; *causa,* cause; *fortūna,* fortune.

4. **Locative.** — Names of towns and a very few other words have a Locative Singular in ae, denoting the *place in which* (45, 2): *Rōmae,* at Rome; *mīlitiae,* in war.

LESSON VII.

NOUNS. — FIRST DECLENSION. — EXERCISES.

11. *Vocabulary.*[1]

Amīcītia,	ae,[2] *f.*[3]	*friendship.*
Corōna,	ae, *f.*	*crown, garland.*
Fīlia,	ae, *f.*	*daughter.*
Gemma,	ae, *f.*	*gem.*
Glōria,	ae, *f.*	*glory.*
Hōra,	ae, *f.*	*hour.*
Jūstitia,	ae, *f.*	*justice.*
Laudant,		*they praise.*
Laudat,		*he praises.*
Laudātur,		*he is praised.*
Rēgīna,	ae, *f.*	*queen.*
Sapientia,	ae, *f.*	*wisdom.*
Schola,	ae, *f.*	*school.*

12. *Translate into English.*

1. Corōna,[4] corōnā, corōnae,[5] corōnam, corōnārum, corōnīs, corōnās. 2. Gemma, gemmā, gemmae, gemmam, gemmārum,

---

[1] It is recommended that the Vocabularies be so carefully and accurately learned that the pupil shall be able to give with promptness either the English for the Latin or the Latin for the English.

[2] The ending *ae* is the case-ending of the Genitive: *amicitia;* Gen., *amicitiae.*

[3] Gender is indicated in the vocabularies by *m.* for *masculine, f.* for *feminine,* and *n.* for *neuter.*

[4] As the Latin has no article, a noun may, according to the connection in which it is used, be translated (1) without the article; as, *corōna,* crown; (2) with the indefinite article *a* or *an;* as, *corōna,* a crown; (3) with the definite article *the;* as, *corōna,* the crown.

[5] When the same Latin form standing alone may be found in two or more cases, the pupil is expected to give the meaning for each case. Thus

gemmīs, gemmās. 3. Sapientia, amīcitia, jūstitia, glōria. 4. Sapientiam, amīcitiam, jūstitiam, glōriam. 5. Sapientiā, amī- citiā, jūstitiā, glōriā. 6. Schōlārum, hōrārum. 7. Fīlia rēgīnae. 8. Sapientia rēgīnae, sapientiā rēgīnae. 9. Sapientia lau- dātur. 10. Amīcitia laudātur. 11. Rēgīna laudātur. 12. Fīlia rēgīnae laudātur. 13. Jūstitia rēgīnae laudātur. 14. Jūstitiam laudat. 15. Jūstitiam rēgīnae laudat. 16. Rē- gīnam laudat. 17. Rēgīnam laudant. 18. Fīliam rēgīnae laudant. 19. Sapientiam rēgīnae laudant.

13. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Friendship, friendships. 2. Of[1] friendship, of friend- ships. 3. To friendship, to friendships. 4. By friendship, by friendships. 5. Justice, by justice, of justice, to justice. 6. Wisdom, glory. 7. With wisdom, with glory. 8. To wisdom, to glory. 9. Of wisdom, of glory. 10. Of a crown,[2] of a gem. 11. The crown[2] of the queen, with the crown of the queen. 12. He praises the queen. 13. He praises jus- tice. 14. They praise justice. 15. Justice is praised. 16. The school is praised. 17. He praises the school. 18. The queen is praised. 19. The wisdom of the queen is praised.

LESSON VIII.

SENTENCES. — VERBS.

14. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

346. A sentence is a combination of words expressing either a single thought or two or more thoughts.

---

corōnae may be in the Genitive or Dative Singular, or in the Nominative or Vocative Plural.

[1] The pupil will observe that the English prepositions, *of, to, by, with,* may be rendered into Latin by simply changing the ending of the word.

[2] The pupil will remember that the English articles, *a, an,* and *the,* are not to be rendered into Latin at all.

347. A SIMPLE SENTENCE expresses a single thought:

Deus mundum aedificāvit, *God made (built) the world.* Cic.

348. A COMPLEX SENTENCE expresses one leading thought with one or more dependent thoughts:

Dōnec eris fēlix, multōs numerābis amīcōs, *so long as you shall be prosperous, you will number many friends.* Ovid.

NOTE 1. — In this example two simple sentences — (1) '*you will be prosperous,*' and (2) '*you will number many friends*' — are so united that the first only specifies the *time* of the second: *You will number many friends* (when?), *so long as you shall be prosperous.* The parts thus united are called *Clauses* or *Members.*

NOTE 2. — The part of the complex sentence which makes complete sense of itself — *multōs numerābis amīcōs* — is called the *Principal* or *Independent Clause;* and the part which is dependent upon it — *dōnec eris fēlix* — is called the *Subordinate* or *Dependent Clause.*

349. A COMPOUND SENTENCE expresses two or more independent thoughts:

Sōl ruit et montēs umbrantur, *the sun hastens to its setting and the mountains are shaded.* Verg.

356. The SIMPLE SENTENCE in its MOST SIMPLE FORM consists of two distinct parts, expressed or implied: —

1. The SUBJECT, or that of which it speaks;

2. The PREDICATE, or that which is said of the subject:

Cluīlius moritur, *Cluīlius dies.*[1] Liv.

NOTE. — In Latin, both subject and predicate may be contained or implied in a single word:[2]

Amās,[3] *thou lovest.* Amat,[3] *he loves.*

357. The SIMPLE SENTENCE in its MOST EXPANDED FORM consists only of these same parts with their various modifiers: —

---

[1] Here *Cluīlius* is the subject, and *moritur* the predicate.

[2] That word must, however, be a verb.

[3] Here the ending *s* shows that the subject is of the *second person singular*, THOU — *lovest,* while *t* shows that the subject is of the *third person singular,* HE — *loves.*

· In his castris Cluilius, Albānus rēx, moritur, *Cluilius, the Alban king, dies in this camp.*[1] Liv.

192. Verbs in Latin, as in English, express existence, condition, or action: *est,* he is; *dormit,* he is sleeping; *legit,* he reads.

193. Verbs comprise two principal classes: —

I. TRANSITIVE VERBS admit a direct object of the action: *servum verberat,* he beats the slave.[2]

II. INTRANSITIVE VERBS do not admit such an object: *puer currit,* the boy runs.[2]

194. Verbs have *Voice, Mood, Tense, Number and Person.*

195. There are two voices:

I. The ACTIVE VOICE[3] represents the subject as ACTING or EXISTING: *pater fīlium amat,* the father loves his son; *est,* he is.

II. The PASSIVE VOICE represents the subject as ACTED UPON by some other person or thing: *fīlius ā patre amātur,* the son is loved by his father.

196. There are three moods:[4] —

I. The INDICATIVE MOOD either asserts something as a *fact* or inquires after the *fact:*

Legit, HE IS READING. *Legitne,* IS HE READING? Servius *rēg-nāvit, Servius* REIGNED. Quis ego sum, *who* AM *I?*

---

[1] Here *Cluilius, Albānus rēx,* is the subject in its enlarged or modified form: *in his castris moritur,* the predicate in its enlarged or modified form. ·

[2] Here *servum,* 'the slave,' is the object of the action; *beats* (what?) *the slave.* The object thus *completes* the meaning of the verb. *He beats* is incomplete in sense, but *the boy runs* is complete, and accordingly does not admit an object.

[3] *Voice* shows whether the subject *acts* (Active Voice), or is *acted upon* (Passive Voice). Thus, with the Active Voice, '*the father loves his son,*' the subject, *father,* is the one who *performs the action, loves,* while with the Passive Voice, '*the son is loved by the father,*' the subject, *son,* merely *receives the action, is acted upon, is loved.*

[4] *Mood,* or *Mode,* means *manner,* and relates to the manner in which the meaning of the verb is expressed, as will be seen by observing the force of the several moods.

II, The Subjunctive Mood expresses not an actual fact, but a *possibility* or *conception.*

Amēmus patriam, LET US LOVE *our country.*   *Sint* beātī, MAY THEY BE *happy.*   *Quaerat* quispiam, *some one* MAY INQUIRE.

III. The Imperative Mood expresses a *command* or an *entreaty :*

Jūstitiam cole, PRACTISE *justice.*   *Tū nē cēde* malīs, DO *not* YIELD *to misfortunes.*

197. There are six tenses :[1]

I. Three Tenses for Incomplete Action : —

1. Present: *amō,* I love, I am loving.
2. Imperfect: *amābam,* I was loving, I loved.
3. Future: *amābō,* I shall love, I will love.

II. Three Tenses for Completed Action:

1. Perfect: *amāvī,* I have loved, I loved.
2. Pluperfect: *amāveram,* I had loved.
3. Future Perfect: *amāverō,* I shall have loved.

198. Tenses are also distinguished as —

I. Principal or Primary Tenses :

1. Present: *amō,* I love.
2. Present Perfect: *amāvī,* I have loved.
3. Future: *amābō,* I shall love.
4. Future Perfect: *amāverō,* I shall have loved.

II. Historical or Secondary Tenses:

1. Imperfect: *amābam,* I was loving.
2. Historical Perfect: *amāvī,* I loved.
3. Pluperfect: *amāveram,* I had loved.

199. In *Verbs,* as in Nouns (44), there are two numbers, Singular and Plural, and three persons, First, Second, and Third.

Note. — The various verbal forms which have voice, mood, tense number, and person, make up the *finite verb.*

---

[1] *Tense* means *time*   The tense of a verb shows the *time* of the action.

200. Among verbal forms are included the following verbal nouns and adjectives:

I. The INFINITIVE is a verbal noun. It is sometimes best translated by the English *Infinitive*, sometimes by the *verbal noun in* ING, and sometimes by the *Indicative:*

Exīre ex urbe volŏ, *I wish* TO GO *out of the city.* Gestiō scīre omnia, *I long* TO KNOW *all things.* Haec scīre juvat, TO KNOW *these things affords pleasure.*

II. The GERUND gives the meaning of the verb in the form of a verbal noun of the second declension,[1] used only in the *genitive, dative, accusative,* and *ablative singular.* It corresponds to the English verbal noun in ING:

Amandī, OF LOVING. *Amandī* causā, *for the sake* OF LOVING. Ars *vīvendī, the art* OF LIVING. *Ad discendum* prōpensus, *inclined* TO LEARN, *or* TO LEARNING.

III. The SUPINE gives the meaning of the verb in the form of a verbal noun of the fourth declension.[2] It has a form in **um** and a form in **ū**:

Amātum, TO LOVE, FOR LOVING. *Amātū,* TO BE LOVED, FOR LOVING, IN LOVING. Aùxilium *postulātum* vēnit, *he came* TO ASK *aid.* Difficile *dictū* est, *it is difficult* TO TELL.

IV. The PARTICIPLE in Latin, as in English, gives the meaning of the verb in the form of an adjective. It is sometimes best translated by the English *Participle* or *Infinitive*, and sometimes by a *Clause:*

Amāns, LOVING. *Amātūrus,* ABOUT TO LOVE. *Amātus,* LOVED. *Amandus,* DESERVING TO BE LOVED. Platŏ *scrībēns* mortuus est, *Plato died* WHILE WRITING, *or* WHILE HE WAS WRITING.

NOTE. — A Latin verb may have four participles: two in the Active, the Present and the Future, *amāns, amātūrus;* and two in the Passive, the Perfect and the Gerundive, *amātus, amandus.*

201. Regular verbs are inflected, or conjugated, in four different ways, and are accordingly divided into Four Conjugations.

---

[1] See 35, 51. [2] See 92, 116.

LESSON IX.

CERTAIN FORMS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

15. In Verbs of the First Conjugation, the Third Person in the *singular* and *plural* of the *present, imperfect,* and *future* tenses of the *indicative mood* has the following —

ENDINGS.

PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.	FUTURE.
Singular, at,	ābat,	ābit.
Plural, ant,	ābant,	ābunt.[1]

PARADIGM.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Pres. amat, *he loves ;*[2]	amant, *they love.*
Imp. amābat, *he was loving ;*	amābant, *they were loving.*
Fut. amābit, *he will love ;*	amābunt, *they will love.*

16. In English, the *tenses, numbers,* and *persons* of verbs are indicated by certain *words* or *signs ;* as,

PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.	FUTURE.
He loves,	*he was* loving,	*he will* love.
They love,	*they were* loving,	*they will* love.

In Latin, however, no such *signs* are used; but their place is supplied by the *endings* of the verb. Hence, in translating English into Latin, omit these signs, and express the *tense, number,* and *person* of the verb by the *proper endings :*

PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.	FUTURE.
Eng. *He* loves,	*he was* loving,	*he will* love.
Lat. Amat,	amābat,	amābit.

---

[1] These ENDINGS, like CASE-ENDINGS, contain two elements — (1) the stem-characteristic *a*, a part of the stem, and (2) the suffix proper, *t, nt,* etc.:

a-t	ā-bat	ā-bit
a-nt	ā-bant	ā-bunt

[2] The subject of each of these verbs may be, in English, either *he, she,* or *it.* Thus *amat* may be rendered *he loves, she loves,* or *it loves.* The suffix, *t,* shows the number and person of the subject, but not its gender. We can usually determine from the connection which subject to use.

17. *Vocabulary.*

Accūsat,	*he accuses.*
Amat,	*he loves.*
Nūntiat,	*he announces.*
Pūgnat,	*he fights.*
Putat,	*he thinks.*

18. *Translate into English.* Give also the TENSE, NUM-BER, *and* PERSON *of each verb.*

1. Laudat,[1] laudant. 2. Laudābit, laudābunt. 3. Laudābat, laudābant. 4. Nūntiant, putant, pūgnant. 5. Pūgnat, pūgnā-bat, pūgnābit. 6. Nūntiat, nūntiābat, nūntiābunt. 7. Amat, amābunt, amābant. 8. Accūsant, accūsābit.

19. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He[2] thinks, he was thinking, he will think. 2. They[2] will think, they were thinking. 3. He was praising, they were accusing. 4. He praises, they accuse. 5. He will accuse, they will praise. 6. He will praise, they will accuse. 7. They were announcing, he will announce, they announce.

LESSON X.

VERBS. — SUBJECT. — RULES III. AND XXXVI.

20. *Examine carefully the following examples.*

1. Laudat.	*He, she, or it praises.*[3]
2. Rēgīna laudat.	*The queen praises.*
3. Laudant.	*They praise.*
4. Puellae laudant.	*The girls praise.*

---

[1] Remember that in the singular, the subject in English may be *he, she,* or *it.* In these exercises the pupil may use *he* as the subject.

[2] Observe that the English pronouns *he* and *they* are not to be rendered by separate Latin words, as the Latin verb contains a pronominal subject in itself. Hence 'he thinks,' *putat;* 'they think,' *putant.*

[3] Observe (1) that *laudant,* 'they praise,' differs from *laudat,* 'he, she, or it praises,' only in having *nt,* meaning *they,* as its ending, while *laudat*

2

NOTE 1. — Observe that in these examples the subjects, *rēgīna* and
puellae, are both in the Nominative. This is in accordance with gen-
eral Latin usage,[1] expressed in the following

RULE III. — Subject Nominative.

368. The subject of a finite verb[2] is put in the Nomi-
native:[3]

Servius rēgnāvit, SERVIUS *reigned.* Liv.   Patent *portae*, THE
GATES *are open.* Cic.   *Rēx* vīcit, THE KING *conquered.* Liv.   *Vōs*
tyrannōs intrōdūcitis, YOU *introduce tyrants.* Cic.

NOTE 2. — Observe that in the examples at the head of this lesson
the verb is in the singular if the subject is singular, and in the plural
if the subject is plural. Thus in the second example, the singular verb,
laudat, is used, because the subject, *rēgīna,* is singular, while in the
fourth example the plural verb, *laudant,* is used, because the subject,
puellae, is plural. This is in accordance with general Latin usage,
expressed in the following

RULE XXXVI. — Agreement of Verb with Subject.

460. A finite verb agrees with its subject in NUMBER
and PERSON.[4]

Deus mundum aedificāvit, *God made* (built) *the world.* Cic.   Ego
rēgēs ējēcī, vōs tyrannōs intrōdūcitis, *I have banished kings, you in-
troduce tyrants.* Cic.

---

has simply *t,* meaning *he, she, it;* and (2) that though the forms of the
verb thus contain a pronoun, yet a substantive may at any time be intro-
duced as subject, and that then the pronoun is not translated. Thus
laudat, 'he, she, it, praises,' but *puer laudat,* 'the boy praises' (*not* the
boy he praises); *puella laudat,* 'the girl praises'; *laudant,* 'they praise,'
but *puerī laudant,* 'the boys praise'; *puellae laudant,* 'the girls praise.'

[1] English usage is the same.

[2] The finite verb embraces the three moods. See Lesson XXXVIII.

[3] Thus the subjects *Servius, portae, rēx,* and *vōs* are all in the Nomi-
native case. Observe that these words are printed in *italics,* and the cor-
responding English in SMALL CAPITALS.

[4] Thus *aedificāvit* is in the third person singular to agree with *deus, ējēcī*
in the first person singular to agree with *ego,* and *intrōdūcitis* in the second
person plural to agree with *vōs.*

21. *Directions for Parsing.*

In parsing a Noun, Adjective, or Pronoun —

1. Name the Part of Speech to which it belongs.
2. Decline it.[1]
3. Give its Gender, Number, Case, etc.
4. Give its Syntax,[2] and the Rule for it.

22. *Model.*

Rēgĭna laudat.   *The queen praises.*

Rēgĭna is a noun (6, 39)[3] of the First Declension (10, 48), as it has *ae* in the Genitive Singular (10, 47); STEM, *rēgĭnă* (10, 48, 1). Singular: *rēgĭna, rēgĭnae, rēgĭnae, rēgĭnam, rēgĭna, rēgĭnā;* Plural: *rēgĭnae, rēgĭnārum, rēgĭnĭs, rēgĭnās, rēgĭnae, rēgĭnĭs.* It is of the Feminine gender, as the names of females are feminine by 6, 42. It is in the Nominative Singular, and is the subject of *laudat,* according to Rule III.: " The subject of a finite verb is put in the Nominative."

23. *Directions for Parsing Verbs.*

In parsing a verb —

1. Tell whether it is transitive or intransitive (14, 193), and name the Conjugation to which it belongs.
2. Give the mood, tense, number, and person.
3. Name the subject, and give the Rule for agreement.

24. *Models.*

1. Rēgĭna laudābat.   *The queen was praising.*

Laudābat is a transitive verb of the *First* Conjugation, in the *Indicative* mood, *Imperfect* tense, *Third* person, *Singular* number, and agrees with its subject *rēgĭna,* according to Rule XXXVI.: " A finite verb agrees with its subject in number and person."

---

[1] Adjectives should also be compared (86, 162).

[2] By the *Syntax* of a word is meant the Grammatical construction of it. Thus we give the Syntax of *rēgĭna* under the Model, by stating that it is the subject of *laudat.*

[3] In these references the heavy figures (as **6**) refer to general articles in this work; the other figures (as 39) to articles therein quoted from the Grammar.

2. Laudant. · *They praise.*

Laudant is a transitive verb of the *First* Conjugation, in the *Indicative* mood, *Present* tense, *Third* person, and *Plural* number. The subject is a pronoun of the *Third* person *Plural*, implied in the ending of the verb.[1]

LESSON XI.

VERBS. — SUBJECT. — DIRECT OBJECT. — RULE V.

25. *Examine carefully the following examples.*

1. Rēgīna laudat.	*The queen praises.*
2. Rēgīna *puellās* laudat.	*The queen praises* THE GIRLS.
3. Puellae laudant.	*The girls praise.*
4. Puellae *rēgīnam* laudant.	*The girls praise* THE QUEEN.

NOTE 1. — Observe that in the first example above, *rēgīna laudat,* "the queen praises," the thought is not entirely complete, as we are not told *whom* or *what* the queen praises, but that in the second example, *rēgīna puellās laudat*, "the queen praises (what?) the girls," the sense is complete. The noun which thus completes the meaning of a verb is called the *Direct Object.*

NOTE 2. — Observe that *puellās*, the Direct Object in the second example, and *rēgīnam*, the Direct Object in the fourth example, are both in the *Accusative.* This is in accordance with general Latin usage expressed in the following

RULE V. — Direct Object.

371. The Direct Object of an action is put in the Accusative.[2]

Deus *mundum* aedificāvit, *God made* (built) THE WORLD.[3] Cic. Liberā *rem pūblicam, free* THE REPUBLIC. Cic. Populī Rōmānī *salūtem* dēfendīte, *defend* THE SAFETY *of the Roman people.* Cic.

---

[1] See 20, 1, foot-note.

[2] The *Direct Object* of an action is generally the *object*, person, or thing on which the action is *directly* exerted; as *salūtem*, 'safety,' in the third example; *defend* (what?) *the safety*. But the *Direct Object* is sometimes the *effect* of the action, i. e. the object produced by it; as, *munaum*, 'world,' in the first example, — *made the world.*

[3] In English, the object follows the verb; thus, in this example, *world* follows *made;* but in Latin the object usually precedes the verb: thus

26. *Model.*

Rēgīna puellās laudat. *The queen praises the girls.*

Puellās is a noun (6, 39) of the First Declension (10, 48), as it has *ae* in the Genitive Singular (10, 47); stem, *puellā* (10, 48, 1). Singular: *puella, puellae, puellae, puellam, puella, puellā.* Plural: *puellae, puellārum, puellīs, puellās, puellae, puellīs.* It is of the Feminine gender, as the names of females are feminine by 6, 42. It is in the Accusative Plural, and is the object of *laudat,* according to Rule V.: "The Direct Object of an action is put in the Accusative."

27. *Vocabulary.*

Artemīsia, ae, *f.*	*Artemīsia,* wife of Mausōlus, King of Caria in Asia Minor.
Dēlectat,	*he delights.*[1]
Epistula, ae, *f.*	*letter, epistle.*
Exspectat,	*he expects, awaits.*[1]
Fābula, ae, *f.*	*story, fable.*
Poēta, ae, *m.*	*poet.*
Puella, ae, *f.*	*girl.*
Rēgnat,	*he reigns, rules.*[1]
Tullia, ae, *f.*	*Tullia,* a Roman name.

28. *Translate into English, and parse* SUBJECTS *and* OBJECTS.

1. Rēgīna fīliam[2] amat. 2. Fīliās amat.[3] 3. Fīliās amant. 4. Artemīsia rēgnābat. 5. Rēgnābit. 6. Rēgnābunt. 7.

---

mundum precedes *aedīficāvit.* So also, in the third example, *salūtem* precedes *dēfendite;* but sometimes the object follows the verb: thus in the second example, *rem pūblicam* follows *liberā.*

[1] Or '*she* or *it* delights,' etc. Remember that, in rendering the third person singular of a Latin verb into English, when no subject is expressed, we may use *he, she,* or *it.* For the rendering of a verb which has a substantive as its subject, see 20, 1, foot-note.

[2] Render *her daughter.* In Latin the possessive pronouns, meaning *his, her, their,* when not emphatic, are seldom expressed if they can be supplied from the context.

[3] Render *she loves,* thus making the pronoun refer to *rēgīna.* Observe that while here *amat* is rendered *she loves,* it is rendered in the preceding sentence simply *loves,* as it has a subject, *rēgīna,* expressed. See 20, 1, foot-note.

Fābula rēgīnam dēlectat.   8. Fābulae rēgīnam dēlectant. 9.
Fābulae Tulliam dēlectābunt. 10. Fābula Tulliam dēlectābat.
11. Tullia epistulam exspectabat.   12. Puella epistulam ex-
spēctat.   13. Puellae epistulās exspēctābant.   14. Epistulās
exspēctābunt.   15. Rēgīna glōriam amat.   16. Rēgīna corō-
nam laudat.

29. *Translate into Latin, and parse the* Latin Verbs.

1. The[1] queen expects a[1] letter.[2] 2. She[3] expects letters.
3. They[3] expect letters.   4. Tullia was expecting letters.
5. She was expecting a letter. 6. The poet praises the queen.
7. He was praising the queen. 8. Poets praise wisdom.   9.
They were praising wisdom. 10. The letter will delight the
queen.   11. It[3] will delight the queen. 12. The queen loves
justice. 13. She praises justice.

LESSON XII.

CERTAIN FORMS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.—
RULES II. AND XVI.

30. In verbs of the Second Conjugation, the Third Per-
son in the *singular* and *plural* of the *present, imperfect,* and
future tenses of the *indicative* mood has the following

ENDINGS.

	PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.	FUTURE.
Singular,	et,	ēbat,	ēbit.
Plural,	ent,	ēbant,	ēbunt.[4]

---

[1] Remember that the article *a, an, the* has no equivalent in Latin; see
13, foot-note 3.

[2] In what case should the Latin word be put? See 25, Rule V.

[3] Remember that the pronominal subjects *she, it, they* may be indicated
in Latin by the endings of the verb; see 16.

[4] Observe (1) that these endings all begin with the stem-characteristic *e,*
while the corresponding endings in the *First Conjugation* all begin with

PARADIGM.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Pres monet, *he advises ;* [1]	monent, *they advise.*
Imp monēbat, *he was advising;*	monēbant, *they were advising.*
Fut. monēbit, *he will advise ;*	monēbunt, *they will advise.*

31. *Examine the following examples.*

1. Artemisia rēgīna.	*Artemisia* THE QUEEN.
2. Artemisiae rēgīnae.	*For Artemisia* THE QUEEN.
3. Corōna rēgīnae.	*The crown* OF THE QUEEN.

NOTE 1. — A noun or pronoun used to qualify or identify another noun or pronoun, denoting the same person or thing, as *rēgīna* in the first example and *rēgīnae* in the second, is called an appositive. *Rēgīna,* "the queen," is an appositive, showing the rank or office of Artemisia, — *Artemisia* THE QUEEN.

NOTE 2. — Observe that in the first example, where *Artemisia* is in the Nominative, the appositive *rēgīna* is also in the Nominative, while in the second example, where *Artemisiae* is in the Dative, the appositive is also in the Dative. This usage is expressed in the following

RULE II. — Appositives.

363. An Appositive agrees in CASE with the noun or pronoun which it qualifies : [2]

Cluīlius *rēx* moritur, *Cluilius* THE KING *dies.* Liv.   Urbēs *Karthāgō* atque *Numantia, the cities* CARTHAGE *and* NUMANTIA. Cic.   Saguntum, foederātam *cīvitātem,* expugnāvit, *he took Saguntum, an allied* TOWN. Liv.[3]

NOTE 3. — Observe that in the third of the above examples, the genitive *rēgīnae* limits or qualifies *corōna* by showing whose crown is meant, *the crown* OF THE QUEEN. This usage is expressed in the following

---

the stem-characteristic *a,* and (2) that the suffixes proper are the same in both conjugations, viz.: —

t,	bat,	bit.
nt,	bant,	bunt

[1] Or, *she advises, it advises ;* see 15, foot-note 2.

[2] For Models for Parsing Nouns, see 22. Different rules are, of course, assigned for different cases and constructions.

[3] In these examples observe that the *appositives* are in *italics,* and the corresponding English in SMALL CAPITALS.

395. Any noun, not an appositive, qualifying the meaning of another noun, is put in the Genitive:

Catōnis ōrātiónēs, CATO's *orations.* Cic. Castra *hostium, the camp* OF THE ENEMY. Liv. Mors *Hamilcaris, the death* OF HAMILCAR. Liv. Deûm metus, *the fear of the gods.* Liv. Vir cōnsilii magni, *a man of great prudence.* Caes. Pars populi, *a part of the people.* Cic.

397. The PARTITIVE GENITIVE designates the whole of which a part is taken. It is used —

1. With *pars, nēmō, nihil, talentum,* and with any nouns used partitively:

Equōrum pars, *a part* OF THE HORSES. Liv. Nihil *novī, nothing* NEW (OF NEW). Cic. Pecūniae talentum, *a talent of money.* Nep.

2. With *Numerals* used substantively:

Quōrum quattuor, *four of whom.* Liv. Ûnus pontium, *one of the bridges.* Caes.

3. With *Pronouns* and *Adjectives* used substantively, especially with comparatives, superlatives, and neuters:

Quis vestrûm, *which of you?* Cic. Num quidnam novī, *is there anything new* (OF NEW)? Cic. Gallōrum fortissimī, *the bravest of the Gauls.* Caes. Id temporis, *that (of) time.* Cic.

LESSON XIII.

CERTAIN FORMS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

32. *Vocabulary.*

Dēlet,	*he* [1] *destroys.*
Docet,	*he teaches.*
Habet,	*he has.*
Monet,	*he advises.*
Tacet,	*he is silent.*
Timet,	*he fears.*
Videt,	*he sees.*

---

[1] Remember that the subject in English may be *he, she,* or *it.* If, however, a Latin substantive is used with the verb as subject the pronoun is not expressed in English. Thus used *dēlet* means '*destroys*'; *docet,* '*teaches,*' etc. See 20, 1, foot-note.

33. *Translate into English, and parse* Appositives *and* Genitives.

1. Accūsat, monet. 2. Accūsant, monent. 3. Accūsā-bunt, monēbunt. 4. Accūsābant, monēbant. 5. Accūsābat, monēbat. 6. Accūsābit, monēbit. 7. Timēbant, timet, timēbunt. 8. Timent, timēbit, timēbat. 9. Habet, docēbat, dēlēbunt. 10. Dēlēbit, habēbant, docent.

11. Poēta filiam[1] docēbat. 12. Fīliās docēbit. 13. Poētae fīliās docent. 14. Fīliās docēbant. 15. Poēta sapientiam habēbat. 16. Sapientiam habēbunt. 17. Artemīsia rēgīna[2] tacēbat. 18. Fīlia rēgīnae[3] tacēbit. 19. Tullia, fīlia rē-gīnae, tacet. 20. Poēta Artemīsiam rēgīnam laudābat. 21. Tulliam, fīliam rēgīnae, laudant.

34. *Translate into Latin, and give the* Tense, Number, *and* Person *of the Latin Verbs.*

1. He teaches, he advises, he thinks. 2. They were think-ing, they were advising, they were teaching. 3. He will teach, he will advise, he will think. 4. They will think, he was thinking, they advise. 5. He is silent, they were silent, he will be silent. 6. They fear Artemisia. 7. They will fear the queen. 8. They fear Artemisia, the queen.[4] 9. The poet was seeing Artemisia, the queen. 10. The poet sees the crown. 11. He will see the queen. 12. They will see the crown of the queen.[5] 13. The poet was seeing the crown of Artemisia, the queen.

LESSON XIV.

35. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

NOUNS. — SECOND DECLENSION.

51. Nouns of the second declension end in

er, ir, us, and **os** —*masculine;* **um,** and **on**—*neuter.*

---

[1] See 28, 1, foot-note. [2] See 31, Rule II. [3] See 31, Rule XVI.
[4] In what case should the Latin word be put? See 31, Rule II., and 25, Rule V. [5] See 31, Rule XVI.

Nouns in *er*, *ir*, *us*, and *um* are declined as follows:

Servus, *slave.*   Puer, *boy.*   Ager, *field.*   Templum, *temple.*

SINGULAR.

Nom.	servŭs	puer	ager	templŭm
Gen.	servī	puerī	agrī	templī
Dat.	servŏ	puerŏ	agrŏ	templŏ
Acc.	servŭm	puerŭm	agrŭm	templŭm
Voc.	serve	puer	ager	templŭm
Abl.	servŏ	puerŏ	agrŏ	templŏ

PLURAL.

Nom.	servī	puerī	agrī	templa
Gen.	servŏrum	puerŏrum	agrŏrum	templŏrum
Dat.	servīs	puerīs	agrīs	templīs
Acc.	servŏs	puerŏs	agrŏs	templa
Voc.	servī	puerī	agrī	templa
Abl.	servīs	puerīs	agrīs	templīs

1. STEM. — In nouns of the second declension, the stem ends in **o**.

2. In the PARADIGMS, observe —

1) That the stems are *servo*, *puero*, *agro*, and *templo*.

2) That the characteristic **o** becomes **u** in the endings *us* and *um*, and **e** in *serve*; that it disappears by contraction in the endings *a*, *ī*, and *īs* (for *o-a*, *o-i*, and *o-is*), and is dropped in the forms *puer* and *ager*.

3) That the case-endings, including the characteristic **o**,[1] are as follows: —

	SINGULAR.			**PLURAL.**	
	MASC.	**NEUT.**		**MASC.**	**NEUT.**
Nom.	us [2]	um	*Nom.*	ī	a
Gen.	ī	ī	*Gen.*	ŏrum	ŏrum
Dat.	ŏ	ŏ	*Dat.*	īs	īs
Acc.	um	um	*Acc.*	ŏs	a
Voc.	e	um	*Voc.*	ī	a
Abl.	ŏ	ŏ	*Abl.*	īs	īs

3. EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE. — Like SERVUS: *dominus*, master. Like PUER: *gener*, son-in-law. Like AGER: *magister*, master. Like TEMPLUM: *bellum*, war.

---

[1] For the *characteristic* and for the distinction between *case-endings* and *case-suffixes*, see 10, 47, with notes 2 and 3.

[2] The endings of the Nominative and Vocative Singular are wanting in nouns in *er*. Thus *puer* is for *puerus*.

5. Nouns in **ius** generally contract **ii** in the Genitive Singular and **ie** in the Vocative Singular into **i** without change of accent: *Claudi* for *Claudii,* of Claudius, *fīlī* for *fīlii,* of a son; *Mercúrī* for *Mercúrie,* Mercury, *fīlī* for *fīlie,* son.

8. LOCATIVE. — Names of towns, and a few other words, have a Locative Singular in **i,** denoting the *place in which* (8, 45, 2). *Corinthi,* at Corinth; *humī,* on the ground.

36. *Vocabulary.*

Ager, agrī, *m.*	*field.*
Arat,	*he ploughs.*
Dōnum, ī, *n.*	*gift.*
Gener, generī, *m.*	*son-in-law.*
Liber, librī, *m.*	*book.*
Oculus, ī, *m.*	*eye.*
Puer, puerī, *m.*	*boy.*
Servus, ī, *m.*	*slave.*
Socer, socerī, *m.*	*father-in-law.*
Templum, ī, *n.*	*temple.*
Tyrannus, ī, *m.*	*tyrant.*

37. *Translate into English,[1] and give the* GENDER, NUMBER, *and* CASE *of each Noun, and the* TENSE, NUMBER, *and* PERSON *of each Verb.*

1. Oculus, oculī, oculō, oculum, ocule, oculōrum, oculīs, oculōs. 2. Socer, socerī, socerō, socerum, socerōrum, socerīs, socerōs. 3. Servī, tyrannī. 4. Puerī, generī. 5. Agrī, librī. 6. Templī, dōnī. 7. Servō, tyrannō. 8. Puerum, generum. 9. Agrōrum, librōrum. 10. Templa, dōna. 11. Servum, servōs. 12. Dōnō, dōnīs.

13. Fīlia tyrannī tacēbat. 14. Fīliae tyrannī tacent. 15. Servus agrum arat. 16. Servī agrum arābunt. 17. Servī rēgīnae agrōs arābant. 18. Rēgīna servōs laudābit.

[1] It is important that the pupil should early learn to recognize Latin words by their *sounds* as well as by their *forms.* Many teachers, therefore, frequently read the Latin to their classes, and require them to translate with closed books.

38. *Translate into Latin, and give the* GENDER, NUM-
BER, *and* CASE *of each Latin Noun.*

1. The slave, the slaves.   2. For the slave, for the slaves.
3. Of the slave, of the slaves.   4. Of the father-in-law, of the
son-in-law.   5. Of the fathers-in-law, of the sons-in-law.   6.
For the fathers-in-law, for the sons-in-law.   7. The gift, the
gifts.   8. With the gift, with the gifts.

9. The story delights the boy.   10. Stories delight boys.
11. The stories will delight the boys.   12. The boy was ex-
pecting a letter.   13. The boys were expecting letters.   14.
The queen praises her daughter.   15. The queen will praise
the daughter of the tyrant.

LESSON XV.

SECOND DECLENSION.

39. *Vocabulary.*

Agricola, ae, m.	husbandman, farmer.
Fortūna, ae, f.	fortune.
Pisistratus, ī, m.	Pisistratus, tyrant of Athens.
Terret,	he terrifies, frightens.
Verbum, ī, n.	word.

40. *Translate into English, and parse* SUBJECTS *and*
OBJECTS.

1. Dōnŏ, epistulā.   2. Dōnī, epistulae.   3. Dōnīs, epis-
tulīs.   4. Dōna fortūnae.   5. Dōnīs fortūnae.   6. Epistulā
tyrannī.   7. Epistulīs tyrannī.   8. Verba Pīsistratī tyrannī.

9. Verba tyrannī rēgīnam terrēbant.   10. Servus puerum
terret.   11. Servī puerōs terrēbunt.   12. Verba servī puerum
terrent.   13. Socer tyrannī tacēbat.

14. Puerī servōs rēgīnae timent.   15. Puer librum habet.
16. Puer librōs habēbit.   17. Puerī librōs habēbunt.   18.
Rēgīna tyrannum timēbat.   19. Tyrannum timēbit.   20.
Pīsistratum timēbant.   21. Pīsistratum tyrannum timēbant.

22. Servus rēgīnae tacēbat.   23. Servī rēgīnae tacēbunt.
24. Agricola agrum arat.   25. Agricola agrōs arābit.   26.
Agricolae agrōs arābant.

   41. *Translate into Latin, and parse the* LATIN VERBS.

   1. The tyrant, the crown.   2. The tyrants, the crowns.
3. Of the tyrant, of the crown.   4. Of the tyrants, of the
crowns.   5. To the tyrant, to the crown.   6. To the crown
of the tyrant.   7. For Pisistratus the tyrant.[1]   8. With the
crown of Pisistratus the tyrant.[1]   9. With the words of the
queen.   10. For the daughter of the queen.   11. The slave was
ploughing the field.   12. The slaves are ploughing the field.
   13. The slaves will plough the fields.   14. The son-in-law
has the letter.   15. He will have the letters.   16. The
tyrant will see the letter.   17. He will see the letter of the
queen.   18. The tyrant will see the letters of the queen.
19. The queen praises the boy.   20. She will praise the boys.
21. The boy fears the slave.   22. The boy will fear the
slaves.

LESSON XVI.

ADJECTIVES. — FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

42. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

   146. The Adjective is the part of speech which is used to
qualify nouns : *bonus*, good ; *măgnus*, great.

   NOTE. — The form of the adjective in Latin depends in part upon the
gender of the noun which it qualifies : *bonus puer*, a good boy ; *bona puella*,
a good girl ; *bonum templum*, a good temple. Thus in the Nominative
Singular, *bonus* is the form of the adjective when used with masculine
nouns, *bona* with feminine, and *bonum* with neuter.

   147. Some adjectives are partly of the first declension and
partly of the second, while all the rest are entirely of the
third declension.

---

   [1] In what case should the Latin word for *tyrant* be put?   See 13,
Rule II.

First and Second Declensions : A and O Stems.

148. Bonus, *good.*[1]

SINGULAR.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	bonus	bona	bonum
Gen.	bonī	bonae	bonī
Dat.	bonō	bonae	bonō
Acc.	bonum	bonam	bonum
Voc.	bone	bona	bonum
Abl.	bonō	bonā	bonō

PLURAL.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	bonī	bonae	bona
Gen.	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
Dat.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
Acc.	bonōs	bonās	bona
Voc.	bonī	bonae	bona
Abl.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

Servus Bonus, *a good slave.*[2]

SINGULAR.

Nom.	servus bonus,	a good slave.
Gen.	servī bonī,	of a good slave.
Dat.	servō bonō,	for a good slave.
Acc.	servum bonum,	a good slave.
Voc.	serve bone,	O good slave.
Abl.	servō bonō,	from a good slave.

PLURAL.

Nom.	servī bonī,	good slaves,
Gen.	servōrum bonōrum,	of good slaves,
Dat.	servīs bonīs,	for good slaves,
Acc.	servōs bonōs,	good slaves.
Voc.	servī bonī,	O good slaves.
Abl.	servīs bonīs,	from good slaves.

---

[1] Bonus is declined in the Masc. like *servus* of Decl. II., (35, 51,) in the Fem. like *mēnsa* of Decl. I., (10, 48), and in the Neut. like *templum* of Decl. II., (35, 51). The stems are *bono* in the Masc. and Neut., and *bonā* in the Fem.

[2] In English the adjective usually precedes its noun, but in Latin it sometimes precedes and sometimes follows, though when not *emphatic* it more frequently follows.

149. Liber, *free.*[1]

SINGULAR.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	līber	lībera	līberum
Gen.	līberī	līberae	līberī
Dat.	līberō	līberae	līberō
Acc.	līberum	līberam	līberum
Voc.	līber	lībera	līberum
Abl.	līberō	līberā	līberō

PLURAL.

Nom.	līberī	līberae	lībera
Gen.	līberōrum	līberārum	līberōrum
Dat.	līberīs	līberīs	līberīs
Acc.	līberōs	līberās	lībera
Voc.	līberī	līberae	lībera
Abl.	līberīs	līberīs	līberīs

150. Aeger, *sick.*[2]

SINGULAR.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	aeger	aegra	aegrum
Gen.	aegrī	aegrae	aegrī
Dat.	aegrō	aegrae	aegrō
Acc.	aegrum	aegram	aegrum
Voc.	aeger	aegra	aegrum
Abl.	aegrō	aegrā	aegrō

PLURAL.

Nom.	aegrī	aegrae	aegra
Gen.	aegrōrum	aegrārum	aegrōrum
Dat.	aegrīs	aegrīs	aegrīs
Acc.	aegrōs	aegrās	aegra
Voc.	aegrī	aegrae	aegra
Abl.	aegrīs	aegrīs	aegrīs

151. IRREGULARITIES. — Nine adjectives have in the singular **īus** in the Genitive and **ī** in the Dative, and are declined as follows:

---

[1] LĪBER is declined in the Masculine like *puer* (35, 51), and in the Feminine and Neuter like *bonus.*

[2] AEGER is declined in the Masculine like *ager* (35, 51), and in the Feminine and Neuter like *bonus.*

Solus, *alone.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.	
MASC.	**FEM.**	**NEUT.**	**MASC.**	**FEM.**	**NEUT.**
sōlŭs	sōla	sōlum	sōlī	sōlae	sōla
sōlĭus	sōlĭus	sōlĭus	sōlōrum	sōlārum	sōlōrum
sōlī	sōlī	sōlī	sōlīs	sōlīs	sōlīs
sōlŭm	sōlam	sōlum	sōlōs	sōlās	sōla
sōlē	sōla	sōlum	sōlī	sōlae	sōla
sōlō	sōlā	sōlō	sōlīs	sōlīs	sōlīs

1. These nine adjectives are: *alīus, a, ud,* another; *nūllus, a, um,* no one; *sōlus,* alone; *tōtus,* whole; *ūllus,* any; *ūnus,*[1] one; *alter, -tera, -terum,* the other; *uter, -tra, -trum,* which (of two); *neuter, -tra, trum,* neither.

LESSON XVII.

ADJECTIVES. — FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.
RULE XXXIV.

43. *Examine the following examples.*

1. Servus bonus.	*A good slave.*
2. Servī bonī.	*Of a good slave.*
3. Servīs bonīs.	*For good slaves.*
4. Vērae amīcitiae.[2]	*True friendships.*
5. Templum pulchrum.	*A beautiful temple.*

NOTE. — In these examples, observe that the adjectives are all in the same *Gender, Number,* and *Case* as their nouns. Thus *bonus* is in the Masculine Singular Nominative; *vērae* in the Feminine Plural Nominative; *pulchrum* in the Neuter Singular Nominative. This usage is expressed in the following

RULE XXXIV. — Agreement of Adjectives.

438. An adjective agrees with its noun in GENDER, NUMBER, and CASE:

Fortūna caeca est, fortune is blind.[3] Cic. *Vērae amīcitiae, true friendships.* Cic. *Magister optimus, the best teacher.* Cic.

---

[1] See declension, 97, 175. [2] See page 36, foot-note 2.

[3] Here the adjective *caeca* is in the feminine gender, in the singular number, and in the nominative case, to agree with *fortūna.* It is declined like BONUS: *caecus, caeca, caecum.*

44. *Model for parsing* ADJECTIVES.

Vērae amīcitiae. *True friendships.*

Vērae is an adjective (**42. 146**) of the First and Second Declensions (**42,** 147): STEM, *vĕrŏ* (**42,** 148, foot-note). Singular: N. *vĕrus, vĕra, vĕrum;* G. *vĕrī, vĕrae, vĕrī;* D. *vĕrō, vĕrae, vĕrō;* A. *vĕrum, vĕram, vĕrum;* V. *vĕre, vĕra, vĕrum;* A. *vĕrō, vĕrā, vĕrō.* Plural: N. *vĕrī, vĕrae, vĕra;* G. *vĕrōrum, vĕrārum, vĕrōrum;* D. *vĕrīs, vĕrīs, vĕrīs;* A. *vĕrōs, vĕrās, vĕra;* V. *vĕrī, vĕrae, vĕra;* A. *vĕrīs, vĕrīs, vĕrīs.* It is in the Nominative Plural Feminine, and agrees with its noun *amīcitiae,* according to Rule XXXIV.: "An Adjective agrees with its Noun in GENDER, NUMBER, and CASE."

45. *Certain Forms of the Verb Sum, I am.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Pres. est, *he, she,* or *it is;*	sunt, *they are.*
Imp. erat, *he, she,* or *it was;*	erant, *they were.*
Fut. erit, *he, she,* or *it will be;*	erunt, *they will be.*

46. *Vocabulary.*

Amīcus, ī, *m.*	*friend.*
Ānulus, ī, *m.*	*ring.*
Aureus, a, um,[1]	*golden, gold.*
Beātus, a, um,	*happy, blessed.*
Bonus, a, um,	*good.*
Ēgregius, a, um,	*distinguished.*
Est,	*he is.*
Exemplum, ī, *n.*	*example.*
Fīdus, a, um,	*faithful.*
Grātus, a, um,	*acceptable, pleasing.*
Māgnus, a, um,	*great, large.*
Pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum,	*beautiful.*
Sunt,	*they are.*
Vērus, a, um,	*true.*
Victōria, ae, *f.*	*victory.*
Vīta, ae, *f.*	*life.*

[1] The endings *a* and *um* belong respectively to the feminine and to the neuter. Thus *aureus, aurea, aureum,* like *bonus,* **42, 148.**

47. *Translate into English.*

1. Servus bonus.[1]   2. Servī bonī.   3. Servō bonō.   4. Servōrum bonōrum.   5. Servīs bonīs.   6. Rēgīna bona.   7. Rēgīnae bonae.   8. Rēgīnā bonā.   9. Rēgīnārum bonārum.   10. Rēgīnīs bonīs.   11. Exemplī bonī.   12. Exempla bona.   13. Ager pulcher; puella pulchra; dōnum pulchrum. ·

14. Agrī pulchrī; puellae pulchrae; dōna pulchra.   15. Aureus ānulus; aureī ānulī.   16. Māgna glōria; beāta vita; egregia vīctōria.   17. Corōna aurea.   18. Corōna aurea est.   19. Corōnae sunt aureae.[2]   20. Rēgīna corōnam laudat.   21. Rēgīna bona corōnam auream laudat.   22. Puella pulchra rēgīnam bonam amat.   23. Puellae bonae rēgīnam pulchram amant.   24. Servus fīdus est.   25. Servī sunt fīdī.

48. *Translate into Latin.*

1. A true[3] friend.   2. The true[3] friends.   3. For a true friend.   4. For true friends.   5. Of the true friend.   6. Of true friends.   7. True glory.   8. With true glory.   9. Of true glory.   10. An acceptable word.   11. Acceptable words.   12. With acceptable words.   13. Of acceptable words.   14. A beautiful book.   15. The beautiful books.   16. With a beautiful book.   17. Of beautiful books.

18. The beautiful queen.[4]   19. The queen is beautiful.   20. They praise the good queen.   21. The girls are good.   22. The good girls love the beautiful queen.   23. The beautiful queen loves the good girls.   24. The book is beautiful.

---

[1] On the position of the adjective in Latin, see page 38, foot-note 2. *Bonus* agrees with *servus*, according to Rule XXXIV.

[2] While in general the verb in Latin occupies the last place in the sentence, *est* and *sunt* often stand between the subject and the predicate adjective, as in this sentence. Some freedom of arrangement is, however, allowed. Thus *Corōnae sunt aureae* might be *corōnae aureae sunt*, and *corōna aurea est*, above, might be *corōna est aurea*.

[3] Put the adjective in the right form to agree with its noun, according to Rule XXXIV.

[4] In translating English into Latin, the pupil is expected, in the arrangement of words, to imitate the order followed in the Latin Exercises.

25. The books are beautiful. 26. Friends are faithful. 27. The queen loves faithful friends.

LESSON XVIII.

THIRD DECLENSION — CONSONANT AND **I** NOUNS.

49. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

55. Nouns of the third declension end in

a, e, ĭ, ŏ, y, c, l, n, r, s, t, and x.

56. Nouns of this declension may be divided into two classes:

I. Nouns whose stem ends in a *Consonant.*

II. Nouns whose stem ends in **I.**

CLASS I. — CONSONANT STEMS.

57. STEMS ENDING IN A LABIAL: **B** OR **P.**

Prīnceps, M.,[1] *a leader, chief.*

	SINGULAR.		CASE-SUFFIXES.
Nom.	prīnceps,	*a leader,*	s
Gen.	prīncipĭs,	*of a leader,*	is
Dat.	prīncipī,	*to, for a leader,*	ī
Acc.	prīncipem,	*a leader,*	em
Voc.	prīnceps,	*O leader,*	s
Abl.	prīncipe,	*from, with, by a leader,*	e

	PLURAL.		
Nom.	prīncipēs,	*leaders,*	ēs
Gen.	prīncipum,	*of leaders,*	um
Dat.	prīncipĭbus,	*to, for leaders,*	ibus
Acc.	prīncipēs,	*leaders,*	ēs
Voc.	prīncipēs,	*O leaders,*	ēs
Abl.	prīncipĭbus,	*from, with, by leaders.*	ibus

1. STEM AND CASE-SUFFIXES. — In this Paradigm observe —

1) That the stem is *prīncep,* modified before an additional syllable to *prīncip;* see **1, 22,** and **49, 57, 2.**

---

[1] See 11, foot-note 3.

2) That the case-suffixes appear distinct and separate from the stem[1]; see 10, 46, 1, and 10, 47, note 2.

2. VARIABLE VOWEL. — In the final syllable of dissyllabic consonant stems, short *e* or *i* generally takes the form of *e* in the Nominative and Vocative Singular, and that of *i* in all the other cases. Thus *princeps, principis,* and *jūdex, jūdicis* (53, 59), alike have *e* in the Nominative and Vocative Singular and *i* in all the other cases, though in *princeps* the original form of the radical vowel is **e,** and in *jūdex,* **i.** For a similar change in the vowel of the stem, see *miles, mīlitis* (49, 58), and *carmen, carminis* (58, 60). See also *opus, operis* (58, 61).

58. STEMS ENDING IN A DENTAL : D OR T.

	Lapis, M., *stone.*	Aetās, F., *age.*	Mīles, M., *soldier.*
		SINGULAR.	
Nom.	lapis	aetās	miles
Gen.	lapidis	aetātis	mīlitis
Dat.	lapidī	aetātī	mīlitī
Acc.	lapidem	aetātem	mīlitem
Voc.	lapis	aetās	miles
Abl.	lapide	aetāte	mīlite
		PLURAL.	
Nom.	lapidēs	aetātēs	mīlitēs
Gen.	lapidum	aetātum	mīlitum
Dat.	lapidībus	aetātībus	mīlitībus
Acc.	lapidēs	aetātēs	mīlitēs
Voc.	lapidēs	aetātēs	mīlitēs
Abl.	lapidībus	aetātībus	mīlitībus

	Nepōs, M., *grandson.*	Virtūs, F., *virtue.*	Caput, N., *head.*
		SINGULAR.	
Nom.	nepōs	virtūs	caput
Gen.	nepōtis	virtūtis	capitis
Dat.	nepōtī	virtūtī	capitī
Acc.	nepōtem	virtūtem	caput
Voc.	nepōs	virtūs	caput
Abl.	nepōte	virtūte	capite

[1] Thus, *princep-s, princip-is,* etc. In the first and second declensions, on the contrary, the suffix can not be separated from the final vowel of the stem in such forms as *mēnsis, pueri, agris,* etc.

PLURAL.

Nom.	nepōtēs	virtūtēs	capita
Gen.	nepōtum	virtūtum	capitum
Dat.	nepōtĭbus	virtūtĭbus	capitĭbus
Acc.	nepōtēs	virtūtēs	capita
Voc.	nepōtēs	virtūtēs	capita
Abl.	nepōtĭbus	virtūtĭbus	capitĭbus

1. STEMS AND CASE-SUFFIXES. — In these Paradigms observe —

1) That the stems are *lapid, aetāt, milit, nepōt, virtūt,* and *caput.*

2) That *miles* has the variable vowel, e, i, and *caput,* u, i.

3) That the dental d or t is dropped before s: *lapis* for *lapids, aetās* for *aetāts, miles* for *milets, virtūs* for *virtūts.*

4) That the case-suffixes, except in the *neuter,* caput (**10, 46**), are the same as those given above; see **49, 57.**

5) That the *neuter,* caput, has no case-suffix in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Singular, a in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Plural, and the suffixes of masculine and feminine nouns in the other cases.

LESSON XIX.

THIRD DECLENSION. — CLASS I.

50. *Vocabulary.*

Caput, capĭtis, *n.*	*head.*
Comes, comĭtis, *m. and f.*	*companion.*
Hospes, hospĭtis, *m.*	*guest, host.*
Lapis, lapĭdis, *m.*	*stone.*
Miles, milĭtis, *m.*	*soldier.*
Nepōs, nepōtis, *m.*	*grandson.*
Princeps, princĭpis, *m.*	*leader, chief, chieftain.*
Virtūs, virtūtis, *f.*	*virtue, valor, bravery.*

51. *Translate into English.*

1. Prīncĭpis, prīncĭpum.   2. Prīncĭpem, prīncĭpēs.   3. Mīles, mīlĭtēs.   4. Mīlĭtī, mīlĭtĭbus.   5. Caput, capĭta.   6. Capĭte, capĭtĭbus.   7. Lapis, lapĭdēs.   8. Lapĭdis, lapĭdum.   9. Lapĭde, lapĭdĭbus.   10. Nepōtis, nepōtēs, nepōtĭbus.   11. Virtūtis, virtūte, virtūtēs, virtūtĭbus.

12. Virtūs mīlitum. 13. Virtūte mīlitum. 14. Virtūtem mīlitum timet. 15. Tyrannus virtūtem mīlitum timēbat. 16. Rēgīna virtūtem mīlitum laudat. 17. Fīlia rēgīnae mīlitēs laudābit. 18. Mīlitēs fīliam rēgīnae laudant. 19. Pīsistratum tyrannum accūsat. 20. Pīsistratum tyrannum accūsābant. 21. Mīles dōnum pulchrum videt. 22. Mīlitēs dōna pulchra vident. 23. Tyrannus prīncipēs timēbat.

52. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The chief, the chiefs. 2. For the chiefs, for the chief. 3. Of the chief, of the guests. 4. Of the chiefs, of the guest. 5. For the soldier, for the guest, for the companions. 6. To the soldiers, to the guests, to the companion. 7. The guest of the queen. 8. For the guest of the queen. 9. For the guests of the queen. 10. For Tullia, the queen.

11. The companions of Tullia, the queen. 12. For the companions of Tullia, the queen. 13. They accuse Tullia, the queen. 14. They were accusing the companions of Tullia, the queen. 15. They fear the tyrant. 16. They will fear the grandson of the tyrant. 17. The friends of the queen praise the chief. 18. The friend of the queen was praising the good chiefs.

LESSON XX.

THIRD DECLENSION. — CLASS I. — RULE XII.

53. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

59. STEMS ENDING IN A GUTTURAL: C OR G.

Rēx, M., king.	Jūdex, M. & F., judge.	Rādīx, F., root.	Dux, M. & F., leader.
		SINGULAR.	
Nom. rēx	jūdex	rādīx	dux
Gen. rēgis	jūdicis	rādīcis	ducis
Dat. rēgī	jūdicī	rādīcī	ducī
Acc. rēgem	jūdicem	rādīcem	ducem
Voc. rēx	jūdex	rādīx	dux
Abl. rēge	jūdice	rādīce	duce

PLURAL.

Nom.	rēgēs	jūdicēs	rădīcēs	ducēs
Gen.	rēgum	jūdicum	rădīcum	ducum
Dat.	rēgĭbus	jūdicĭbus	rădīcĭbus	ducĭbus
Acc.	rēgēs	jūdicēs	rădīcēs	ducēs
Voc.	rēgēs	jūdicēs	rădīcēs	ducēs
Abl.	rēgĭbus	jūdicĭbus	rădīcĭbus	ducĭbus

1. **Stems and Case-Suffixes.** — In the Paradigms observe —

1) That the stems are *rēg, jŭdic, rădīc,* and *duc; jŭdic* with the variable vowel, **ĭ, e**; see **49, 57, 2.**

2) That the case-suffixes are those given in **48, 57.**

3) That **s** in the Nominative and Vocative Singular unites with *c* or *g* of the stem, and forms *x*; see **1, 30.**

54. *Examine the following examples.*

1. *Imperiō* pāret.	*He is obedient* TO (obeys) AUTHORITY.
2. *Hōc mihĭ* placet.	*This is pleasing* TO (pleases) ME.
3. *Nōbīs* vīta data est.	*Life has been given* TO US.
4. *Lēgēs cīvitātī* scrīpsit.	*He wrote laws* FOR THE STATE.

NOTE. — In these examples *imperiō,* 'to authority,' *mihĭ,* 'to me,' *nōbīs,* 'to us,' and *cīvitātī,* 'for the state,' are examples of what is called the *Indirect Object.* The first is the Indirect Object of *pāret,* the second of *placet,* the third of *data est,* and the fourth of *scrīpsit.* If the verb is transitive (**14, 193**), as in the last example, an *Accusative* of the *Direct Object* (**25, 371**) may be used in addition to the *Indirect Object.* Observe that in these examples the *Indirect Objects* are all in the *Dative Case.* This is in accordance with the following

RULE XII. — Dative with Verbs.

384. The INDIRECT OBJECT of an action is put in the Dative. It is used —

I. With INTRANSITIVE and PASSIVE Verbs:

Serviunt *populō, they are devoted* TO THE PEOPLE.[1] Cic. *Imperiō* pārēbant, *they were obedient* TO (obeyed) AUTHORITY. Caes. Temporī

---

[1] *Populō,* 'to the people,' is in the Dative, and is the Indirect Object of *serviunt,* 'they serve' or 'are devoted;' *plēbi,* 'to the common people,' is the Indirect Object of the transitive verb *dedit,* 'he gave,' which also takes the Direct Object *agrōs,* 'fields,' 'lands.'

cēdit, *he yields to the time.* Cic. Labōrī student, *they devote them-selves to labor.* Caes. Mundus deō pāret, *the world obeys God.* Cic. Nōbis vīta data est, *life has been granted to us.* Cic.

II. With TRANSITIVE Verbs, in connection with the
DIRECT OBJECT:

Agrōs plēbī [1] dedit, *he gave lands* TO THE COMMON PEOPLE. Cic. Tibī grātiās agō, *I give thanks* TO YOU. Cic. Pōns iter hostibus dedit, *the bridge gave a passage to the enemy.* Liv. Lēgēs cīvitātibus suīs scrīpsērunt, *they prepared laws for their states.* Cic.

LESSON XXI.

THIRD DECLENSION. — CLASS I. — EXERCISES.

55. *Vocabulary.*

Dīvīnus, a, um,	*divine.*
Dōnat,	*he presents.*
Humānus, a, um,	*human.*
Inīquus, a, um,	*unjust.*
Jūdex, jūdicis, *m. and f.*	*judge.* [Central Italy.
Latīnus, ī, *m.*	*Latinus,* King of the Laurentians in
Lāvīnia, ae, *f.*	*Lavinia,* daughter of King Latinus.
Lēx, lēgis, *f.*	*law.*
Nātūra, ae, *f.*	*nature.*
Pāret,	*he obeys.*
Placet,	*he pleases.*
Rēx, rēgis, *m.*	*king.*
Superbus, a, um,	*proud.*

56. *Translate into English.*

1. Corōna, corōnae, rēx, rēgis. 2. Rēgīnae, rēgīnārum, jūdicis, jūdicum. 3. Rēgis bonī, rēgēs superbī. 4. Virtūs rēgis bonī. 5. Virtūte rēgis bonī. 6. Nepōs rēgis superbī. 7. Bonus rēgis nepōs. 8. Lēx dīvīna, lēgēs humānae. 9. Lēx nātūrae, lēge nātūrae. 10. Rēx lēgibus [2] pāret. 11. Rēx bonus lēgibus pārēbat. 12. Rēgēs bonī lēgibus dīvīnīs pārēbunt.

---

[1] See foot-note, page 47. [2] In what case? See 54, Rule XII.

13. Lēx dīvīna rēgī bonō placet. 14. Lēgēs bonae jūdicī placent. 15. Jūdex bonus rēgem superbum timet. 16. Rēgem superbum timēbit. 17. Rēgēs superbōs timēbunt. 18. Rēgīna jūdicem bonum laudābat. 19. Jūdex rēgem bonum laudābit. 20. Rēgīna bona jūdicem inīquum timēbat. 21. Jūdex puerō librum dōnat. 22. Fīlia rēgīnae puellīs librōs dōnābit.

57. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The daughter of the king. 2. For the daughter of the king. 3. For the daughters of the good king. 4. For the good daughter of the king. 5. The poet praises the king.[1]
6. The good poet was praising the daughter of the king. 7. The poets praise Lavinia, the daughter of Latinus, the king.

8. They were praising the virtues of the good king. 9. The queen was praising the bravery of the soldier. 10. The poets will praise the bravery of the soldiers. 11. The soldiers will obey the laws.[1] 12. The king will present a golden crown[1] to the queen.[1]

LESSON XXII.

THIRD DECLENSION. — CLASS I.

58. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

60. STEMS ENDING IN **L, M, N,** OR **R.**

	Sōl, M., *sun.*	Cōnsul, M., *consul.*	Passer, M., *sparrow.*	Pater, M., *father.*
		SINGULAR.		
Nom.	sōl	cōnsul	passer	pater
Gen.	sōlis	cōnsulis	passeris	patris
Dat.	sōlī	cōnsulī	passerī	patrī
Acc.	sōlem	cōnsulem	passerem	patrem
Voc.	sōl	cōnsul	passer	pater
Abl.	sōle	cōnsule	passere	patre

[1] In what case will you put the Latin word for *king?* 25, Rule V.; the Latin words for *laws, crown, to the queen?* 54, 348, I. and II.

3

PLURAL.

Nom.	sŏlēs[1]	cōnsulēs	passerēs	patrēs
Gen.		cōnsulum	passerum	patrum
Dat.	sŏlĭbus	cōnsulĭbus	passerĭbus	patrĭbus
Acc.	sŏlēs	cōnsulēs	passerēs	patrēs
Voc.	sŏlēs	cōnsulēs	passerēs	patrēs
Abl.	sŏlĭbus	cōnsulĭbus	passerĭbus	patrĭbus

	Păstor, M., shepherd.	Leō, M., lion.	Virgŏ, F., maiden.	Carmen, N., song.

SINGULAR.

Nom.	păstor	leŏ	virgŏ	carmen
Gen.	păstŏrĭs	leōnĭs	virginĭs	carminĭs
Dat.	păstŏrī	leōnī	virginī	carminī
Acc.	păstŏrem	leōnem	virginem	carmen
Voc.	păstor	leŏ	virgŏ	carmen
Abl.	păstŏre	leōne	virgine	carmine

PLURAL.

Nom.	păstŏrēs	leōnēs	virginēs	carmina
Gen.	păstŏrum	leōnum	virginum	carminum
Dat.	păstŏrĭbus	leōnĭbus	virginĭbus	carminĭbus
Acc.	păstŏrēs	leōnēs	virginēs	carmina
Voc.	păstŏrēs	leōnēs	virginēs	carmina
Abl.	păstŏrĭbus	leōnĭbus	virginĭbus	carminĭbus

1. STEMS AND CASE-SUFFIXES. — In the Paradigms observe —

1) The stems are *sōl, cōnsul, passer, patr, păstŏr, leōn, virgon, carmen.*

2) *Virgŏ* (virgon) has the variable vowel, o, i, and *carmen*, e, i.

3) In the Nominative and Vocative Singular s, the case-suffix, is omitted, the stem *păstŏr* shortens o, while *leōn* and *virgon* drop n.

61. STEMS ENDING IN S.

	Flōs, M., flower.	Jūs, N., right.	Opus, N., work.	Corpus, N., body.

SINGULAR.

Nom.	flōs	jūs	opus	corpus
Gen.	flōrĭs	jūrĭs	operĭs	corporĭs
Dat.	flōrī	jūrī	operī	corporī
Acc.	flōrem	jūs	opus	corpus
Voc.	flōs	jūs	opus	corpus
Abl.	flōre	jūre	opere	corpore

[1] Many monosyllables want the Genitive Plural.

PLURAL.

Nom.	flōrēs	jūra	opera	corpora
Gen.	flōrum	jūrum	operum	corporum
Dat.	flōrĭbus	jūrĭbus	operĭbus	corporĭbus
Acc.	flōrēs	jūra	opera	corpora
Voc.	flōrēs	jūra	opera	corpora
Abl.	flōrĭbus	jūrĭbus	operĭbus	corporĭbus

1. STEMS AND CASE-SUFFIXES. — In the Paradigms observe —

1) That the stems are *flŏs, jŭs, opos,* and *corpos.*

2) That *opus* has the variable vowel, e, u, and *corpus,* o, u.

3) That s of the stem becomes r between two vowels: *flŏs, flŏris* (for *flŏsis*).

4) That the Nominative and Vocative Singular omit the case-suffix; see **58, 60, 1, 3).**

LESSON XXIII.

THIRD DECLENSION. — RULE I. — EXERCISES.

59. Examine the following examples.

1. Servius *rēx.*	*Servius* THE KING.
2. Servius *rēx* erat.	*Servius was* KING.
3. Artemīsia, Mausōli *uxor.*	*Artemīsia,* THE WIFE *of Mausolus.*
4. Artemīsia Mausōli *uxor* erat.	*Artemīsia was* THE WIFE *of Mausolus.*

NOTE 1.— In the first example *rēx* is an Appositive; see **31,** Rule II. In the second example, however, *rēx* is predicated or affirmed of *Servius,* — Servius was king, — and is called a Predicate Noun. *Rēx erat* is the Predicate of the sentence of which *Servius* is the subject. In the third example *uxor* is an *Appositive,* while in the fourth it is a *Predicate Noun,* predicated of *Artemīsia.*

NOTE 2. — In the second and fourth examples observe that *rēx* and *uxor* are in the same case as the nouns of which they are predicated, *i.e.* in the Nominative. This usage is expressed in the following

RULE I. — Predicate Nouns.[1]

362. A noun predicated of another noun denoting the same person or thing agrees with it in CASE.

---

[1] For a Model for Parsing Nouns, see **22.**

Brūtus *custŏs* [1] lībertātis fuit, *Brutus was the* GUARDIAN *of liberty.*
Liv. Servius *rēx* est dēclārātus, *Servius was declared* KING. Liv.
Orestem sē esse dixit, *he said that he was* ORESTES.   Cic.

60. *Vocabulary.*

Bellum, ī, *n.*	*war.*
Brūtus, ī, *m.*	*Brutus*, a Roman name.
Cāria, ae, *f.*	*Caria*, a country in Asia Minor.
Catŏ, ōnis, *m.*	*Cato*, a Roman name.
Causa, ae, *f.*	*cause.*
Cicerŏ, ōnis, *m.*	*Cicero*, a Roman orator and states-
Exsul, ulis, *m. and f.*	*exile.* [man.
Frāter, frātris, *m.*	*brother.*
Herodotus, ī, *m.*	*Herodotus*, a Greek historian.
Historia, ae, *f.*	*history.*
Imperātor, ōris, *m.*	*general, commander.*
Libertās, ātis, *f.*	*liberty, freedom.*
Mausōlus, ī, *m.*	*Mausolus*, King of Caria.
Numa, ae, *m.*	*Numa*, second of the legendary kings
Ōrātor, ōris, *m.*	*orator.* [of Rome.
Uxor, ōris, *f.*	*wife.*
Victor, ōris, *m.*	*conqueror.*
Vindex, vindicis, *m. and f.*	*defender.*

61. *Translate into English.*

1. Rēgis, mīlitis. 2. Rēgēs, mīlitēs. 3. Rēgibus, mīliti-
bus. 4. Jūdicis, jūdicum, jūdicibus. 5. Leŏ, leōnis, leōnēs.
6. Virgŏ, virginis, virginēs.   7. Cicerŏ cōnsul, Cicerōnī
cōnsulī. 8. Cicerŏ cōnsul erat. 9. Vindex lībertātis.[2] 10.
Brūtus, vindex lībertātis. 11. Brūtus est vindex[3] lībertātis.
12. Virtūs rēgis, virtūtēs rēgum.   13. Bellī causa, bellī

---

[1] In these examples *custŏs, rēx*, and *Orestem* are all predicate nouns, and
agree in case respectively with *Brūtus, Servius*, and *sē.*

[2] *Lībertātis* is in the Genitive, depending upon *vindex*, according to
31, Rule XVI. The Genitive generally follows its noun, as in this in-
stance, but sometimes, especially when emphatic, it precedes, as in *bellī
causa* below.

[3] *Vindex* in 10 is an *Appositive*, according to 31, Rule II., but in 11 it is
a *Predicate Noun*, according to 59, Rule I.

causās. 14. Tullia, rēgis fīlia.¹ 15. Herodotus, pater his-
toriae. 16. Catŏ, māgnus imperātor. 17. Catŏ māgnus
imperātor erat.

18. Jūstitia, rēgīna virtūtum. 19. Jūstitia est rēgīna vir-
tūtum. 20. Artemīsia rēgis² uxor erat. 21. Artemīsia
Mausōlī, Cariae rēgis,³ uxor erat. 22. Virtūs est comes
sapientiae. 23. Virtūtēs sunt comitēs sapientiae. 24. Jūdex
virtūtem rēgis laudat. 25. Virtūtēs rēgis bonī laudābat.
26. Poētae virtūtēs Numae, rēgis bonī, laudābunt. 27. Rēx
bonus⁴ est. 28. Pater jūdicis rēgem bonum laudābit. 29.
Tulliam, rēgis fīliam,⁵ accusābant.

62. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The exile, the exiles. 2. For the exile, for the exiles.
3. Of shepherds, of orators. 4. Of a shepherd, of an orator.
5. Father, brother. 6. To the father, to the brother. 7.
Of the kings, of the laws. 8. For the conqueror, of the
conqueror. 9. The brother of the conqueror.

10. The soldiers fear the king. 11. Latinus was the king.⁶
12. Lavinia was the daughter of Latinus. 13. Lavinia was
the daughter of Latinus, the king.⁷ 14. The daughter of the
king was praising the faithful slave. 15. The orator will
praise the wisdom of the judge. 16. Cicero, the orator,
praises the bravery of the conqueror. 17. Cicero, the consul,
praises the bravery of the soldiers. 18. The judge praises
the wisdom of Cicero, the consul.

---

¹ *Filia* governs *rēgis*, according to Rule XVI., but is itself in apposi-
tion with *Tullia*, according to Rule II. The *appositive* generally follows
its noun.

² Remember that the Genitive sometimes precedes the governing word,
especially when it is emphatic.

³ What is the construction of *rēgis?* See 31, Rule II.

⁴ See 43, Rule XXXIV.

⁵ Explain the case of *fīliam.* See 31 and 25, Rules II. and V.

⁶ A Predicate Noun. See 59, Rule I.

⁷ In what case will you put the Latin word? See 31, Rule II.

LESSON XXIV.

THIRD DECLENSION. — CLASS II. — I STEMS.

63. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

CLASS II. — I STEMS.

62. STEMS ENDING IN I. — *Nouns in* is *and* ēs, *not increasing in the Genitive.*[1]

	Tussis, F., *cough.*	Turris, F., *tower.*	Ignis, M., *fire.*	Hostis, M. & F., *enemy.*	Nūbēs, F., *cloud.*
			SINGULAR.		
Nom.	tussis	turris	ignis	hostis	nūbēs
Gen.	tussis	turris	ignis	hostis	nūbis
Dat.	tussī	turrī	ignī	hostī	nūbī
Acc.	tussim	turrim, em	ignem	hostem	nūbem
Voc.	tussis	turris	ignis	hostis	nūbēs
Abl.	tussī	turrī, e	ignī, e	hoste	nūbe
			PLURAL.		
Nom.	tussēs	turrēs	ignēs	hostēs	nūbēs
Gen.	tussium	turrium	ignium	hostium	nūbium
Dat.	tussibus	turribus	ignibus	hostibus	nūbibus
Acc.	tussēs, īs	turrēs, īs	ignēs, īs	hostēs, īs	nūbēs, īs
Voc.	tussēs	turrēs	ignēs	hostēs	nūbēs
Abl.	tussibus	turribus	ignibus	hostibus	nūbibus

I. PARADIGMS. — Observe —

1. That the stems are *tussi, turri, igni, hosti,* and *nūbi.*

2. That the case-endings, including the characteristic i, which disappears in certain cases, are as follows: —

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom.	is, ēs	ēs
Gen.	is	ium
Dat.	ī	ibus
Acc.	im, em	ēs, īs
Voc.	is	ēs
Abl.	ī, e	ibus

---

[1] That is, having as many syllables in the Nominative Singular as in the Genitive Singular.

63. STEMS ENDING IN I.—*Neuters in* **e, al,** *and* **ar.**

Mare, *sea.*   Animal, *animal.*   Calcar, *spur.*

			SINGULAR.	CASE-ENDINGS.
Nom.	mare	animal	calcar	e— 1
Gen.	maris	animālis	calcāris	is
Dat.	marī	animālī	calcārī	ī
Acc.	mare	animal	calcar	e—
Voc.	mare	animal	calcar	e—
Abl.	marī	animālī	calcārī	ī
			PLURAL.	
Nom.	maria	animālia	calcāria	ia
Gen.	marium	animālium	calcārium	ium
Dat.	maribus	animālibus	calcāribus	ibus
Acc.	maria	animālia	calcāria	ia
Voc.	maria	animālia	calcāria	ia
Abl.	maribus	animālibus	calcāribus	ibus

1. PARADIGMS. — Observe —

1) That the stem-ending i is changed to e in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Singular of *mare,* and dropped in the same cases of *animal* (for *animāle*) and *calcar* (for *calcāre*).

2) That the case-endings include the characteristic i.

64. STEMS ENDING IN I.—*Nouns in* **s** *and* **x** *generally preceded by a consonant.*

Cliēns, M. & F.,   Urbs, F.,   Arx, F.,   Mūs,[2] M.,
client.   *city.*   *citadel.*   *mouse.*

			SINGULAR.	
Nom.	cliēns	urbs	arx	mūs
Gen.	clientis[3]	urbis	arcis	mūris
Dat.	clientī	urbī	arcī	mūrī
Acc.	clientem	urbem	arcem	mūrem
Voc.	cliēns	urbs	arx	mūs
Abl.	cliente	urbe	arce	mūre

---

[1] The dash here implies that the case-ending is sometimes wanting.

[2] *Cliēns* is for *clientis*, *urbs* for *urbis*, *arx* for *arcis*, and *mūs* for *mūsis*. *Mūs*, originally an s-stem, Greek μῦς, became an i-stem in Latin by assuming i.

[3] The vowel e is here short before nt, but long before ns; see 4, 16, note 2. Indeed, it seems probable that nt and nd shorten a preceding vowel, as ns lengthens it.

PLURAL.

Nom.	clientēs	urbēs	arcēs	mūrēs
Gen.	clientium	urbium	arcium	mūrium
Dat.	clientĭbus	urbĭbus	arcĭbus	mūrĭbus
Acc.	clientēs, Is	urbēs, Is	arcēs, Is	mūrēs, Is
Voc.	clientēs	urbēs	arcēs	mūrēs
Abl.	clientĭbus	urbĭbus	arcĭbus	mūrĭbus

I. PARADIGMS. — Observe —

1) That the stems are *clienti*, *urbi*, *arci*, and *mūri*.

2) That these nouns are declined in the singular precisely like consonant-stems, and in the plural precisely like all other masculine and feminine *i*-stems.

65. SUMMARY OF I-STEMS. — To I-stems belong —

1. All nouns in **is** and **ēs** which do not increase in the Genitive ; see **63**, 62.

2. Neuters in **e**, **al** (for **ālis**), and **ar** (for **āris**); see **63**, 63.

3. Many nouns in **s** and **x** — especially (1) nouns in **ns** and **rs**, and (2) monosyllables in **s** and **x** preceded by a consonant ; see **63**, 64.

66, 4. LOCATIVE. — Many names of towns have a Locative Singular in **I** or **e** denoting the *place in which* (8, 45, 2). *Karthāginī* or *Karthāgine*, at Carthage, *Tiburi* or *Tibure*, at Tibur.

LESSON XXV.

GENDER IN THIRD DECLENSION. — RULE XXXIII.— EXERCISES.

64. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

GENDER IN THIRD DECLENSION.

99. Nouns in the third declension ending in

<div align="center">

ŏ, or, ōs, er, and in **ēs** and **es**

</div>

increasing in the Genitive,[1] are masculine: *sermŏ,* discourse ; *dolor,* pain ; *mōs,* custom ; *agger,* mound ; *pēs,* Genitive *pedis,* foot.

---

[1] That is, having more syllables in the Genitive than in the Nominative.

105. Nouns of the third declension ending in

<p style="text-align:center">ās, as, is, ys, x, in ĕs</p>

not increasing in the Genitive, and in **s** *preceded by a consonant*, are feminine: *aetās*, age; *nāvis*, ship; *chlamys*, cloak; *pāx*, peace; *nūbēs*, cloud; *urbs*, city.

111. Nouns of the third declension ending in

<p style="text-align:center">a, e, ĭ, y, c, l, n, t, ār, ar, ur, ūs, and us</p>

are neuter:[1] *poēma*, poem; *mare*, sea; *lāc*, milk; *animal*, animal; *carmen*, song; *caput*, head; *corpus*, body.

65. *Examine the following examples.*

1. Apud *concilium.*   *In the presence of* THE COUNCIL.
2. Post *castra.*   *Behind* THE CAMP.
3. Ab *urbe.*   *From* THE CITY.
4. Prō *castris.*   *Before* THE CAMP.

NOTE. — Observe that in the first and second of these examples, the nouns after the prepositions *apud* and *post* are in the *Accusative*, and that in the third and fourth the nouns after *ab* and *prō* are in the *Ablative.* This general usage is expressed in the following

RULE XXXIII. — Cases with Prepositions.

432. The Accusative and Ablative may be used with prepositions.[2]

---

[1] Nouns whose gender is determined by *Signification* (6, 42) may be exceptions to these rules for gender as determined by *Endings.*

[2] The Preposition is the part of speech which shows the relation of objects to each other: *apud jūdicem dixit,* 'he spoke in the presence of the judge'; *prō castris,* 'before the camp.' Here *apud* and *prō* are prepositions. In the Vocabulary, each preposition, as it occurs, will be marked as such; and the case which may be used with it will be specified. No special Model for parsing Nouns with *Prepositions* is deemed necessary, as all nouns are parsed substantially in the same way; though different rules are, of course, assigned for different cases, and even for different uses of the same case. In parsing Nouns with Prepositions give Rule XXXIII.

Ad amīcum scrīpsī, *I have written to a friend.* Cic. In cūriam, *into the senate-house.* Liv. In Ítaliā,[1] *in Italy.* Nep. Prō castrīs, *before the camp.* Caes.

66. *Vocabulary.*

Aedificat,	*he builds.*
Ante, *prep. w. acc.*	*before.*
Apud, *prep. w. acc.*	*in the presence of, among, in; of an author, in the works of.*
Caesar, aris, *m.*	*Caesar, the celebrated Roman statesman and general.*
Cīvis, cīvis, *m.*	*citizen.*
Cīvitās, ātis, *f.*	*state.*
Contrā, *prep. w. acc.*	*against, contrary to.*
Habitat,	*he resides, lives, dwells.*
Hostis, is, *m. and f.*	*enemy.*
In, *prep. w. acc. and abl.*	*into, in.*
Lūx, lūcis, *f.*	*light.*
Multus, a, um,	*much, many.*
Nāvis, is, *f.*	*ship.*
Oppūgnat,	*he assaults, attacks.*
Patria, ae, *f.*	*native country.*
Prō, *prep. w. abl.*	*for, before.*
Pūgnat,	*he fights.*
Rōmulus, ī, *m.*	*Romulus,* the legendary founder [of Rome.
Superat,	*he conquers.*

67. *Translate into English.*

1. Hostem, hostēs, hostibus. 2. Turrim, turrium, turribus. 8. Leōnēs, virginēs. 4. Clientēs Cicerōnis. 5. Pater Cicerōnis cōnsulis. 6. Ante lūcem.[2] 7. Contrā nātūram. 8. Contrā lēgēs nātūrae. 9. Ante Rōmulum. 10. Apud Herodotum sunt fābulae. 11. Apud Herodotum, patrem· historiae, sunt multae fābulae. 12. Mīlitēs prō patriā pūgnābant. 13.

---

[1] Here the Ablative *Ítaliā* is used with *in*, though, in the second example, the Accusative *cūriam* is used with the same preposition. The rule is, that the Latin preposition *in* is used with the Accusative when it means *into*, and that it is used with the Ablative when it means *in*.

[2] The Accusative *lūcem* is here used with the preposition *ante*, according to Rule XXXIII., 432.

Mīlitēs prō lībertāte pūgnant. 14. Cīvis bonus lēgibus patriae pāret.

15. Cōnsul in urbe habitābat. 16. Hostēs urbem oppūgnābant. 17. Rēx urbēs multās oppūgnābit. 18. Caesar hostēs superābat. 19. Cōnsul virtūtem hostium timēbat. 20. Mīlitēs cōnsulibus pārēbunt. 21. Caesar turrim oppūgnābat. 22. Rēx turrēs oppūgnābit. 23. Hostēs arcem oppūgnābunt. 24. Hostēs nāvēs multās habent. 25. Caesarī pūgnam nūntiant. 26. Cīvēs bonī lēgibus pārent. 27. Cōnsulēs virtūtem hostium timent.

68. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The citizen, to the citizen, for citizens. 2. A king, a law. 3. Of fire, with fire. 4. Of the animal, for the animals. 5. The law of the state. 6. The laws of the state. 7. Contrary to the law.[1] 8. Contrary to the laws of the state. 9. The citizens praise the law. 10. They praise the laws. 11. They praise the laws of the state. 12. The judge will obey the laws. 13. The citizens will obey the laws of the state. 14. The consul was building a large ship.

15. The citizens will build many ships. 16. The king has a good ship. 17. The soldiers were fighting for liberty. 18. The consul will attack the city. 19. He will conquer the enemy. 20. The conqueror is in the city. 21. The father of the king resides in the city. 22. The father of the good queen will reside in the city. 23. Good citizens will fight for their country. 24. The soldiers of the good king were assaulting many cities of the enemy.

---

[1] See 65, Rule XXXIII. The words *contrary to* are to be rendered by a single Latin preposition. We have already learned that the English prepositions *of, to, by, with*, etc., may generally be rendered into Latin without prepositions by simply using the proper case; but many prepositions, as *before, between, behind, around, contrary to*, must be rendered by corresponding prepositions.

LESSON XXVI.

CERTAIN FORMS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

69. In verbs of the THIRD CONJUGATION, the THIRD PERSON in the *singular* and *plural* of the *present, imperfect,* and *future* tenses of the *indicative* mood has the following

ENDINGS.

	PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.	FUTURE.
Singular,	it	ēbat	et
Plural,	unt	ēbant	ent

PARADIGM.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Pres. regit, *he rules;*	regunt, *they rule.*
Imp. regēbat, *he was ruling;*	regēbant, *they were ruling.*
Fut. reget, *he will rule;*	regent, *they will rule.*

70. *Examples. — Adverbs.*

1. Miles pūgnat.	*The soldier fights.*
2. Miles *fortiter* pūgnat.	*The soldier fights* BRAVELY.
3. Miles *nōn* pūgnat.	*The soldier does* NOT *fight.*

NOTE. — In these examples *fortiter* (bravely), and *nōn* (not) are adverbs modifying *pūgnat.* The use of adverbs is expressed in the following

RULE LXI. — Use of Adverbs.

551. Adverbs qualify VERBS, ADJECTIVES, and other ADVERBS:

Sapientēs fēliciter[1] vīvunt, *the wise live happily.* Cic. Facile dōctissimus, *unquestionably the most learned.* Cic. Haud aliter, *not otherwise.* Verg.

---

[1] The Adverb is, therefore, the part of speech which is used to qualify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs. *Fēliciter,* 'happily,' is an adverb qualifying the verb *vīvunt,* 'live' (live *happily*). *Facile,* 'easily,' 'unquestionably,' is an adverb qualifying the adjective *dōctissimus,* 'the most learned' (*easily,* i.e. *unquestionably* the most learned). *Haud,* 'not,' is an adverb qualifying the adverb *aliter,* 'otherwise' (*not* otherwise). The adverb in Latin usually stands directly before the word which it qualifies, as in these examples.

71. *Model for parsing Adverbs.*

Mīles fortiter pūgnat.   *The soldier fights bravely.*

Fortiter is an adverb qualifying *pūgnat*, according to Rule LXI.:
" Adverbs qualify *verbs, adjectives,* and other *adverbs.*

72. *Vocabulary.*

Ad, *prep. with acc.*	*to.*
Breviter, *adv.*	*briefly.*
Dē, *prep. with abl.*	*about, concerning, in regard to.*
Dīcit,	*he says, speaks.*
Dīligenter, *adv.*	*attentively, diligently.*
Dūcit,	*he leads.*
Fēlīciter, *adv.*	*happily.*
Fortiter, *adv.*	*bravely.*
Lēgātus, ī, *m.*	*ambassador ; lieutenant.*
Legit,	*he reads.*
Mittit,	*he sends.*
Modestē, *adv.*	*modestly.*
Nōn, *adv.*	*not.*
Numerus, ī, *m.*	*number.*
Ōrātiō, ōnis, *f.*	*oration, speech.*
Regit,	*he rules.*
Saepe, *adv.*	*often.*
Scrībit,	*he writes.*
Simpliciter, *adv.*	*simply.*
Vērum, ī, *n.*	*truth.*
Vīvit,	*he lives.*

73. *Translate into English.*

1. Dīcit, dīcēbant, dīcet. 2. Legunt, legēbat, legent. 3. Dīcunt, scrībunt. 4. Dīcēbat, scrībēbat. 5. Dīcent, scrībent. 6. Dūcit, dūcēbat, dūcet. 7. Regunt, regēbat, regent. 8. Cōnsul modestē dīcēbat. 9. Puerī modestē dīcunt. 10. Rēx breviter dīcet. 11. Cōnsulēs breviter dīcunt. 12. Jūdex fēlīciter vīvit. 13. Cīvēs fēlīciter vīvēbant. 14. Pāstōrēs simpliciter vīvunt.

15. Jūdex librum legēbat. 16. Jūdicēs ōrātiōnēs Cicerōnis legēbant. 17. Jūdicēs bonī ōrātiōnēs Cicerōnis cōnsulis

dīligenter legēbant.   18. Epistulās cōnsulis dīligenter legent.
19. Hostēs lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt.   20. Hostēs lēgā-
tōs ad rēgem mittent.   21. Mīlitēs fortiter pūgnābant.   22.
Cōnsul amīcōs multōs habēbat.   23. Cōnsul māgnum amīcō-
rum numerum habēbat.

74. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He leads, he was leading, he will lead.   2. He rules, he
was ruling, he will rule.   3. They lead, they rule.   4. They
were leading, they were ruling.   5. They will lead, they will
rule.   6. The judge will speak the truth.   7. They speak
the truth.   8. They will speak modestly.   9. Cicero was
writing to a friend.   10. The boys will write often.   11.
Cicero was writing about friendship.

12. The king is writing a book.   13. He will write many
books.   14. The boy is writing about virtue.   15. The boys
will write about the victory.   16. The king lives happily.
17. The father of the good queen was living happily.   18.
He was reading a good book.   19. The boys will read good
books.   20. Caesar sends an ambassador to the enemy.   21.
The king will send ambassadors to the enemy.

LESSON XXVII.

CERTAIN FORMS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION. — PERFECT TENSE.

75. In verbs of the FOURTH CONJUGATION, the THIRD
PERSON in the *singular* and *plural* of the *present, imperfect,*
and *future* tenses of the *indicative* mood has the following

ENDINGS.

	PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.	FUTURE.
Singular,	it	iēbat	iet
Plural,	iunt	iēbant	ient

PARADIGM.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Pres. audit, *he hears ;*	audiunt, *they hear.*
Imp. audiēbat, *he was hearing ;*	audiēbant, *they were hearing.*
Fut. audiet, *he will hear ;*	audient, *they will hear.*

76. In verbs of the FOUR CONJUGATIONS, the THIRD PERSON in the *singular* and *plural* of the *perfect* tense of the *indicative* mood has the following

ENDINGS.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Conj. I.	āvit	āvērunt
Conj. II.	uit	uērunt
Conj. III.	sit	sērunt
Conj. IV.	īvit	īvērunt

PARADIGM.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
I. amāvit, *he has loved ;*[1]	amāvērunt, *they have loved.*[1]
II. monuit, *he has advised ;*	monuērunt, *they have advised.*
III. rēxit, *he has ruled ;*	rēxērunt, *they have ruled.*
IV. audīvit, *he has heard ;*	audīvērunt, *they have heard.*

77. In the verb *Sum,* the THIRD PERSON in the *singular* and *plural* of the *perfect* tense of the *indicative* mood has the following forms :

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
fuit, *he has been, he was ;*	fuērunt, *they have been, they were.*

78. *Examples. — Ablative.*

1. *Virtūte* rēgnum tenuit.   *He obtained the kingdom* BY MERIT.
2. Oppidum *vallō* munīvit.   *He fortified the town* BY MEANS OF A RAMPART.

NOTE. — Observe in these examples that *virtūte,* 'by merit,' and *vallō,* 'by means of a rampart,' are both in the *Ablative.* This Latin idiom is expressed in the following

---

[1] Or *he loved, they loved,* etc.

RULE XXV.—Ablative of Means.

420. INSTRUMENT and MEANS are denoted by the Ablative:

Cornibus taurī sē tūtantur, bulls defend themselves WITH THEIR HORNS. Cic. *Glōriā dūcitur, he is led* BY GLORY. Cic. *Sōl omnia lūce collustrat, the sun illumines all things with its light.* Cic. *Lacte vīvunt, they live upon milk.* Caes. *Tellūs saucia vomeribus, the earth turned* (wounded) *with the ploughshare.* Ovid.

LESSON XXVIII.

FOURTH CONJUGATION AND PERFECT TENSE. — EXERCISES.

79. *Vocabulary.*

Altus, a, um,	*high.*
Artĕ, *adv.*	*closely, soundly.*
Castra, ōrum, *n. pl.*	*camp.*
Custōdit, 4,[1]	*he guards.*
Discipulus, ĭ, *m.*	*learner, pupil.*
Dormit, 4,	*he sleeps.*
Ērudit, 4,	*he instructs.*
Fŏssa, ae, *f.*	*ditch, moat.*
Fugitivus, ī, *m.*	*runaway, deserter.* [to France.
Gallia, ae, *f.*	*Gaul,* a country nearly corresponding
Helvētiī, ōrum, *m. pl.*	the *Helvetii* or *Helvetians,* a people of
Legiŏ, ōnis, *f.*	*legion.* [Switzerland.
Mūnit, 4,	*he fortifies.*
Mūrus, ī, *m.*	*wall.*
Posteā, *adv.*	*afterward.*
Pūgna, ae, *f.*	*fight, battle.*
Rōmānus, ī, *m.*	*Roman.*
Sermŏ, ōnis, *m.*	*discourse, conversation.*
Vallum, ī, *n.*	*rampart.*
Vōx, vōcis, *f.*	*voice.*

---

[1] As the ending of the third person singular of the present indicative is the same in the fourth conjugation as in the third, verbs of the fourth conjugation for the present will be distinguished in the vocabularies by the numeral 4.

80. *Translate into English.*

1. Audiunt, audiēbat, audient, audīvit.   2. Ērudit, ērudiē-bant, ērudiet, ērudīvērunt.   3. Mūnit, custōdit, custōdient, mūnient.   4. Puerī dormiēbant.   5. Puer artē dormiēbat.
6. Pāstōrēs artē dormiunt.   7. Mīlitēs artē dormīvērunt.
8. Mīlitēs arcem mūniēbant.   9. Caesar castra mūnīvit.   10. Legiōnēs castra mūniēbant.   11. Hostēs fortiter pūgnāvē-runt.   12. Hostēs urbem oppūgnāvērunt.   13. Jūdex bonus tyrannum timuit.   14. Cīvēs Pīsistratum tyrannum timuē-runt.

15. Hostēs urbem mūrō mūniēbant.   16. Cōnsul urbem mūrō altō mūnīvit.   17. Rōmānī Helvētiōs superāvērunt.
18. Mīlitēs castra fōssā mūniēbant.   19. Caesar castra vallō mūnīvit.   20. Fugitīvī hostibus pūgnam nūntiāvērunt.   21. Rōmānī posteā hostēs superāvērunt.   22. Caesar in Galliā fuit.   23. Hostēs nāvēs multās habuērunt.   24. Cicerō cōn-sul epistulās multās scrīpsit.   25. Cōnsul vōcēs mīlitum audī-vit.   26. Puerī sermōnem dē amīcitiā audient.

81. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He hears, he guards.   2. They hear, they guard.   3. He was hearing, they were sleeping.   4. He was sleeping, they were hearing.   5. He will hear, they will hear.   6. They have slept, they have heard.   7. The boys heard the oration.   8. The pupils heard the conversation.   9. They did not hear the oration.   10. The citizens are fortifying the city.   11. They will guard the beautiful city.   12. The sol-diers will guard the city.   13. They will guard the temple.

14. The shepherd was sleeping soundly.   15. The shep-herds will sleep soundly.   16. Caesar heard the voice of the soldier.   17. Caesar hears the voices of the soldiers.   18. The soldier heard the voice of Caesar.   19. They heard the conversation in regard to the consul.   20. Caesar was fortify-ing the camp with a rampart.   21. The soldiers will fortify the camp with a moat.

LESSON XXIX.

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

82. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

152. Adjectives of the third declension may be divided into three classes :

I. Those which have in the Nominative Singular three different forms—one for each gender.

II. Those which have two forms—the masculine and feminine being the same.

III. Those which have but one form—the same for all genders.

153. ADJECTIVES OF THREE ENDINGS in this declension have the stem in **ĭ**, and are declined as follows :

Ācer, *sharp.*[1]

SINGULAR.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	ācer [2]	ācrĭs	ācre
Gen.	ācrĭs	ācrĭs	ācrĭs
Dat.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
Acc.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre
Voc.	ācer	ācrĭs	ācre
Abl.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī

PLURAL.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācrĭa
Gen.	ācrĭum	ācrĭum	ācrĭum
Dat.	ācrĭbus	ācrĭbus	ācrĭbus
Acc.	ācrēs, īs	ācrēs, īs	ācrĭa
Voc.	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācrĭa
Abl.	ācrĭbus	ācrĭbus	ācrĭbus

---

[1] ĀCER is declined like *ignis* in the Masc. and Fem., and like *mare* (63, 63) in the Neut., except in the Nom and Voc. Sing. Masc., and in the Abl. Sing.

[2] These forms in *er* are like those in *er* of Decl. II. in dropping the ending in the Nom. and Voc. Sing., and in developing final *r* into *er :* ācer for ācris, stem ācri.

154. ADJECTIVES OF TWO ENDINGS are declined as follows :

	Tristis, *sad.*[1]		Tristior, *sadder.*[1]	
	M. AND F.	**NEUT.**	**M. AND F.**	**NEUT.**
			SINGULAR.	
Nom.	tristis	triste	tristior	tristius
Gen.	tristis	tristis	tristiōris	tristiōris
Dat.	tristī	tristī	tristiōrī	tristiōrī
Acc.	tristem	triste	tristiōrem	tristius
Voc.	tristis	triste	tristior	tristius
Abl.	tristī	tristī	tristiōre (ī)[2]	tristiōre (ī)
			PLURAL.	
Nom.	tristēs	tristia	tristiōrēs	tristiōra
Gen.	tristium	tristium	tristiōrum	tristiōrum
Dat.	tristibus	tristibus	tristiōribus	tristiōribus
Acc.	tristēs, īs	tristia	tristiōrēs (īs)	tristiōra
Voc.	tristēs	tristia	tristiōrēs	tristiōra
Abl.	tristibus	tristibus	tristiōribus	tristiōribus

83. *Vocabulary.*

Ācer, ācris, ācre,	*sharp, severe.*
Aetās, ātis, *f.*	*age.*
Cōpia, ae, *f.*	*abundance, supply.*
Crūdēlis, e,	*cruel.*
Fertilis, e,	*fertile.*
Fortis, e,	*brave.*
Gallus, ī, *m.*	*Gaul.*
Germānus, ī, *m.*	*German.*
Incolit,	*he inhabits.*
Inūtilis, e,	*useless.*
Nāvālis, e,	*naval.*
Occupat,	*he seizes, takes possession of.*
Omnis, e,	*all.*
Pābulum, ī, *n.*	*fodder.*
Per, *prep. w. acc.*	*through, on account of, by means*
Post, *prep. with acc.*	*after.* [*of, by, during, for.*
Singulāris, e,	*remarkable, singular.*
Timor, ōris, *m.*	*fear.*
Ūtilis, e,	*useful.*

---

[1] *Tristis* and *triste* are declined like *ācris* and *ācre.* *Tristior* is the comparative of *tristis.*   [2] Enclosed endings are rare.

84. *Translate into English.*

1. Lēx ācris. 2. Lēgibus ācribus. 3. Hostis crūdēlis. 4. Hostem crūdēlem. 5. Mīles fortis. 6. Virtūs mīlitis[1] fortis. 7. In agrō fertīlī, in agrīs fertīlibus. 8. Post vītam brevem. 9. Post pūgnās nāvālēs. 10. Singulāris virtūs, singulārī virtūte. 11. Lēx ācris est. 12. Lēgēs ācrēs sunt. 13. Mīles est fortis. 14. Mīlitēs sunt fortēs. 15. Cōnsul virtūtem mīlitis fortis laudat. 16. Cōnsul est ōrātor.

17. Çatŏ māgnus imperātor est. 18. Timor omnēs mīlitēs occupāvit. 19. Timor omnēs hostēs occupābit. 20. Gallī fortēs sunt. 21. Caesar Gallōs fortēs superāvit. 22. Germānī agrōs fertilēs incolunt. 23. Pābulī cōpia in agrīs fertilibus erat. 24. Lēgēs sunt ūtilēs. 25. Cīvēs bonī rēgibus ūtilibus pārent. 26. Jūdicēs per aetātem ad pūgnam inūtilēs erant. 27. Timor omnēs cīvēs occupābit. 28. Agrī Gallōrum fertilēs erant. 29. Mīles verba dūcis fortis audit.

85. *Translate into Latin.*

1. A useful citizen. 2. Of useful citizens. 3. For useful citizens. 4. Brave soldiers, for brave soldiers. 5. The brave leader, brave leaders. 6. The word of the brave leader. 7. By the words of the brave leader. 8. The leaders of the soldiers are brave. 9. The brother of the consul is a brave soldier. 10. The brother of the king was a severe judge. 11. The brother of the orator will be a severe judge.

12. The brave soldiers were guarding the camp. 13. The soldiers will be brave. 14. They will all be brave. 15. Caesar praised the brave soldiers. 16. The soldiers will hear the words of the brave leader. 17. The field is fertile. 18. The fields are fertile. 19. Fear is taking possession of all the citizens. 20. There will be an abundance of fodder in the fields of the Germans.

---

[1] Genitive according to Rule XVI.

LESSON XXX.

ADJECTIVES OF THIRD DECLENSION.—COMPARISON OF
ADJECTIVES.

86. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

155. ADJECTIVES OF ONE ENDING generally end in *s* or
x, but sometimes in *l* or *r*.

156. Audāx, *audacious.*[1]   Fēlix, *happy.*[1]

	SINGULAR.			
	M. AND F.	**NEUT.**	**M. AND F.**	**NEUT.**
Nom.	audāx	audāx	fēlix	fēlix
Gen.	audācis	audācis	fēlicis	fēlicis
Dat.	audācī	audācī	fēlicī	fēlicī
Acc.	audācem	audāx	fēlicem	fēlix
Voc.	audāx	audāx	fēlix	fēlix
Abl.	audācī (e)	audācī (e)	fēlicī (e)	fēlicī (e)

	PLURAL.			
Nom.	audācēs	audācia	fēlicēs	fēlicia
Gen.	audācium	audācium	fēlicium	fēlicium
Dat.	audācibus	audācibus	fēlicibus	fēlicibus
Acc.	audācēs (īs)	audācia	fēlicēs (īs)	fēlicia
Voc.	audācēs	audācia	fēlicēs	fēlicia
Abl.	audācibus	audācibus	fēlicibus	fēlicibus

157. Amāns, *loving.*   Prūdēns, *prudent.*

	SINGULAR.			
	M. AND F.	**NEUT.**	**M. AND F.**	**NEUT.**
Nom.	amāns	amāns	prūdēns	prūdēns
Gen.	amantis	amantis[2]	prūdentis	prūdentis[2]
Dat.	amantī	amantī	prūdentī	prūdentī
Acc.	amantem	amāns	prūdentem	prūdēns
Voc.	amāns	amāns	prūdēns	prūdēns
Abl.	amante (ī)	amante (ī)	prūdentī (e)	prūdentī (e)

---

[1] Observe that *ī* in the Ablative Singular, and *ia*, *ium*, and *īs* in the
Plural, are the regular case-endings for *i*-stems. See 63.

[2] According to Ritschl, Schmitz, and others, the *e* which is long in
prūdēns before *ns* is short in all other forms of the word, i.e. before *nt*.
In the same manner the *a* which is long in *amāns*, is according to Ritschl
short in *amantis*, *amanti*, etc.

PLURAL.

Nom.	amantēs	amantia	prūdentēs	prūdentia
Gen.	amantium	amantium	prūdentium	prūdentium
Dat.	amantĭbus	amantĭbus	prūdentĭbus	prūdentĭbus
Acc.	amantēs (Īs)	amantia	prūdentēs (Īs)	prūdentia
Voc.	amantēs	amantia	prūdentēs	prūdentia
Abl.	amantĭbus	amantĭbus	prūdentĭbus	prūdentĭbus

NOTE. — The participle *amāns* differs in declension from the adjective *prūdēns* only in the Ablative Singular, where the participle usually has the ending **e**, and the adjective, **ī.**

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

160. Adjectives have three forms, called the Positive degree, the Comparative, and the Superlative: *altus, altior, altissimus,*[1] high, higher, highest. These forms denote different degrees of the quality expressed by the adjective.

161. The Latin, like the English, has two modes of comparison:

I. TERMINATIONAL COMPARISON, by endings.

II. ADVERBIAL COMPARISON, by adverbs.

I. TERMINATIONAL COMPARISON.

162. Adjectives are regularly compared by adding to the stem of the positive the endings:

COMPARATIVE.			SUPERLATIVE.		
MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
ior	ior	ius	issimus	issima	issimum

Altus, altior, altissimus: *high, higher, highest.*

Levis, levior, levissimus: *light, lighter, lightest.*

1. VOWEL STEMS lose their final vowel: *alto, altior, altissimus.*

---

[1] Each of these forms of the adjective is declined. Thus *altus* and *altissimus* are declined like *bonus*, 42, 148: *altus, a, um; altī, ae, ī,* etc.; *altissimus, a, um; altissimī, ae, ī,* etc. *Altior* is declined like *tristior*, 82, 154; *altior, altius; altiōris,* etc.

165. The following are compared irregularly:

bonus,	melior,	optimus,	*good, better, best.*
mágnus,	májor,	máximus,	*great, greater, greatest.*
parvus,	minor,	minimus,	*small, smaller, smallest.*

166. POSITIVE WANTING.

citerior,	citimus,	*nearer,*	prior,	prīmus,	*former,*
dēterior,	dēterrimus,	*worse,*	propior,	prŏximus,	*nearer,*
interior,	intimus,	*inner,*	ulterior,	ûltimus,	*farther.*
ōcior,	ōcissimus,	*swifter,*			

II. ADVERBIAL COMPARISON.

170. Adjectives which want the terminational comparison form the comparative and superlative, when their signification requires it, by prefixing the adverbs, *magis*, more, and *măxĭmē*, most, to the positive:

> Arduus, magis arduus, māximē arduus.
> *Arduous, more arduous, most arduous.*

87. *Model for Parsing* COMPARATIVES *and* SUPERLATIVES.

> Ōrător clārior. *A more renowned orator.*

Clārior is an adjective (42, 146) in the Comparative degree (86, 160, 162), from the positive *clārus.* Positive, *clārus* ; STEM, *clāro* ; Comparative, *clārior* ; Superlative, *clārissimus.* *Clārior* is an adjective of the Third Declension, declined like *tristior* (82, 154). Singular: N. *clārior, clārius* ; G. *clāriōris, clāriōris,* etc.[1] It is in the Nominative Singular Masculine, and agrees with its noun *ōrător,* according to 43, Rule XXXIV.[2]

LESSON XXXI.

THIRD DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES. — COMPARISON. — EXERCISES.

88. *Examples.* — *Comparison.*

1. Aurum gravius est *quam argentum.* *Gold is heavier* THAN SILVER.
2. Aurum *argentō* gravius est. *Gold is heavier* THAN SILVER.

---

[1] Decline through all the cases of both numbers. [2] Give the Rule.

NOTE. — Observe (1) that in the first example, the Latin construction is the same as the English, and that the two nouns compared, *aurum* and *argentum*, are in the same case, i.e. in the Nominative, and (2) that in the second example *quam* is omitted, and that the second noun is put in the *Ablative*. This Latin idiom is expressed in the following

RULE XXIII. — Ablative with Comparatives.

417. Comparatives without QUAM are followed by the Ablative:

Nihil est amābilius *virtūte*,[1] *nothing is more lovely* THAN VIRTUE. Cic. Quid est melius *bonitāte*,[1] *what is better* THAN GOODNESS? Cic. Scīmus sōlem mājōrem esse terrā,[1] *we know that the sun is larger than the earth.* Cic.

1. COMPARATIVES WITH QUAM are followed by the Nominative, or by the case of the corresponding noun before them:

Hibernia minor quam *Britannia* existimātur, *Ireland is considered smaller than* BRITAIN. Caes. Agrīs quam *urbī* terribilior, *more terrible to the country than* TO THE CITY. Liv.

NOTE. — Conjunctions are mere connectives, and are without inflection. *Quam* is a conjunction.

89. *Vocabulary.*

Aquilēia, ae, *f.*	*Aquileia*, a town in north-eastern Italy.
Ariovistus, ī, *m.*	*Ariovistus*, a German king.
Aurum, ī, *n.*	*gold.*
Belgae, ārum, *m. pl.*	*the Belgae*, or *Belgians*, a people of
Circum, *prep. w. acc.*	*around, in the vicinity of.* [Gaul.
Clārus, a, um,	*clear, illustrious.*
Cōnsilium, iī, *n.*	*counsel, plan.*
Divitiacus, ī, *m.*	*Divitiacus*, a chieftain of the Aedui in
Duplex, duplicis,	*double.* [Gaul.
Fēlix, fēlicis,	*happy, fortunate.*
Hannibal, alis, *m.*	*Hannibal*, a Carthaginian general.
Hiemat,	*he winters, passes the winter.*
Homō, hominis, *m. and f.*	*man, human being, person.*

---

[1] *Virtūte = quam virtūs; bonitāte = quam bonitās; terrā = quam terram* (sc. *esse*).

Īnfēlīx, īnfēlĭcĭs,	*unhappy, unfortunate.*
Labiēnus, ī, *m.*	*Labienus,* an officer in Caesar's army in
Potēns, potentĭs,	*powerful.* [Gaul.
Pretiōsus, a, um,	*precious, valuable.*
Quam, *conj.*	*than.*
Sapiēns, sapientĭs,	*wise.*

90. *Translate into English.*

1. Ōrātor clārus. 2. Ōrātor clārior.[1] 3. Ōrātor clārissimus. 4. Ōrātōrēs fuērunt clārī. 5. Ōrātōrēs clāriōrēs sunt. 6. Ōrātōrēs clārissimī erunt. 7. Cōnsul fēlīx erat. 8. Cōnsulēs fēlīcēs sunt. 9. Caesar rēgem īnfēlīcem superāvit. 10. Caesar Ariovistum rēgem superāvit. 11. Caesar Ariovistum, īnfēlīcem Germānōrum rēgem, superāvit. 12. Legiō circum Aquilēiam hiemābit. 13. Hannibal īnfēlīx erat. 14. Jūdex sapiēns est. 15. Omnēs cīvēs jūdicem sapientem laudant. 16. Sapientēs hominēs cīvitātem regunt.

17. Caesar Labiēnum laudāvit. 18. Jūdex sapientior erat quam rēx. 19. Turris altior est quam mūrus. 20. Cōnsilium clārius est quam lūx. 21. Cōnsilium lūce clārius est. 22. Cōnsilia omnia lūce sunt clāriōra. 23. Belgae fortissimī sunt. 24. Gallōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae. 25. Mīlitēs nōn pūgnābunt. 26. Hostēs castra altissimō mūrō mūnīvērunt.

91. *Translate into Latin.*

1. A fertile field. 2. A more fertile field. 3. The most fertile field. 4. Fertile fields. 5. More fertile fields. 6. A useful life. 7. A more useful life. 8. The most useful life. 9. The most useful lives. 10. The Gauls were brave. 11. The Romans were braver than the Gauls. 12. The Gauls were unfortunate. 13. The Romans conquered the unfortunate Gauls. 14. King Divitiacus was very powerful. He

---

[1] Declined like *tristior*, **82, 154.** Comparatives and superlatives, as well as positives, must agree with their nouns, according to **43,** Rule **XXXIV.**

4

was the most powerful of all the chiefs.   He was the most
powerful of all the Gauls.

15. Virtue is more valuable than gold.   16. Wisdom is
more useful than gold.   17. Virtue is better than wisdom.
18. The soldiers are braver than the general.   19. The wall
will be double.   20. The enemy will fortify the city with a
double wall.   21. The wall was very high.   22. The Gauls
were fortifying the city with a very high wall.

LESSON XXXII.

NOUNS. — FOURTH DECLENSION. — FIFTH DECLENSION.

92. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

FOURTH DECLENSION : **U** NOUNS.

116. Nouns of the fourth declension end in

us—*masculine;* **ū**—*neuter.*

They are declined as follows :

Frūctus, *fruit.* Cornū, *horn.*

			SINGULAR.	CASE-ENDINGS.	
Nom.	frūctus	cornū		us	ū
Gen.	frūctūs	cornūs		ūs	ūs
Dat.	frūctuī, ū [1]	cornū		uī, ū [1]	ū
Acc.	frūctum	cornū		um	ū
Voc.	frūctus	cornū		us	ū
Abl.	frūctū	cornū		ū	ū
			PLURAL.		
Nom.	frūctūs	cornua		ūs	ua
Gen.	frūctuum	cornuum		uum	uum
Dat.	frūctĭbus	cornĭbus		ibus (ubus) [2]	ibus (ubus)
Acc.	frūctūs	cornua		ūs	ua
Voc.	frūctūs	cornua		ūs	ua
Abl.	frūctĭbus	cornĭbus		ibus (ubus)	ibus (ubus)

[1] Thus *ui* is contracted into *ū: frūctui, frūctū.*
[2] The enclosed endings occur in a few words.

1. The STEM in nouns of the fourth declension ends in **u**: *frūctu, cornu.*

2. The CASE-ENDINGS here given contain the characteristic **u**, weakened to *i* in *ibus*, but retained in *ubus; see* 1, 22.

FIFTH DECLENSION : E NOUNS.

120. Nouns of the fifth declension end in **ēs**—*feminine,* and are declined as follows :

	Diēs, *day.*[1]	Rēs, *thing.*	
		SINGULAR.	CASE-ENDINGS.
Nom.	diēs	rēs	ēs
Gen.	diēī or diē	rēī or rē	ēī, ē
Dat.	diēī or diē	rēī or rē	ēī, ē
Acc.	diem	rem	em
Voc.	diēs	rēs	ēs
Abl.	diē	rē	ē
		PLURAL.	CASE-ENDINGS.
Nom.	diēs	rēs	ēs
Gen.	diērum	rērum	ērum
Dat.	diēbus	rēbus	ēbus
Acc.	diēs	rēs	ēs
Voc.	diēs	rēs	ēs
Abl.	diēbus	rēbus	ēbus

1. The STEM of nouns of the fifth declension ends in **ē**: *diē, rē.*

2. The CASE-ENDINGS here given contain the characteristic **ē**, which appears in all the cases. It is shortened (1) generally in the ending *ēī* when preceded by a consonant, and (2) regularly in the ending *em.*

93. *Examples. — Time.*

1. Urbem *hōc tempore* mūniunt.   *They are* AT THIS TIME *fortifying the city.*

2. *Sextō annō.*   IN THE SIXTH YEAR.

NOTE. — Observe that *hōc tempore,* 'at this time,' and *sextō annō* 'in the sixth year' are both in the *Ablative.* This Latin idiom is expressed in the following

---

[1] By exception, *diēs* is usually masculine in the singular, and always in the plural.

RULE XXXI. — Time.

429. The TIME of an Action is denoted by the Ablative:

Octōgēsimō annō est mortuus, *he died* IN HIS EIGHTIETH YEAR. Cic. *Vēre* convēnēre, *they assembled* IN THE SPRING. Liv. Nātālī diē suō, *on his birthday.* Nep.

94. *Vocabulary.*

Aciēs, aciēī, *f.*	*edge, line of battle.*
Adventus, ūs, *m.*	*approach, arrival.*
Avis, is, *f.*	*bird.*
Cantus, ūs, *m.*	*singing.*
Comparat,	*he prepares, raises.*
Cōnspēctus, ūs, *m.*	*sight, view.*
Exercitus, ūs, *m.*	*army.*
Impetus, ūs, *m.*	*attack, charge.* [*forms the line of battle.*
Īnstruit,	*he constructs, draws up;* aciem īnstruit, *he*
Magistrātus, ūs, *m.*	*magistrate, magistracy.*
Manus, ūs, *f.*[1]	*hand;* in manibus, *in hand.* [*affairs.*
Mīlitāris, e,	*military;* rēs mīlitāris, *sing., military*
Occāsus, ūs, *m.*	*setting;* sōlis occāsus, *sunset.*
Portus, ūs, *m.*	*port, harbor.*
Posterus, a, um,	*following, next.*
Redūcit,	*he leads back.*
Spēs, speī, *f.*	*hope.*
Tenet,	*he holds.*
Ūsus, ūs, *m.*	*use, usage, experience.*

95. *Translate into English.*

1. Sōlis[2] occāsus. 2. Post sōlis occāsum.[3] 3. Caesaris adventū. 4. Ante adventum Caesaris. 5. Impetus hostium. 6. Impetū hostium. 7. In cōnspēctū exercitūs. 8. Māgnus in rē mīlitārī ūsus. 9. Labiēnus in exercitū Caesaris fuit. 10. Hannibal exercitum māgnum in Ītaliam duxit. 11. Caesar exercitūs māgnōs comparāvit. 12. In cōnspēctū hostium erat.

[1] Feminine by exception.
[2] Genitive, according to 31, Rule XVI.
[3] Used with *post,* according to 65, Rule XXXIII.

13. Puer cantum avis audiēbat. 14. Puerī cantūs avium audient. 15. Cōnsul hostium exercitum nōn timēbat. 16. Cicerō cōnsul opus māgnum in manibus habēbat. 17. Hostēs portum tenēbant. 18. Caesar aciem īnstrūxit. 19. Posterō diē aciem īnstrūxit. 20. Posterō diē in cōnspēctū hostium aciem īnstrūxit. 21. Posteā exercitum in castra redūxit. 22. Ariovistus sōlis occāsū exercitum in castra redūxit. 23. Hostēs adventum Caesaris exspēctābant. 24. Timor omnem exercitum occupāvit.

96. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The army, the armies. 2. For the army, for the armies. 3. The arrival of the army. 4. Before the arrival of the army. 5. After the arrival of Cicero the consul. 6. After the setting of the sun. 7. Before the attack of the enemy. 8. In sight of the king. 9. The commander fears the attack of the enemy. 10. The soldiers will fight in sight of the commander. 11. The pupil is writing about the army. 12. The girl hears the singing of the bird.

13. Fear will take possession of the army. 14. Caesar led a large army into Gaul. 15. Ariovistus, the king of the Germans, had a large army in Gaul. 16. The consul will hold the harbor. 17. He was awaiting the approach of Ariovistus, the king of the Germans. 18. The consul has large experience in military affairs. 19. The soldiers of Ariovistus did not have large experience in military affairs.

LESSON XXXIII.

NUMERALS.

97. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

171. Numerals comprise numeral adjectives and numeral adverbs.

172. Numeral adjectives comprise three principal classes:

1. **Cardinal Numbers :** [1] *ūnus*, one; *dǔo*, two.
2. **Ordinal Numbers :** [1] *prīmus*, first; *secundus*, second.
3. **Distributives :** [1] *singulī*, one by one; *bīnī*, two by two.

174. Partial Table of Numeral Adjectives :

CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.	DISTRIBUTIVES.
1. ūnus, ūna, ūnum, *one*	prīmus, *first*	singulī, *one by one*
2. duo, duae, duo, *two*	secundus, *second*	bīnī, *two by two* [2]
3. trēs, tria, *three*	tertius, *third*	ternī (trīnī), *three by three*
4. quattuor, *four*	quartus, *fourth*	quaternī, *four by four*
5. quīnque, *five*	quīntus, *fifth*	quīnī, *five by five*
6. sex, *six*	sextus, *sixth*	sēnī, *six by six*
7. septem, *seven*	septimus, *seventh*	septēnī, *seven by seven*
8. octo, *eight*	octāvus, *eighth*	octōnī, *eight by eight*
9. novem, *nine*	nōnus, *ninth*	novēnī, *nine by nine*
10. decem, *ten*	decimus, *tenth*	dēnī, *ten by ten*

Declension of Numeral Adjectives.

175. *Ūnus*, *Duo*, and *Trēs* are declined as follows :

Ūnus, *one.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
Nom.	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	ūnī	ūnae	ūna
Gen.	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnōrum	ūnārum	ūnōrum
Dat.	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	ūnīs	ūnīs	ūnīs
Acc.	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	ūnōs	ūnās	ūna
Voc.	ūne	ūna	ūnum	ūnī	ūnae	ūna
Abl.	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	ūnīs	ūnīs	ūnīs

Duo, *two.*   ### Trēs, *three.*

Nom.	duo	duae	duo	trēs, *m. and f.*	tria, *n.*
Gen.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum [3]	trium	trium
Dat.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus
Acc.	duōs, duo	duās	duo	trēs, trīs	tria
Voc.	duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria
Abl.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus

---

[1] *Cardinals* denote simply the *number* of objects. *Ordinals* denote the *place* of an object in a *series*. *Distributives* denote the *number* of objects taken at a time.   [2] Or *two each, two apiece.*

[3] Instead of *duōrum* and *duārum, duŭm* is sometimes used.

NOTE 1. — The plural of *ūnus* in the sense of *alone* may be used with any noun: *ūnī Ubiī*, the Ubii alone; but in the sense of *one*, it is used only with nouns plural in form, but singular in sense: *ūna castra*, one camp; *ūnae litterae*, one letter.

176. The Cardinals from *quattuor*, ‘four,’ to *centum*, ‘one hundred,’ are indeclinable.

177. Hundreds are declined like the plural of *bonus ; ducentī, ae, a*, ‘two hundred.’

179. Ordinals are declined like *bonus*, and distributives like the *plural* of *bonus*.

98. *Examples. — Duration of Time.*

1. Caecus *annōs* multōs fuit.   *He was blind many* YEARS.
2. Trīgintā *annōs* vīxit.   *He lived thirty* YEARS.
3. Fōssa quīndecim *pedēs* lāta.   *A moat fifteen* FEET *broad.*

NOTE. — In these examples observe that *annōs*, ‘years,’ and *pedēs*, ‘feet,’ are in the *Accusative*. This Latin idiom[1] is expressed in the following

RULE IX. — Accusative of Time and Space.

379. DURATION OF TIME and EXTENT OF SPACE are expressed by the Accusative:

Rōmulus septem et trīgintā rēgnāvit *annōs, Romulus reigned thirty-seven* YEARS. Liv. Quīnque *milia* passuum ambulāre, *to walk five* MILES. Cic. *Pedēs* octōgintā distāre, *to be eighty* FEET *distant.* Caes. Nix quattuor *pedēs* alta, *snow four* FEET *deep.* Liv.

99. *Vocabulary.*

Ā, ab, *prep. w. abl.*   *from, by.*
Annus, ī, *m.*   *year.*
Celtae, ārum, *m. pl.*   *Celts*, a people of Gaul.
Circiter, *adv., and prep. w. acc.*   *about.*
Cōnscrībit,   *he enrols.*
Cyrus, ī, *m.*   *Cyrus*, King of Persia.
Dionӯsius, iī, *m.*   *Dionysius*, tyrant of Syracuse.
Duodecim, *indeclinable*,   *twelve.*

---

[1] The English uses the *Objective* case in the same way.

Duodēquadrāgintā, *indeclinable, thirty-eight.*
Merīdiēs, ēī, *m.*[1]   *midday, noon.*
Oppidum, ī, *n.*   *town.*
Pars, partis, *f.*   *part.*
Suessiōnēs, um, *m. pl.*   *Suessiones,* a Gallic tribe.
Sustinet,   *he sustains, withstands, resists.*
Trigintā, *indeclinable,*   *thirty.*
Undecimus, a, um,   *eleventh.*
Usque, *adv.*   *until, even;* usque ad, *even to,*
Vēr, vēris, *n.*   *spring.*   [*until.*
Vīcus, ī, *m.*   *village.*

100. *Translate into English.*

1. Post adventum vēris. 2. Circiter merīdiem. 3. In cōnspēctū imperātōris. 4. Circiter merīdiem exercitum in castra redūcet. 5. Belgae ūnam Galliae partem incolunt. 6. Celtae tertiam Galliae partem incolunt. 7. Caesar duās legiōnēs in Italiā cōnscrībit. 8. Trēs legiōnēs circum Aquilēiam hiemābant. 9. Duās legiōnēs in Galliā cōnscrīpsit. 10. Legiōnis nōnae mīlitēs fortiter pūgnāvērunt. 11. Duae legiōnēs, ūndecima et octāva, fortiter pūgnābant.

12. Legiōnis decimae mīlitēs impetum hostium fortiter sustinēbant. 13. Legiōnis octāvae mīlitēs in cōnspēctū imperātōris impetum hostium fortiter sustinuērunt. 14. Legiōnēs sex castra mūniēbant. 15. Mīlitēs ab hōrā quartā usque ad sōlis occāsum fortiter pūgnāvērunt. 16. Suessiōnēs oppida duodecim habent. 17. Cȳrus trīgintā annōs rēgnāvit. 18. Dionȳsius duodēquadrāgintā annōs tyrannus fuit.

101. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The fifth day. 2. After the fifth day. 3. Five days. 4. Eight books. 5. With eight books. 6. The eighth book. 7. Before the eighth book. 8. The bravery of two soldiers. 9. By the bravery of two soldiers. 10. At that time the tenth legion was in Gaul. 11. The soldiers of the

---

[1] Masculine by exception.

tenth legion were brave. 12. They were the bravest of all. 13. Two legions will guard the camp. 14. Five legions will fortify the camp with a rampart.

15. The soldiers were fortifying one part of the village with a very high wall. 16. The commander was awaiting the arrival of two legions. 17. The two consuls enrolled six legions, 18. The soldiers of two legions did not have large experience in military affairs. 19. The enemy fought bravely for ten hours. 20. They held the harbor for five days.

LESSON XXXIV.

PRONOUNS.

102. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

182. In construction, Pronouns[1] are used either as Substantives: *ego*, I, *tū*, thou; or as Adjectives: *meus*, my, *tuus*, your.

183. Pronouns are divided into six classes:

1. Personal Pronouns: *tū*, thou.
2. Possessive Pronouns: *meus*, my.
3. Demonstrative Pronouns: *hīc*, this.
4. Relative Pronouns: *quī*, who.
5. Interrogative Pronouns: *quis*, who?
6. Indefinite Pronouns: *aliquis*, some one.

I. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

184. Personal Pronouns,[2] so called because they designate the person of the noun which they represent, are:

---

[1] But in their signification and use, Pronouns differ widely from ordinary substantives and adjectives, as they never *name* any object, action, or quality, but simply *point out* its relation to the speaker, or to some other person or thing.

[2] Also called *Substantive Pronouns*, because they are always used *substantively*.

	Ego, *I.*	Tū, *thou.*	Suī, *of himself*, etc.[1]
		SINGULAR.	
Nom.	ego	tū	
Gen.	meī	tuī	suī [1]
Dat.	mihī *or* mī	tibī	sibī
Acc.	mē	tē	sē
Voc.		tū	
Abl.	mē	tē	sē

		PLURAL.	
Nom.	nōs	vōs	
Gen.	{ nostrūm { nostrī	vestrūm } vestrī }	suī
Dat.	nōbīs	vōbīs	sibī
Acc.	nōs	vōs	sē
Voc.		vōs	
Abl.	nōbīs	vōbīs	sē

2. Suī, *of himself*, etc., is often called the *Reflexive* pronoun.

4. REDUPLICATED FORMS. — *Sēsē, tētē, mēmē,* for *sē, tē, mē.*

6. CUM, when used with the *ablative* of a Personal Pronoun, is appended to it: *mēcum, tēcum.*

II. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

185. From *Personal* pronouns are formed the *Possessives:* [2]

meus, a, um, *my;* noster, tra, trum, *our;*
tuus, a, um, *thy, your;* vester, tra, trum, *your;*
suus, a, um, *his, hers, its;* suus, a, um, *their.*

III. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

186. Demonstrative Pronouns, so called because they specify the objects to which they refer, are declined as follows:

---

[1] *Of himself, herself, itself.* The Nominative is not used.

[2] Possessives are declined as adjectives of the first and second declensions; but *meus* has in the Vocative Singular Masculine generally *mī*, sometimes *meus*, and in the Genitive Plural sometimes *meūm* instead of *meōrum.*

I. Hĭc, *this, this one, he.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASC.	**FEM.**	**NEUT.**	**MASC.**	**FEM.**	**NEUT.**
Nom.	hĭc	haec	hŏc	hī	hae	haec
Gen.	hūjus	hūjus	hūjus	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dat.	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hŏc [1]	hōs	hās	haec
Abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

II. Iste, *that, that of yours, that one, he.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASC.	**FEM.**	**NEUT.**	**MASC.**	**FEM.**	**NEUT.**
Nom.	iste	ista	istud	istī	istae	ista
Gen.	istĭus	istĭus	istĭus	istōrum	istārum	istōrum
Dat.	istī	istī	istī	istīs	istīs	istīs
Acc.	istum	istum	istud	istōs	istās	ista
Abl.	istō	istā	istō	istīs	istīs	istīs

III. Ille, *that, that one, he,* is declined like *iste*.

IV. Is, *he, this, that.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASC.	**FEM.**	**NEUT.**	**MASC.**	**FEM.**	**NEUT.**
Nom.	is	ea	ĭd	eī, iī	eae	ea
Gen.	ējus	ējus	ējus	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat.	ĕī	ĕī	ĕī	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs
Acc.	eum	eam	ĭd	eōs	eās	ea
Abl.	eō	eā	eō	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs

V. Ipse, *self, he.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASC.	**FEM.**	**NEUT.**	**MASC.**	**FEM.**	**NEUT.**
Nom.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
Gen.	ipsĭus	ipsĭus	ipsĭus	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
Dat.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
Acc.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
Abl.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

---

[1] The Vocative is wanting in Demonstrative, Relative, Interrogative, and Indefinite Pronouns.

VI. Īdem, *the same.*[1]

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASC.	**FEM.**	**NEUT.**	**MASC.**	**FEM.**	**NEUT.**
Nom.	īdem	eadem	idem	{ eīdem iīdem	eaedem	eadem
Gen.	ējusdem	ējusdem	ējusdem	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
Dat.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	{ eīsdem iīsdem	eīsdem iīsdem	eīsdem iīsdem
Acc.	eundem	eandem	idem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
Abl.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	{ eīsdem iīsdem	eīsdem iīsdem	eīsdem iīsdem

LESSON XXXV.

PRONOUNS. — EXERCISES.

103. *Vocabulary.*

Aequitās, ātis, *f.*	kindness, calmness, fairness.
Commemorat,	he mentions, speaks.
Commemorātiŏ, ōnis, *f.*	remembrance, mentioning, mention.
Cum, *prep. w. abl.*	with.
Diligentia, ae, *f.*	diligence, carefulness.
Dŏctus, a, um,	learned.
Hīc, haec, hŏc,	this, this one, the latter, he, she, it.
Humānitās, ātis, *f.*	culture, refinement.
Ille, illa, illud,	that, that one, the former, he, she, it.
Impedīmenta, ōrum, *n. pl.*	baggage.
Integritās, ātis, *f.*	integrity, uprightness.
Iste, ista, istud,	that of yours, that, that one, he, she, it.
Longus, a, um,	long.
Portat,	he carries.
Que, *conj. enclitic,*[2]	and.
Semper, *adv.*	always.　　　　　　[of her, of it.
Suī,	of himself, of herself, of itself, of him,

---

[1] Īdem, compounded of *is* and *dem*, is declined like *is*, but shortens *isdem* to *idem*, and *iddem* to *idem*, and changes *m* to *n* before the ending *dem*.

[2] That is, it is always appended to some other word : *virtūs-que*, ‘and virtue.’ *Que* connects words that are closely related in thought or use. For *conjunctions*, see 88, 417, note.

Suus, a, um,	*his, her, hers, its, their, theirs, his own, her own, its own, one's own.*
Temperantia, ae, *f.*	*temperance, self-control.*
Tum, *adv.*	*then.*
Vocat,	*he calls, summons, invites.*

104. *Translate into English.*

1. Caesar Divitiacum ad sē vocāvit. 2. Exercitus noster in Galliā hiemābat. 3. Hostēs suam urbem vallō mūniēbant. 4. Gallī hanc urbem vallō fōssāque mūniēbant. 5. Mīlitēs omnia impedīmenta sēcum portant. 6. Pater tuus epistulam longam ad tē scrībet. 7. Amīcus tuus trēs epistulās ad mē scrīpsit. 8. Omnēs bonī vōs semper amābunt.

9. Omnēs tē laudant; omnēs dē tuā humānitāte commemorant; omnēs aequitātem tuam, temperantiam, integritātemque laudant. 10. Mē commemorātiō tuae virtūtis dēlectāvit. 11. Omnēs bonī omnem ā nōbīs dīligentiam virtūtemque exspectant. 12. Sapientēs hominēs illam cīvitātem regēbant. 13. Dōctī hominēs istam cīvitātem regunt. 14. Dōctī et sapientēs hominēs hanc cīvitātem regent. 15. Cicerŏ suā manū epistulam scrīpsit.

105. *Translate into Latin.*

1. We, you. 2. You, me, himself. 3. For you, for me, for himself. 4. Against you, against me. 5. My book, your book. 6. My books, your books. 7. This letter, that letter. 8. These letters, those letters. 9. After that victory, after those victories. 10. That legion was wintering in Italy. 11. Those legions will winter in Gaul. 12. The citizens praise you. 13. All the citizens will praise you.

14. Wise men will always praise your wisdom. 15. Good men will praise your virtue. 16. Good men will always praise your virtue and wisdom. 17. Your father wrote this letter with his own hand. 18. He has written to me. 19. The consul had five legions with him. 20. He was then in Italy. 21. The enemy are fortifying their city with a very high wall.

LESSON XXXVI.

PRONOUNS. — RELATIVE, INTERROGATIVE, INDEFINITE.

106. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

IV. RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

187. The Relative *quī*, 'who,' so called because it relates to some noun or pronoun, expressed or understood, called its antecedent, is declined as follows:

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	qui	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	cūjus	cūjus	cūjus	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

1. *Quī = quō, quā,* 'with which,' 'wherewith,' is a *Locative* or *Ablative* of the relative *quī*.

2. *Cum,* when used with the Ablative of the relative, is generally appended to it: *quibuscum.*

V. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

188. The Interrogative Pronouns *quis* and *quī*, with their compounds, are used in asking questions. They are declined as follows:

I. Quis, *who, which, what?*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	quis	quae	quid	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	cūjus	cūjus	cūjus	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quam	quid	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

II. Quī, *which, what?* is declined like the *relative quī*.

1. QUIS is generally used substantively, and QUĪ, adjectively. The forms *quis* and *quem* are sometimes feminine.

2. *Quī,* how? in what way? is a Locative or Ablative of the interrogative *quis*.

PRONOUNS.   **87**

VI. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

189. Indefinite Pronouns do not refer to any definite persons or things. The most important are *quis* and *quī*, with their compounds.

190. *Quis,* 'any one,' and *quī,* 'any one,' 'any,' are the same in form and declension as the interrogatives *quis* and *quī.* But —

1. After *sī, nisī, nē,* and *num,* the Feminine Singular and Neuter Plural have *quae* or *qua : sī quae, sī qua.*

2. From *quis* and *quī* are formed —

aliquis,	aliqua,	aliquid or aliquod,	*some, some one.*
quidam,	quaedam,	quiddam or quoddam,[1]	*certain, certain one.*

351. An INTERROGATIVE SENTENCE has the form of a question :

Quis loquitur, *who speaks ?* Ter. Quis nōn paupertātem extiměscit, *who does not fear poverty ?* Cic. Quālis est ōrātiō, *what kind of an oration is it ?* Cic. Quot sunt, *how many are there ?* Plaut. Ubĭ sunt, *where are they ?* Cic. Vīsne fortūnam experīrī meam, *do you wish to try my fortune ?* Cic. Nōnne nōbilitārī volunt, *do they not wish to be renowned ?* Cic. Num igitur peccāmus, *are we then at fault ?* Cic.

1. INTERROGATIVE WORDS. — Interrogative sentences generally contain some interrogative word — either an interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb, or one of the interrogative particles: *-ne, nōnne, num ;* see examples above.

NOTE 1. — Questions with *-ne* ask for information ; *Scrībĭtne,* 'is he writing?'

NOTE 2. — Questions with *nōnne* expect the answer *yes: Nōnne scrībit,* 'is he not writing?'

NOTE 3. — Questions with *num* expect the answer *no : Num scrībit,* 'is he writing?'

2. The particle *-ne* is always appended to some other word, generally to the emphatic word of the sentence, i.e. to the word upon which the question especially turns; appended to *nōn,* 'not,' it forms *nōnne :*

Vīsne experīrī, *do you* WISH *to try ?* Cic. *Tūne* id veritus es, *did* YOU *fear this ?* Cic. *Omnisne* pecūnia solūta est, *has* ALL *the money*

---

[1] *Quidam* changes *m* to *n* before *d : quendam* for *quemdam.*

been paid ? Cic. *Unquamne* vidisti, *have you* EVER *seen ?* Cic. *Nōnne* volunt, *do they* NOT *wish ?* Cic.

352. ANSWERS. — Instead of replying to a question of fact with a simple particle meaning *yes* or *no,* the Latin usually repeats the verb or some emphatic word, often with *prōrsus,* *vērō,* 'certainly,' 'truly,' and the like, or if negative, with *nōn,* 'not.'

Dixitne causam, *did he state the cause ?* Dixit, *he stated it.* Cic. Possumusne tūti esse, *can we be safe ?* Nōn possumus, *we can not.* Cic.

353. DOUBLE or **DISJUNCTIVE QUESTIONS** offer a *choice* or *alternative,* and generally take one of the following forms :

1. The first clause has *utrum* or *-ne,* and the second *an :*

Utrum ea vestra an nostra culpa est, *is that your fault or ours?* Cic. Rōmamne veniō an hīc maneō, *do I go to Rome, or do I remain here ?* Cic.

2. The first clause omits the particle, and the second has *an* or *anne :*

Éloquar an sileam, *shall I utter it, or keep silence ?* Verg.

LESSON XXXVII.

PRONOUNS. — RULE XXXV. — EXERCISES.

107. *Examples.* — *Agreement.*

Rēx *quem* omnēs laudant.	*The king* WHOM *all praise.*
Rēgīna *quam* omnēs laudant.	*The queen* WHOM *all praise.*
Iī *quōs* omnēs laudant.	*Those* WHOM *all praise.*
Ego *quī* dicō.	*I* WHO *speak.*

NOTE. — In these examples the pronoun *quem* refers to *rēx,* called its antecedent, *quam* to its antecedent *rēgīna,* *quōs* to its antecedent *iī,* and *quī* to its antecedent *ego.* Observe that the pronoun in each instance is in the same gender and number[1] as its antecedent. Thus

---

[1] The *case* of the pronoun is determined by the construction of the clause in which it stands, and not by the case of its antecedent. Thus in these examples, though the antecedents are all in the Nominative, the pronouns *quem, quam,* and *quōs* are all in the Accusative as Direct Objects.

quem is in the *masculine singular*, because *rēx* is in that gender and number; *quam* in the feminine singular like *rēgina;* and *quōs* in the masculine plural like *iī.* The pronoun has also the same person as its antecedent. Thus *quem, quam,* and *quōs* are all in the third person, like their antecedents rēx, rēgina, and iī, while *quī* is in the first person, like its antecedent *ego.* This agreement of pronouns with their antecedents applies not only to relatives, but to all pronouns when used as substantives,[1] and is expressed in the following

RULE XXXV.—Agreement of Pronouns.

445. A pronoun agrees with its antecedent in GEN-DER, NUMBER, and PERSON :

Animal *quod* sanguinem habet, *an animal* WHICH *has blood.* Cic. Ego, *quī* tē cōnfirmō, *I* WHO *encourage you.* Cic. Vīs est in virtūtibus, *eās* excitā, *there is strength in virtues, arouse* THEM. Cic.

108. *Vocabulary.*

Agit,	*he leads, drives, does, acts, per-forms, treats, pleads;* grātiās [*agit, he returns thanks.*
Arma, ōrum, *n. pl.*	*arms.*
Britannia, ae, *f.*	*Britain.*
Cis, *prep. w. acc.*	*on this side of.*
Cōnstanter, *adv.*	*consistently, uniformly.*
Cotīdiē, *adv.*	*daily.*
Dēbet,	*he owes; he ought.*
Dōctrīna, ae, *f.*	*learning.*
Ex, ē, *prep. w. abl.*	*out of, from, of.*
Ferē, *adv.*	*almost.*
Grātia, ae, *f.*	*gratitude, favor;* grātiae, *pl., place.* [*thanks.*
Locus, ī, *m., pl.* loca, ōrum, *n.*	*place.*
Nāvigat,	*he navigates, sails.*
Platō, ōnis, *m.*	*Plato,* a celebrated Greek philoso- [*pher.*
Quīdam, quaedam, quiddam or quoddam,	*a certain, certain one.*
Reliquus, a, um,	*remaining, the other, the rest of.*
Rhēnus, ī, *m.*	*the Rhine.*
Suprā, *adv.*	*above.*
Tempus, oris, *n.*	*time.*
Venetī, ōrum, *m. pl.*	*the Veneti,* a tribe of western Gaul.

---

[1] Pronouns when used as adjectives agree like other adjectives, with the nouns to which they belong, according to 43, Rule XXXIV.

109. *Translate into English.*[1]

1. Gallī ea loca incolunt. 2. Gallī fortēs sunt. 3. Gallī, quī[2] ea loca incolunt, fortēs sunt. 4. Germānī, quī cis Rhēnum incolunt, in armīs sunt. 5. Hostēs urbem,[3] dē quā[2] suprā scrīpsit Caesar, vallō fossāque mūniēbant. 6. Reliquī omnēs Belgae in armīs erant. 7. Hī cōnstanter omnēs idem[4] nūntiant. 8. Venetī nāvēs habent multās, quibus[5] in Britanniam nāvigant. 9. Iī quī vōbīs omnia dēbent, vōs semper amābunt. 10. Cīvēs nōbīs grātiās cotīdiē agunt.

11. Ille[6] prīnceps doctrīnae, Platō, virtūtem et sapientiam laudat. 12. Iī quī hanc cīvitātem regunt, sapientēs sunt. 13. Quid dixit? Hōc dixit. 14. Num haec dixērunt? Nōn dixērunt. 15. Omnēs ferē Belgae in armīs fuērunt. 16. Cicerō in illō ipsō librō dē amīcitiā scrīpsit. 17. Quid in hōc librō dē amīcitiā scrīpsit? 18. Quis nostra cōnsilia hostibus nūntiāvit? Quīdam[6] ex cīvibus nostra cōnsilia hostibus nūntiāvit.

110. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Who was the king? 2. Was not[7] Romulus king? He was.[8] 3. Who was the leader of the Romans? Was not

---

[1] In preparing the longer and more difficult sentences in this and in the subsequent exercises, it is recommended that the pupil should follow the Suggestions which are inserted in this volume, page 200, and which are intended to aid him in discerning the *process* by which he may most readily and surely reach the meaning of a Latin sentence.

[2] For *Gender* and *Number*, see 107, Rule **XXXV.**

[3] In this sentence, before turning to the Vocabulary for the meaning of the words, notice carefully the endings of the several words in accordance with Suggestion IV. What *parts of speech* do you find? What *cases?* What *mood, tense, number,* and *person?*

In accordance with Suggestion V., what order will you follow in looking out the words in the Vocabulary?

[4] Direct Object of *nūntiant.*

[5] *Ablative of Means.* See 78, Rule XXV.

[6] *Ille* is often thus used of what is WELL KNOWN, FAMOUS.

[7] What *Interrogative* will you use in rendering into Latin? See 106, 351, 1, notes.

[8] See 106, 352.

Caesar the leader of the Romans? Caesar was the leader of the Romans. 4. Did not Cicero write this book? He wrote it. 5. Did he write the book that[1] the pupils are reading? He did not write it. Caesar, who conquered the Gauls, wrote that book. 6. Cicero, who wrote these books, was at that time a very renowned orator.

7. The enemy, about whom Caesar wrote above, were Gauls. 8. The Belgae, who were at that time in arms, were the bravest of the Gauls. 9. What did Plato praise? Did he not praise learning and wisdom? He always praised virtue. 10. Who has written in regard to friendship? Cicero, the consul, wrote a book in regard to friendship.

LESSON XXXVIII.

PRESENT AND IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE, AND PRESENT IMPERATIVE ACTIVE, IN CONJUGATIONS I. AND II., AND IN THE VERB *Sum.* — RULE XXXVII.

111. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

196. The SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD[2] expresses not an actual fact, but a *possibility* or *conception.* It is best translated —

· 1. Sometimes by the English auxiliaries, *let, may, might, should, would :*

Amēmus patriam, LET US LOVE *our country. Sint* beātī, MAY THEY BE *happy. Quaerat* quispiam, *some one* MAY INQUIRE. Hōc nēmō *dixerit, no one* WOULD SAY *this.* Ego *cēnseam, I* SHOULD THINK, or *I* AM INCLINED TO THINK.

2. Sometimes by the English *Indicative,* especially by the Future forms with *shall* and *will :*

Huic *cēdāmus,* SHALL WE YIELD *to this one ?* Quid diēs *ferat* incertum est, *what a day* WILL BRING FORTH *is uncertain.* Quaesi- vit sī *licēret, he inquired whether* IT WAS LAWFUL.

---

[1] For the *Gender, Number* and *Case* of the Latin Pronoun, see 107, Rule XXXV., and 25, Rule V.

[2] For the *Imperative Mood,* see 14, 196, III.

3. Sometimes by the *Imperative,* especially in prohibitions :

Nē *trānsierīs* Hibērum, DO *not* CROSS *the Ebro.*

4. Sometimes by the English *Infinitive :*[1]

Contendit ut *vincat, he strives* TO CONQUER.   Missī sunt quī *cōnsulerent* Apollinem, *they were sent* TO CONSULT *Apollo.*

112. *Examples. — Indicative Mood.*

1. Gallī ea loca *incolunt.*   *The Gauls* INHABIT *those places.*
2. Hostēs urbem *mūniēbant.*   *The enemy* WERE FORTIFYING *the city.*

NOTE. — Observe in these examples that the verbs *incolunt,* 'inhabit,' and *mūniēbant,* 'were fortifying,' relate to *facts.* They are in the *Indicative Mood,* in accordance with the Latin usage,[2] expressed in the following

RULE XXXVII. — Indicative.

474. The Indicative is used in treating of facts :

Deus mundum aedificāvit, *God made* (built) *the world.* Cic.   Nōnne expulsus est patriā, *was he not banished from his country ?* Cic.   Hōc fēcī dum licuit, *I did this as long as it was permitted.* Cic.

113. *Certain Forms of the Subjunctive and Imperative.*

I. In the Verb Sum, *I am.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

	SINGULAR.	PRESENT.		PLURAL.
sim,	*may I be,*		**sīmus,**	*let us be,*
sīs,	*mayst thou be,*		**sītis,**	*be ye, may you be,*
sit,	*let him be, may he be ;*		**sint,**	*let them be.*

---

[1] Observe, however, that the Infinitive here is not the translation of the Subjunctive alone, but of the Subjunctive with its subject and connective : ut vincat, *to conquer* (lit., *that he may conquer*) ; quī cōnsulerent, *to consult* (lit., *who should or would consult*).

[2] All the verbs in the preceding Lessons are in the *Indicative Mood,* and are illustrations of this usage.

IMPERFECT.

essem,	*I should be,*	essēmus,	*we should be,*
essēs,	*thou wouldst be,*	essētis,	*you would be,*
esset,	*he would be;*	essent,	*they would be.*

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. es,	*be thou,*	este,	*be ye.*

II. In the First Conjugation.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
amem,	*may I love,*	amēmus,	*let us love,*
amēs,	*may you love,*	amētis,	*may you love,*
amet,	*let him love;*	ament,	*let them love.*

IMPERFECT.

amārem,	*I should love,*	amārēmus,	*we should love,*
amārēs,	*you would love,*	amārētis,	*you would love,*
amāret,	*he would love;*	amārent,	*they would love.*

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. amā,	*love thou;*	amāte,	*love ye.*

III. In the Second Conjugation.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.
May I advise, let him advise.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
moneam	moneāmus
moneās	moneātis
moneat	moneant

IMPERFECT.
I should advise, he would advise.

monērem	monērēmus
monērēs	monērētis
monēret	monērent

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. monē,	*advise thou;*	monēte,	*advise ye.*

LESSON XXXIX.

SUBJUNCTIVE AND IMPERATIVE ACTIVE IN CONJUGA-
TIONS I. AND II., AND IN THE VERB *Sum.* — RULES
XXXVIII. AND XL. — EXERCISES.

114. *Examples.* — *Subjunctive and Imperative.*

1. *Amēmus* patriam.	LET US LOVE *our country.*
2. Nē *audeant.*	LET THEM *not* DARE.
3. *Sint* beātī.	MAY THEY BE *happy.*
4. Jūstitiam *cole.*	PRACTISE *justice.*
5. *Perge,* Catilīna.	Go, *Catiline.*

NOTE 1. — In the first three of these examples, observe that the
verbs *amēmus, audeant,* and *sint* all express or imply a *desire* or *wish*
on the part of the speaker. These verbs are all in the Subjunctive,
in accordance with the Latin usage expressed in the following

RULE XXXVIII. — Subjunctive of Desire, Command.

483. The Subjunctive is used to represent the action
NOT AS REAL, but AS DESIRED :

Valeant cīvēs, MAY *the citizens* BE WELL. Cic. *Amēmus* patriam,
LET US LOVE *our country.* Cic. Ā nōbīs *dīligātur,* LET HIM BE
LOVED *by us.* Cic. Scrībere nē *pigrēre,* DO *not* NEGLECT *to write.*
Cic.

1. The *Subjunctive of Desire* is often accompanied by *utinam,* and
sometimes, especially in the poets, by *ut, sī, ō sī :*

Utinam cōnāta efficere possim, *may I be able to accomplish my
endeavors.* Cic. Ut illum dī perdant, *would that the gods would
destroy him.* Ter.

2. FORCE OF TENSES. — The Present and Perfect imply that the
wish may be fulfilled; the Imperfect and Pluperfect, that it cannot
be fulfilled:

Sint beātī, *may they be happy.* Cic. Nē trānsierīs Hibērum, *do not
cross the Ebro.* Liv. Utinam pōssem, utinam potuissem, *would that
I were able, would that I had been able.* Cic.

3. NEGATIVES. — With the *Subjunctive of Desire,* the negative is
nē, rarely nōn; with a connective, nēve, neu, rarely neque :

Nē audeant, *let them not dare.* Cic.   Nōn recēdāmus, *let us not recede.* Cic.   Nēve minor neu sit prōdūctior, *let it be neither shorter nor longer.* Hor.

NOTE 2. — In the fourth and fifth of the examples at the head of this lesson, observe that the verbs *cole* and *perge* both denote a command. They are in the *Imperative,* in accordance with the Latin usage expressed in the following

RULE XL. — Imperative.

487. The Imperative is used in COMMANDS, EXHOR-TATIONS, and ENTREATIES:

Jūstitiam cole, *practise justice.* Cic.   Tū nē cēde malīs, *do not yield to misfortunes.* Verg.   Sī quid in tē peccāvī, īgnōsce, *if I have sinned against you, pardon me.* Cic.

1. The PRESENT IMPERATIVE corresponds to the Imperative in English:

Jūstitiam cole, *practise justice.* Cic.   Perge, Catilīna, *go, Catiline.* Cic.

115. *Vocabulary.*

Animus, ī, *m.*	*mind, heart, soul.*
Castellum, ī, *n.*	*redoubt.*
Casticus, ī, *m.*	*Casticus,* a chief of the Sequani.
Cōnfirmat,	*he strengthens, assures, establishes.*
Conjūrat,	*he conspires.*
Ferāx, ācis,	*productive, fertile.*
Frūmentārius, a, um,	*pertaining to grain;* rēs frūmentāria,
Juvat,	*he aids, helps, assists.* [*grain, supplies.*
Lātus, a, um,	*broad, wide, extensive.*
Līber, lībera, līberum,	*free.*
Mēns, mentis, *f.*	*mind, intellect.*
Parātus, a, um,	*prepared, ready.*
Pāx, pācis, *f.*	*peace.*
Perturbat,	*he disturbs.*
Propior, propius,	*nearer;* sup. prōximus, a, um, *nearest,*
Quis, quae, quid *or* quod,	[*next, adjacent.* **86,** 166.
indef. pron.	*one, any one, anything.*
Rēgnum, ī, *n.*	*kingdom, regal power.*
Suspīciō, ōnis, *f.*	*suspicion.*
Utinam, *interj.*	*O that!*
Vītat,	*he avoids, shuns.*

116. *Translate into English.*

1. Patriam amēmus.   2. Prō patriā pūgnēmus.   3. In cōnspĕctū imperātōris fortiter pūgnēmus.   4. Mīlitēs in cōnspĕctū imperātōris fortiter pūgnent.   5. Mīlitēs fortēs sint; fortēs sīmus.   6. Lēgibus[1] pāreāmus.   7. Cīvēs omnēs lēgibus pāreant.   8. Patriam amāte; lēgibus pārēte.   9. Illam urbem oppūgnāte.   10. Hanc urbem oppūgnēmus.   11. Nē[2] Helvētiōs juvēmus.   12. Nē quis Helvētiōs juvet.   13. Suspīciōnem vītēmus.   14. Timōris suspīciōnem vītēs.   15. Omnēs suspīciōnēs vītā.   16. In[3] reliquum tempus omnēs suspīciōnēs vītēmus.   17. Mīlitēs castellum oppūgnent.

18. Cum hīs cīvitātibus[4] amīcitiam cōnfirmēmus.   19. Cum prŏximīs cīvitātibus pācem et amīcitiam cōnfirmāte.   20. In hōc locō adventum hostium exspĕctēmus.   21. Hostēs in hōc locō adventum Caesaris exspĕctent.   22. Utinam parātus ad[5] omnia perīcula sīs.[6]   23. Utinam mīlitēs omnēs fortēs essent.[6]   24. Casticus rēgnum in cīvitāte suā occupet.   25. Hostium impetum sustineāmus.   26. Utinam timor hostium mentēs animōsque perturbet.   27. Lātōs ferācēsque agrōs possideātis.   28. Rem frūmentāriam comparēmus.   29. Lībera sit Gallia.   30. Nē contrā patriam conjūrēmus.

117. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Let us praise the brave soldiers.   2. May they all fight bravely for themselves and for their country.   3. Let not fear take possession of our army.   4. Let not fear disturb our minds.   5. Let us await the arrival of our army.   6. Let the soldiers obey the commander.   7. Let them not fear the enemy.   8. Let us not fear the enemy.   9. Let us await them in this place.

---

[1] For *Case*, see 54, Rule XII.

[2] For the use of *nē* rather than *nōn*, see 114, 483, 3.

[3] Literally *into*; render FOR.

[4] In accordance with Suggestion VII., for what form will you look in the Vocabulary to find the meaning of *cīvitātibus?*

[5] Literally *to*; render FOR.   [6] For the force of *Tenses*, see 114, 483, 2.

10. Let us aid our friends.   11. Do not aid the enemy.
12. May all the citizens love their country.   13. May they
obey all the laws.   14. Let us establish friendship with the
Romans.   15. Let the Romans establish peace with the
Gauls.   16. Let not the soldiers conspire against the king.

LESSON XL.

PRESENT AND IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE, AND
  PRESENT IMPERATIVE ACTIVE, IN CONJUGATIONS III.
  AND IV.—RULES XLI. AND XLII.

118. *Certain Forms of the Subjunctive and Imperative.*

I. In the Third Conjugation.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

May I rule, let him rule.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
regam		regāmus
regās		regātis
regat		regant

IMPERFECT.

I should rule, he would rule.

regerem		regerēmus
regerēs		regerētis
regeret		regerent

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. rege,   *rule thou;* | regite,   *rule ye.*

II. In the Fourth Conjugation.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

May I hear, let him hear.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
audiam		audiāmus
audiās		audiātis
audiat		audiant

5

<div align="center">

IMPERFECT.

I should hear, he would hear.

</div>

audīrem	audīrēmus
audīrēs	audīrētis
audīret	audīrent

<div align="center">

IMPERATIVE.

</div>

Pres. audī,	*hear thou;*	audīte,	*hear ye.*

119. *Examples. — Sequence of Tenses. — Subjunctive of Purpose.*

1. Nītitur *ut vincat.*	*He strives* TO CONQUER.
2. Nītēbātur *ut vinceret.*	*He was striving* TO CONQUER.
3. Mittuntur quī (= *ut iī*) cōn-	*They are sent* TO CONSULT (who
sulant Apollinem.	may consult) *Apollo.*
4. Missī sunt quī cōnsulerent	*They were sent* TO CONSULT *Apollo.*
Apollinem.	

NOTE 1. — In these examples observe that after a present tense, as *nītitur, mittuntur,* the verb of the subordinate clause [1] is also *Present,* as *vincat, cōnsulant,*[2] while after a past tense, as *nītēbātur, missī sunt,* the verb in the subordinate clause is in the *Imperfect,* as *vinceret, cōnsulerent.*[2] This adjustment of the tense in the subordinate clause to the tense in the Principal clause [1] is in accordance with the Latin usage expressed in the following

<div align="center">

RULE XLI. — Sequence of Tenses.

</div>

491. Principal tenses depend upon principal tenses; historical upon historical: [3]

Nītitur ut vincat, *he strives to conquer.*[4] Cic. Nēmō erit quī cēn-seat, *there will be no one who will think.*[4] Cic. Quaesierās nōnne

---

[1] For *Principal* and *Subordinate* Clauses, see 14, 348, notes.

[2] If the verb in the Subordinate Clause denotes *completed* action, it must be in the *Perfect* after a Present tense, and in the *Pluperfect* after a Past tense. See 492, 2, and 493, 2.

[3] For *Principal* and *Historical* Tenses, see 14, 198.

[4] The Present Subjunctive generally denotes *present time* in relation to the principal verb. Accordingly, *vincat* depending upon the *present, nītitur,* denotes *present* time, while *cēnseat* depending upon the *future, erit,* denotes *future* time.

putārem, *you had asked whether I did not think.* Cic. Ut honōre dīgnus essem labōrāvī, *I strove to be worthy of honor.* Cic.

492. In accordance with this rule, the Subjunctive dependent upon a principal tense, *present, future, future perfect,* is put—

1. In the PRESENT, to denote *incomplete action :*

Quaeritur cūr dissentiant, *the question is asked, why they disagree.* Cic. Nēmŏ erit quī cēnseat, *there will be no one who will think.* Cic.

2. In the PERFECT, to denote *completed action :*

Quaerāmus quae vitia fuerint, *let us inquire what faults there were.* Cic. Rogitābit mē ubĭ fuerim, *he will ask me where I have been.* Ter.

493. The Subjunctive dependent upon an historical tense, *imperfect, historical perfect, pluperfect,* is put—

1. In the IMPERFECT, to denote *incomplete action :*

Timēbam nē ēvenīrent ea, *I was fearing that those things would take place* (i.e. at some future time). Cic. Quaesierās nōnne putārem, *you had inquired whether I did not think* (i.e. at that time). Cic.

2. In the PLUPERFECT, to denote *completed action :*

Themistoclēs, cum Graeciam līberāsset, expulsus est, *Themistocles was banished, though he had liberated Greece.* Cic.

NOTE 2.—In the examples given above, observe that the verbs in the Subordinate clauses, *vincat, vinceret, cōnsulant, cōnsulerent,* all express the *purpose* of the leading action. *He strives* (for what purpose ?) *that he may conquer* or *to conquer. They are sent* (for what purpose ?) *that they may consult Apollo* or *to consult Apollo.* These verbs are all in the *Subjunctive,* in accordance with the Latin usage expressed in the following

RULE XLII.— Purpose.

497. The Subjunctive is used to denote PURPOSE:

I. With the relative **quĭ,** and with relative adverbs, as **ubĭ, unde,** etc. :

Missī sunt quī (=ut iī) cōnsulerent Apollinem, *they were sent* TO CONSULT *Apollo* (who should, *or* that they should). Nep. Missī sunt dēlēctī quī Thermopylās occupārent, *picked men were sent* TO TAKE POSSESSION OF *Thermopylae.* Nep. Domum, ubĭ habitāret, lēgit, *he selected a house where he might dwell* (that he might dwell in it). Cic.

II. With **ut, nē, quō, quōminus**:

Ēnītitur ut *vincat, he strives that* HE MAY CONQUER. Cic.   Pūnit nē *peccētur, he punishes that crime* MAY *not* BE COMMITTED. Sen. Lēgum idcircō servī sumus, ut līberī esse possīmus, *we are servants of the law for this reason, that we may be free.* Cic.   Medicō dare quō sit studiōsior, *to give to the physician, that* (by this means) *he may be more attentive.* Cic.   Nōn recūsāvit quōminus poenam subīret, *he did not refuse to submit to punishment.* Nep.

498. CLAUSES OF PURPOSE readily pass into *Object Clauses,*[1] but they still retain the Subjunctive.

Optō ut id audiātis, *I desire* (pray) *that you may hear this.* Cic. Servīs imperat ut fīliam dēfendant, *he commands his servants to defend his daughter.* Cic.   Contendit ut vincat, *he strives to conquer.* Cic.

LESSON XLI.

SUBJUNCTIVE AND IMPERATIVE ACTIVE IN CONJUGA- TIONS III. AND IV. — EXERCISES.

120. *Vocabulary.*

Addūcit,	*he leads to.*
Cōgnōscit,	*he ascertains.*
Colloquium, iī, *n.*	*conversation, conference, interview.*
Dēdūcit,	*he leads forth, conducts.*
Equitātus, ūs, *m.*	*cavalry.*
Imperat,	*he orders.*
Implōrat,	*he implores.*
Intellegit,	*he understands.*
Mulier, eris, *f.*	*woman.*
Nūntius, iī, *m.*	*messenger; tidings.*
Obses, idis, *m. and f.*	*hostage.*
Pedes, itis, *m.*	*foot-soldier ; pl. foot-soldiers, infantry.*
Pedius, iī, *m.*	*Pedius,* a lieutenant in Caesar's army.
Populus, ī, *m.*	*people.*

---

[1] An Object Clause is one which has become virtually the *object* of a verb.   Thus, in '*optō ut id audiātis,*' the clause *ut id audiātis* has become the object of *optō,* 'I desire.'

Postulat,	*he demands.*
Reddit,	*he gives back, returns.*
Remanet,	*he remains.*
Rogat,	*he asks.*
Rōmānus, a, um,	*Roman.*
Trādit,	*he gives up, surrenders.*

121. *Translate into English.*

1. Mīlitēs timōris suspīciōnem vītent.   2. Mīlitēs ut timō-
ris suspīciōnem vītent[1] in aciē remanent.   3. Ut timōris
suspīciōnem vītārent remanēbant.   4. Suam urbem vallō
fossāque mūniant.   5. Hunc locum altissimō[2] mūrō mūnīte.
6. Helvētiī prōximās cīvitātēs rogant ut sē juvent.[3]   7.
Rogābant ut sē juvārent.[3]   8. Noster equitātus hostium
impetum sustineat.   9. Caesar equitātum, quī sustinēret[4]
hostium impetum, mīsit.   10. Haec intellegātis.   11. Haec
ut intellegātis, audīte Rōmānōs mīlitēs.   12. Cum populō
Rōmānō pācem cōnfirment.

13. Castra vallō mūnīte.   14. Mīlitibus imperāvit ut
castra vallō mūnīrent.[5]   15. Lēgātī haec dīcant.   16. Gallī
lēgātōs mittent quī haec dīcant.   17. Haec cōgnōscite.   18.
Gallīs imperābat ut haec cōgnōscerent.   19. Mulierēs
patrēs suōs implōrābant nē sē Rōmānīs trāderent.   20.
Caesar nē quem peditem ad colloquium addūcat.   21.
Ariovistus postulāvit nē quem peditem ad colloquium
Caesar addūceret.[6]   22. Caesar postulāvit ut Ariovistus
obsidēs redderet.   23. Caesar duās legiōnēs cōnscrīpsit, et
Pedium mīsit quī eās in Galliam dēdūceret.[7]

---

[1] *Subjunctive of Purpose.* See 119, Rule XLII.

[2] In accordance with Suggestion VII., for what form will you look in
the Vocabulary to find the meaning of *altissimō?* See 86, 162.

[3] Why *juvent* in one case, and *juvārent* in the other? See 119, 492
and 493.

[4] See Suggestion XXIV., 3.

[5] *Ut . . . mūnīrent*, an *Object Clause.* See 119, 498.

[6] *Nē . . . addūceret:* See 119, 498.

[7] For *Mood*, see 119, 497, I.; for *Translation*, see Suggestion XXIV., 3.

122. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Let us fortify this city with a high wall.[1] 2. Fortify your cities with moats and walls. 3. We implore you to fortify[2] our city with a very high wall. 4. Let us hear the words of the lieutenant. 5. The soldiers will remain to hear[2] the words of the lieutenant. 6. Let the soldiers remain to hear the words of the king. 7. The soldiers remained to hear the words of Caesar. 8. Let us lead the army back into camp. 9. Let us enrol three legions in Gaul. 10. The commander will send five legions to withstand[3] the attacks of the enemy.

11. He sent three legions to withstand the attack of the enemy. 12. Let no one announce our plans to the enemy. 13. Will you not send a messenger to announce these things to Caesar? 14. Listen to me (*hear me*) that you may understand these things. 15. Caesar demanded that the Germans should not remain in Gaul.[4] 16. The soldiers remained in the city that they might fortify it. 17. You asked us to help you. 18. We demand that you listen to our words. 19. Ariovistus demanded that Caesar should not help the Gauls. 20. They asked Caesar not to give them up to the Germans.

LESSON XLII.

**PRESENT AND IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE.—
RULE XLIII.**

123. *Examples.* — *Subjunctive in Clauses of Result.*

1. Nōn is sum quī (= ut ego)   *I am not such a one* AS TO USE
    his *ūtar.*   *these things.*

2. Ita vīxit ut *esset* cārissimus.   *He so lived that* HE WAS *most dear.*

---

[1] In Latin, use the *Ablative of Means.* See **78,** Rule XXV.
[2] Use *ut with the Subjunctive.*
[3] Use the *Relative with the Subjunctive.*
[4] *That . . . in Gaul,* an *Object Clause;* see **119, 498.**

NOTE. — In these examples observe that the Subordinate verbs, *ūtar, esset,* express the *Result* of what is stated in the principal clause. They are in the *Subjunctive* in accordance with the Latin usage expressed in the following

RULE XLIII. — Result.

500. The Subjunctive is used to denote RESULT:

I. With the relative **quī**, and with relative adverbs, as **ubī, unde, cūr,** etc.:

Nōn is sum quī (= *ut ego*) hīs *ūtar*,[1] *I am not such a one as* TO USE *these things.* Cic.   Innocentia est adfectiō tālis animī, quae (= *ut ea*) noceat nēminī,[1] *innocence is such a state of mind as* INJURES *no one.* Cic.

II. With **ut, ut nōn, quīn:**

Ita vīxit ut Athēniēnsibus *esset* cārissimus, *he so lived that* HE WAS *very dear to the Athenians.* Nep.   Ita laudō, ut nōn *pertimēscam, I so praise as not* TO FEAR.[2] Cic.

501. CLAUSES OF RESULT readily pass into *Substantive Clauses,* but they still retain the Subjunctive.   Thus the Subjunctive is used —

I. In SUBJECT CLAUSES:

Fit ut quisque dēlectētur, *it happens that every one is delighted.* Cic.   Sequitur ut falsum sit, *it follows that it is false.* Cic.

II. In OBJECT CLAUSES:

Sōl efficit ut omnia flōreant, *the sun causes all things to bloom* (i. e., produces that result). Cic.

503. The Subjunctive is used in RELATIVE CLAUSES to *characterize* an *Indefinite* or *General Antecedent:*

Quid est quod tē dēlectāre possit, *what is there which can delight you?* Cic.   Sunt quī putent, *there are some who think.* Cic.   Nēmō est quī nōn cupiat, *there is no one who does not desire.* Cic.

---

[1] *Is quī,* literally, *he who* = 'such that I.' *Tālis quae,* literally, *such which* = 'such that it.'
[2] Or *that I do not fear.*

124. *Vocabulary.*

Barbarus, a, um,	*barbarous, rude.*
Commovet,	*he moves, disturbs.*
Compellit,	*he drives.*
Complūrēs, plūra *or* plūria,	*very many, many, several.*
Condōnat,	*he condones, pardons, forgives.*
Cōnflīgit,	*he contends, fights.*
Contendit,	*he hastens.*
Continet,	*he restrains, retains, confines, keeps.*
Eques, itis, *m.*	*horseman; pl. horsemen, cavalry.*
Fīnis, is, *m. and f.*	*end, limit; fīnēs, pl. m. boundaries;*
Injūria, ae, *f.*	*injury, wrong.* [*territory.*
Ita, *adv.*	*so, in such a way.*
Littera, ae, *f.*	*letter, letter of the alphabet; litterae,*
	pl., letters; a letter, epistle.
Perīculum, ī, *n.*	*peril, danger.*
Prohibet,	*he prohibits, checks, prevents, keeps.*
Scit, 4,	*he knows.*
Silva, ae, *f.*	*wood, forest.*
Tam, *adv.*	*so, to such an extent.*
Tantus, a, um,	*so great.*
Tempestās, ātis, *f.*	*weather; tempest, storm.*

125. *Translate into English.*

1. Mīlitēs omnēs fortissimē pūgnābant. 2. Tanta mīlitum virtūs fuit ut omnēs fortissimē pūgnārent. 3. Timor māgnus omnem exercitum occupāvit. 4. Timor māgnus mentēs mīlitum omnium perturbābat. 5. Omnium mentēs animōsque perturbāvit. 6. Tantus timor omnem exercitum occupāvit ut omnium mentēs animōsque perturbāret. 7. Caesar nōn is fuit quī hostēs timēret.[1] 8. Erant tempestātēs quae nostrōs[2] in castrīs continērent. 9. Tempestātēs hostem ā pūgnā prohibuērunt. 10. Erant complūrēs diēs[3] tempestātēs quae hostem ā pūgnā prohibērent.

11. Ariovistus nōn tam barbarus fuit ut haec nōn scīret. 12. Hī nūntiī Caesarem ita commovent ut castra vallō fōs-

---

[1] See 123, 500.

[2] Lit., *our, ours;* render *our men;* a *Possessive* used *substantively.*

[3] *Accusative of Duration of Time.* See **98**, Rule IX.

sāque mūniat. 13. Hī nūntiī litteraeque Caesarem ita commovent ut in fīnēs Belgārum contendat. 14. Equitēs hostium cum equitātū nostrō ita cōnflīgunt ut nostrī[1] eōs in silvās compellant. 15. Tanta Divitiacī apud Caesarem grātia fuit ut injūriam condōnāret. 16. Utinam in reliquum tempus timōris suspīciōnem vītētis. 17. Imperātor sex legiōnēs mīsit quae hanc urbem oppūgnārent. 18. Utinam hae cīvitātēs in armīs essent. 19. Utinam omnēs mīlitēs nostrī fortiter pūgnārent.

126. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Our soldiers fought so bravely that they conquered[2] the enemy. 2. The courage of our soldiers is so great that they always fight bravely, and withstand all the attacks of the enemy. 3. They are not so barbarous as not to help (*that they do not help*) their friends. 4. He is not one who (*that one who*) would announce our counsels to the enemy. 5. So great fear took possession of the commander that he led the army back into camp. 6. So great fear took possession of the Gauls that they fortified their camp with a moat and a rampart.

7. The fear of the enemy was so great that they gave up the hostages. 8. The soldiers of the tenth legion were so brave that they did not fear the enemy. 9. Our soldiers are so brave that they are prepared for[3] all dangers. 10. Fear so disturbs your minds that you do not listen to (*hear*) me. 11. For[4] the future let us avoid all suspicions. 12. For the future our soldiers will fight so bravely that they will avoid suspicion of fear. 13. Would that all our citizens were in arms. 14. The enemy sent a large army to assault our city.

---

[1] See foot-note 2, page 104.
[2] What *Mood* will you use in Latin? See 123, Rule XLIII.
[3] Use *ad.* See 116, foot-note on *ad.*
[4] Use *in.* See 116, foot-note on *in.*

LESSON XLIII.

PRESENT AND IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE. — RULE LV.

127. *Examples. — Indirect Questions.*

1. Quaeris *cūr dissentiant.*	*You ask* WHY THEY DISAGREE.
2. Quaesīvit *salvusne esset clipeus.*	*He asked* WHETHER HIS SHIELD WAS SAFE.

NOTE. — In these examples observe that the Subordinate clauses *cūr dissentiant,* 'why they disagree,'[1] and *salvusne esset clipeus,* 'whether the (his) shield was safe,'[1] involve questions without directly asking them. Such clauses are called *Indirect Questions.* The verbs in these Indirect Questions are in the Subjunctive, in accordance with the Latin usage expressed in the following

RULE LV. — Moods in Indirect Clauses.

529. The Subjunctive is used —

I. In indirect questions:

Quaeritur, cūr dŏctissimī hominēs dissentiant, *it is a question, why the most learned men disagree.* Cic. Quaesierās, nōnne putārem, *you had asked whether I did not think.* Cic. Quālis sit animus, animus nescit, *the soul knows not what the soul is.* Cic. Quid diēs ferat incertum est, *what a day will bring forth is uncertain.* Cic.

II. Often in clauses dependent upon an Infinitive or upon another Subjunctive:

Nihil indīgnius est quam eum quī culpā *careat* suppliciō nōn carēre, *nothing is more shameful than that he who* IS FREE *from fault should not be exempt from punishment.* Cic. Vereor nē, dum minuere *velim* labōrem, augeam, *I fear that while I* WISH *to diminish the labor, I shall increase it.* Cic.

3. Indirect double questions are generally introduced by the same interrogative particles as are direct double questions (**106,** 353).

---

[1] The Indirect question, *cūr dissentiant,* involves the Direct question, *Cūr dissentiunt?* 'why do they disagree?' *Salvusne esset clipeus* involves the Direct question: *Salvusne est clipeus?* 'is the shield safe?'

Thus they generally take *utrum* or *-ne* in the first member, and *an* in the second:

Quaeritur virtūs suamne propter dignitātem an propter frūctūs aliquōs expetātur, *it is asked whether virtue is sought for its own worth, or for certain advantages.* Cic.

128. *Vocabulary.*

Arar, aris,[1] *m.*	*the Arar*, a river in southeastern Gaul,
Atque, *conj.*	*and.* [the modern *Saône.*
Captīvus, ī, *m.*	*captive.*
Condūcit,	*he leads together.*
Dēcertat,	*he contends, struggles, fights.*
Fluit,	*it flows.*
Gerit,	*he carries on, does, wages.*
Igitur, *conj.*	*therefore.*
Interior,[2] us,	*interior, inner.*
Jūdicat,	*he judges.*
Ob, *prep. w. acc.*	*on account of, for.*
Officium, iī, *n.*	*duty.*
Proelium, iī, *n.*	*battle, engagement.*
Pudor, ōris, *m.*	*shame, respect.*
Quaerit,	*he inquires, asks, seeks.*
Quantus, a, um,	*how great.*
Quot, *indeclinable,*	*how many.*
Rēmī, ōrum, *m. pl.*	*The Remi*, a tribe of northern Gaul.
Uter, tra, trum, **42,** 151, 1,	*which (of two).* [ence.
Valet,	*he avails, prevails, has force or influ-*

129. *Translate into English.*

1. Quae cīvitātēs in armīs sunt ? Ab hīs lēgātīs quaerit quae cīvitātēs in armīs sint.[3] 2. Quae cīvitātēs quantaeque[4] in armīs sunt ? Ab hīs quaerēbat quae cīvitātēs quantaeque in armīs essent. 3. Quid dīcit Ariovistus ? Quid dīcat Ariovistus cōgnōscite. Hīs lēgātīs imperāvit ut, quid dīceret

---

[1] Accusative *Ararem* or *Ararim*, Ablative *Arare* or *Arari*.

[2] See **86,** 166.

[3] *Quae . . . sint*, an *Indirect Question.* What would be the *Direct Question?* For *Translation*, see Suggestion XXIV., 2.

[4] *Quantaeque*, composed of *quantae* and the conjunction *que*, 'and.'

Ariovistus, cōgnōscerent.   4. In utram partem¹ fluit Arar?
In utram partem fluat Arar jūdicēmus.

5. Quam ob rem Ariovistus proeliō nōn dēcertat?   Caesar
ex captīvīs quaerēbat quam ob rem Ariovistus proeliō nōn
dēcertāret.   6. Omnem exercitum in ūnum locum condūcā-
mus.   7. Nōnne pudor apud vōs valet?   Num apud vōs
timor valet?   Utrum apud vōs pudor atque officium an
timor valet?   Intellegāmus utrum apud vōs pudor atque
officium an timor valeat.   8. Quid gerunt Belgae?   9. Quid
gerēbant Belgae?   Imperātor sciēbat quid gererent Belgae.
10. Trēs legiōnēs igitur in interiōrem Galliam mittat.

130. *Translate into Latin.*

1. For what reason are the Gauls fortifying their cities?
Let us ascertain for what reason the Gauls are fortifying²
their camp.   2. Let us inquire of the ambassadors how many
Germans there are in Gaul.   3. Caesar knew how many Ger-
mans there were in Gaul.   4. Let us inquire of the captives
how many states of Gaul are in arms.   5. Did Caesar know
how many states of Gaul were in arms?   He knew which
states were in arms.   6. Inquire in which direction the
Rhine flows.

7. Caesar knew how large the states of Gaul were.   He
ascertained how brave the Belgians were.   He knew who
were the bravest of all the Gauls.   8. The Gauls did not
understand who their enemies were.   So great fear took
possession of the Gauls that they did not understand who
their enemies were.³   9. He inquired of the captives into
what place Ariovistus was leading his army.   10. Caesar
knew whether⁴ valor or fear prevailed among his soldiers.
11. He demanded that the Remi should ascertain what the
Belgians were doing.

---

¹ *Partem*, lit. *part;* render *direction.*
² What *Mood* will you use in the Latin? See 127, 529, I.
³ For *Moods,* see 123, Rule XLII., and 127, Rule LV.
⁴ For *Interrogative Particles,* see 127, 529, 3.

LESSON XLIV.

PRESENT INFINITIVE ACTIVE. — RULE LVI.

131. The *Present Infinitive*[1] of the verb *Sum* is *esse*, 'to be.' In the four conjugations, the *Present Infinitive Active* has the following

ENDINGS.

CONJ. I.	CONJ. II.	CONJ. III.	CONJ. IV.
āre,	ēre,	ere,	īre.

PRESENT INFINITIVE ACTIVE.

First conjugation,	am**ā**re, *to love.*
Second conjugation,	mon**ē**re, *to advise.*
Third conjugation,	regere, *to rule.*
Fourth conjugation,	aud**ī**re, *to hear.*
Verb sum,	esse, *to be.*

132. *Examples. — Infinitive.*

1. Haec *vītāre* cupit.	*He desires* TO AVOID *these things.*
2. *Vincere* scit.	*He knows how* TO CONQUER.
3. Gestiunt *scīre* omnia.	*They long* TO KNOW *all things.*

NOTE. — In these examples observe that *vītāre* depends upon the verb *cupit*, 'he desires to avoid,' *vincere* upon *scit*, and *scire* upon *gestiunt*. They are all in the infinitive, in accordance with the Latin usage expressed in the following

RULE LVI. — Infinitive.

533. Many verbs admit an Infinitive to complete or qualify their meaning :

Audeō dīcere, *I dare say* (I venture to say). Cic. Haec vītāre cupimus, *we desire to avoid these things.* Cic. Cōnstituit nōn prōgredī, *he decided not to advance.* Caes. Crēdulī esse coepērunt, *they began to be credulous.* Cic. Vincere scīs, *you know how to conquer* (you know to conquer). Liv. Victōriā ūtī nescīs, *you do not know how to use victory.* Liv. Latīnē loquī didicerat, *he had learned*

---

[1] For the *Infinitive*, see 14, 200, I.

to speak Latin. Sall. Dēbēs hŏc rescrībere, *you ought to write this in reply.* Hor. Nēmŏ mortem effugere potest, *no one is able to escape death.* Cic. Solent cōgitāre, *they are accustomed to think.* Cic.

133. In the Irregular verb *Possum,* 'I am able,' a compound of *Sum,*[1] the THIRD PERSON in the *singular* and *plural* of the *present, imperfect, future,* and *perfect* of the *indicative* has the following forms:

<center>PARADIGM.</center>

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Pres. potest, *he is able;*	possunt, *they are able.*
Imp. poterat, *he was able;*	poterant, *they were able.*
Fut. poterit, *he will be able;*	poterunt, *they will be able.*
Perf. potuit, *he has been able;*	potuērunt, *they have been able.*

<center>**134.** *Vocabulary.*</center>

Altitūdŏ, inis, *f.*	*height, depth.*
Autem, *conj.*	*but.*
Citerior, ius, **86, 166,**	*nearer;* citerior Gallia, *Cisalpine Gaul,* the Roman province of Gaul.
Cōgit,	*he drives together, brings together, collects; he forces, compels.*
Comportat,	*he brings together, gathers.*
Cōnstituit,	*he determines.*
Diū, diūtius, diūtissimē, *adv.*	*for a long time.*
Dubitat,	*he hesitates, doubts.*
Expūgnat,	*he takes by storm.*
Frūmentum, ī, *n.*	*grain.*
Ibĭ, *adv.*	*there.*
Ĭtalia, ae, *f.*	*Italy.*
Lātitūdŏ, inis, *f.*	*width, thickness.*
Mātūrat,	*he hastens.*
Potest,	*he is able, can.*
Propter, *prep. w. acc.*	*on account of.*
Renovat,	*he renews.*
Vastat,	*he lays waste.*
Venetia, ae, *f.*	*Venetia,* the country of the Veneti.
Vērō, *adv.*	*in truth, indeed;* as conj., *but.*

---

[1] Compounded of *potis,* 'able,' and *sum,* 'I am.' *Potis* is shortened to *pot,* which becomes *pos* before *s: pot-est, pos-sunt,* for *pot-sunt.*

135. *Translate into English.*

1. Caesar hōc oppidum propter lātitūdinem fōssae mūrīque altitūdinem expūgnāre nōn poterat. 2. Hostēs impetum nostrōrum mīlitum diūtius sustinēre nōn poterant. 3. Gallī adventum Rōmānōrum ibī exspēctāre cōnstituērunt. 4. Mīlitēs omnia impedīmenta sēcum[1] portāre dēbent. 5. Mīlitēs sēsē[2] diūtius sustinēre nōn poterant. 6. Caesar autem castra in altitūdinem pedum[3] duodecim vallō mūnīre cōnstituit. 7. Imperātor hanc urbem māgnam oppūgnāre nōu dubitāvit.

8. Imperātor hunc locum altissimō mūrō mūnīre dēbet. 9. Venetī cōnstituērunt oppida mūnīre, frūmenta ex agrīs in oppida comportāre, nāvēs in Venetiam cōgere. 10. Tum vērō Caesar manūs māgnās cōgere cōnstituit. 11. Gallī multīs dē causīs bellum renovāre cōnstituērunt. 12. Rōmānī agrōs nostrōs vastāre nōn dēbent. 13. Imperātor duās legiōnēs in citeriōre Galliā cōnscrībere mātūrāvit. 14. Hostēs omnem exercitum in ūnum locum condūcere mātūrāvērunt.

136. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Are the enemy able to take our city by storm? They can (*are able to*) attack the city, but on account of the valor of the citizens, and the height of the wall, they cannot take it by storm. 2. Caesar hastened to fortify his camp. 3. The soldiers determined to remain and avoid suspicion of fear. 4. The Romans determined to fortify their camp with a rampart. 5. They determined to enrol five legions in Italy. 6. Were the Helvetii able to take their grain with them.[4] They were not able to take all their grain with them.

---

[1] Observe that the preposition *cum* is appended to the pronoun *sē*. See 102, 184, 6.

[2] *Reduplicated* form of the pronoun. See 102, 184, 4.

[3] Construe with *vallō*. [4] See 102, 184, 6.

7. The enemy are so brave that they do not hesitate[1] to renew the war. 8. Ought not the commander to ascertain what states are in arms?[2] He has not been able to ascertain what states are in arms. 9. The enemy will not be able to sustain the attacks of our soldiers. 10. The citizens did not hesitate to remain in Italy. 11. Let not the commander hesitate to fortify the city with a high wall. 12. The soldiers ought not to hesitate to remain in line, that they may avoid suspicion of fear.

LESSON XLV.

READING AT SIGHT. — DIRECTIONS. — EXERCISE.

137. *Directions for Reading at Sight.*

I. Read at Sight in the Latin, slowly and attentively, the entire passage that is assigned for the exercise. In this reading

1. Remember that the full and exact meaning of an inflected word contains TWO distinct elements.

1) The *general meaning* of the word, without reference to *case, number, mood, tense,* etc., that is, the meaning of the STEM. See 10, 46.

2) The meaning of the endings which mark *case, number, mood, tense,* etc., that is, the meaning of the SUFFIXES.

2. Recall as vividly as possible the exact meaning of all the words which you recognize.

3. Notice carefully the *ending* of each word, and thus determine which words are nouns, which verbs, etc.

4. Determine from these endings *case, number, voice, mood, tense,* etc., and endeavor to recall the exact force of each.

---

[1] What *Mood* will you use in rendering into Latin? See 123, 500, II.

[2] By what *Mood* will you render *are?* See 127, 529, I.

5. In Complex and Compound Sentences, observe carefully the relation of the clauses to one another, and determine which are *principal*,[1] and which are *subordinate*.[1] Remember that a clause introduced by a conjunction meaning *and, or, but, therefore,* adds a new thought, while a clause introduced by a conjunction meaning *when, since,* etc., only explains or modifies some other clause.

II. Having by this first reading acquired a good general idea of the entire passage, read a second time with the same care. If in this reading, any word should appear unfamiliar, endeavor to recall some passage in which you have previously met it. Be not hasty in turning to the passage, but use the knowledge which you already possess. As a last resort, if you fail to recall the word, turn to the vocabulary for it, and make yourself so familiar with it, that you will always recognize it in future.

III. Having by these two readings thoroughly mastered the entire passage, read the Latin aloud two or three times, for the important purpose of appreciating and enjoying the thought in its original form. By this practice the Latin will become, in time, a second vernacular, and you will enjoy reading a fine passage in Latin as you would enjoy reading one in English.

IV. After having thus read and examined the Latin, write a translation[2] of the passage in good idiomatic English.

138. *Read at Sight, examine carefully, and translate into English.*[3]

Omnēs ferē Belgae contrā populum Rōmānum conjūrāvērunt. Caesar igitur duās legiōnēs in citeriōre Galliā con-

---

[1] On *Principal* and *Subordinate Clauses,* see 14, 348, notes.
[2] On Translation, see Suggestions XIX. to XXVI.
[3] It is hoped that the pupil will enter upon this exercise with the determination to master it without help from any source. He has already had in previous lessons *every word* and *every construction* contained in it. The

scrīpsit et in interiōrem Galliam quī dēdūceret Pedium lēgātum mīsit. Ipse posteā ad exercitum contendit et Gallīs imperāvit ut quid Belgae gererent cōgnōscerent. Hī cōnstanter omnēs nūntiāvērunt: "Belgae manūs māgnās cōgunt, et omnem exercitum in ūnum locum condūcunt." Tum vērō Caesar rem frūmentāriam comparāvit et ad fīnēs Belgārum contendit. Rēmī autem quī nōn in armīs erant, ad eum lēgātōs mīsērunt quī cum populō Rōmānō pācem et amīcitiam cōnfīrmārent, et dīcerent: "Reliquī omnēs Belgae in armīs sunt."

139. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The Remi did not conspire against the Roman people. All the rest of the Belgae did not hesitate to conspire against the Romans. 2. Caesar enrolled many legions in Italy and Gaul. He determined to send a lieutenant to conduct[1] two legions into the interior of[2] Gaul. 3. The Remi hastened to establish peace and friendship with the Roman people. They will announce to the Romans what the rest of[2] the Belgae are doing.

4. Caesar determined to hasten to the army and to ascertain what the Gauls were doing. 5. The tidings so disturbed the commander that he hastened to enrol soldiers and to fortify his camp. 6. Let us prepare supplies of grain and hasten toward the territory of the enemy. 7. Caesar ordered Pedius, the lieutenant, to conduct the legions into Gaul. 8. The Belgae determined to collect large bands of men. 9. The commander determined to send five legions to withstand[1] the attack of the enemy.

---

important point is, not that he should translate it absolutely at sight, but that he should master it entirely by means of his own resources. These exercises in Reading at Sight are intended to encourage independent work, to promote self-reliance in study, and to give facility in reading and appreciating Latin.

[1] What *Mood* should be used in rendering into Latin? See 119, 497, I.

[2] What is the Latin idiom for *the interior of*, *the rest of*?

LESSON XLVI.

VERB *Sum* IN FULL.

140. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

CONJUGATION.

201. Regular verbs are inflected, or conjugated, in four different ways, and are accordingly divided into Four Conjugations. These Four Conjugations are distinguished from one another by the stem characteristics or by the endings of the Infinitive, as follows:

	CHARACTERISTICS.	INFINITIVE ENDINGS.
CONJ. I.	ā	ā-re
II.	ĕ	ĕ-re
III.	e	e-re
IV.	ī	ī-re

202. PRINCIPAL PARTS. — The Present Indicative, Present Infinitive, Perfect Indicative, and Supine are called from their importance, the *Principal Parts* of the verb.

203. The ENTIRE CONJUGATION of any regular verb may be readily formed from the Principal Parts by means of the proper endings.[1]

1. SUM, *I am*, is used as an auxiliary in the passive voice of regular verbs. Accordingly, its conjugation, though quite irregular, must be given at the outset. The Principal Parts are —

PRES. INDIC.	PRES. INFIN.	PERF. INDIC.
Sum, *I am,*	esse, *to be,*	fuī, *I have been.*

---

[1] In the Paradigms of regular verbs, the endings which distinguish the various forms are separately indicated, and should be carefully noticed. In the principal tenses each ending contains the characteristic vowel.

204. Sum, *I am.*—Stems, *es, fu.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.[1]
sum,	esse,	fuī,	—

Indicative Mood.

Present Tense.

Singular.		Plural.	
sum,[2]	*I am,*	sumus,	*we are,*
es,	*thou art,*[3]	estis,	*you are,*
est,	*he is ;*	sunt,	*they are.*

Imperfect.

eram,	*I was,*	erāmus,	*we were,*
erās,	*thou wast,*[3]	erātis,	*you were,*
erat,	*he was ;*	erant,	*they were.*

Future.

erŏ,[4]	*I shall be,*[5]	erimus,	*we shall be,*
eris,	*thou wilt be,*	eritis,	*you will be,*
erit,	*he will be ;*	erunt,	*they will be.*

Perfect.

fuī,	*I have been,*[5]	fuimus,	*we have been,*
fuistī,	*thou hast been,*	fuistis,	*you have been,*
fuit,	*he has been ;*	fuērunt, ⎫ fuēre, ⎭	*they have been.*

Pluperfect.

fueram,	*I had been,*	fuerāmus,	*we had been,*
fuerās,	*thou hadst been,*	fuerātis,	*you had been,*
fuerat,	*he had been ;*	fuerant,	*they had been.*

Future Perfect.

fuerŏ,	*I shall have been,*	fuerimus,	*we shall have been,*
fueris,	*thou wilt have been,*	fueritis,	*you will have been,*
fuerit,	*he will have been ;*	fuerint,	*they will have been.*

---

[1] The Supine is wanting.

[2] *Sum* is for *esum, eram* for *esam.* Whenever *s* of the stem *es* comes between two vowels, *e* is dropped, as in *sum, sunt,* or *s* is changed to *r,* as in *eram, erŏ*; see 1, 31. The pupil will observe that the endings which are added to the roots *es* and *fu* are distinguished by the type.

[3] Or *you are,* and in the Imperfect, *you were;* thou is confined mostly to solemn discourse.

[4] In verbs, final *o,* marked ŏ, is generally long.

[5] Or, Future, *I will be;* Perfect, *I was.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
sim,	*may I be,*[1]	sīmus,	*let us be,*
sīs,	*mayst thou be,*[2]	sītis,	*be ye, may you be,*
sit,	*let him be, may he be;*	sint,	*let them be.*

IMPERFECT.

essem,	*I should be,*[1]	essēmus,	*we should be,*
essēs,	*thou wouldst be,*	essētis,	*you would be,*
esset,	*he would be;*	essent,	*they would be.*

PERFECT.

fuerim,	*I may have been,*[1]	fuerimus,	*we may have been,*
fueris,	*thou mayst have been,*	fueritis,	*you may have been,*
fuerit,	*he may have been;*	fuerint,	*they may have been.*

PLUPERFECT.

fuissem,	*I should have been,*	fuissēmus,	*we should have been,*
fuissēs,	*thou wouldst have been,*	fuissētis,	*you would have been,*
fuisset,	*he would have been;*	fuissent,	*they would have been.*

IMPERATIVE.

Pres.	es,	*be thou,*	este,	*be ye.*
Fut.	estŏ,	*thou shalt be,*[3]	estōte,	*ye shall be,*
	estŏ,	*he shall be;*[3]	suntŏ,	*they shall be.*

INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
Pres. esse, *to be.*	
Perf. fuisse, *to have been.*	
Fut. futūrus esse,[4] *to be about to be.*	*Fut.* futūrus,[4] *about to be.*

1. In the Paradigm all the forms beginning with *e* or *s* are from the stem *es;* all others from the stem *fu.*[5]

2. RARE FORMS:—*forem, forēs, foret, forent, fore,* for *essem, essēs, esset, essent, futūrus esse; siem, siēs, siet, sient,* or *fuam, fuās, fuat, fuant,* for *sim, siās, sit, sint.*

---

[1] On the translation of the Subjunctive, see 111, 196, and remember that it is often best rendered by the Indicative. Thus, *sim* may often be rendered *I am,* and *fuerim, I have been.*

[2] Or *be thou,* or *may you be.*

[3] The Fut. may also be rendered like the Pres., or with *let: be thou; let him be.*

[4] *Futūrus* is declined like *bonus.* So in the Infinitive: *futūrus, a, um esse.*

[5] *Es* and *fu* are *roots* as well as *stems.* As the basis of this paradigm they are properly *stems,* but as they are not derived from more primitive forms, they are in themselves *roots.*

LESSON XLVII.

VERB SUM. — RULE XIV. — EXERCISES.

141. *Examples.* — *Dative with Adjectives.*

Patria *omnibus* cāra est.   *Native country is dear* TO ALL.
Pāx *nōbis* grāta fuit.   *Peace was acceptable* TO US.

NOTE. — Observe in these examples that *omnibus*, limiting the meaning of *cāra*, 'dear,' and *nōbis* that of *grāta*, 'acceptable,' are both in the *Dative*. This Latin usage is expressed in the following

RULE XIV. — Dative with Adjectives.

391. With adjectives the OBJECT TO WHICH the quality is directed is put in the Dative :

Patriae sōlum *omnibus* cārum est, *the soil of their country is dear* TO ALL. Cic. Id aptum est *temporī*, *this is adapted* TO THE TIME. Cic. Canis similis lupō est, *a dog is similar to a wolf.* Cic.

142. *Vocabulary.*

Continenter, *adv.*	*continually, incessantly.*
Dīvicŏ, ōnis, *m.*	*Divico, an Helvetian chieftain.*
Flūmen, inis, *n.*	*stream, river.*
Lēgātiŏ, ōnis, *f.*	*embassy.*
Longē, *adv.*	*by far, far, long.*
Nōbilis, e,	*noble, of high birth.*
Omnīnō, *adv.*	*in all, only.*
Orgetorix, igis, *m.*	*Orgetorix, an Helvetian chieftain.*
Pār, paris,	*equal, a match for.*
Pōns, pontis, *m.*	*bridge.*
Rhodanus, ī, *m.*	*the Rhone.*
Sēquanus, a, um,	*Sequanian, pertaining to the*
Testis, is, *m.* and *f.*	*witness.* [*Sequani.*[1]
Tōtus,[2] a, um,	*all, the whole of.* [*Gaul.*[3]
Ūlterior, us,[2] *adj. comp.*	*farther; Gallia ūlterior, Transalpine*

[1] In the eastern part of Gaul.
[2] See 42, 151, and 86, 166.
[3] That is, *Gaul beyond the Alps* from Rome, *Gaul west of the Alps.*

143. *Translate into English.*

1. Belgae, quī Gallōrum[1] omnium fortissimī erant, cum Germānīs continenter bellum gerēbant.   2. Helvētiī lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt, cūjus[2] lēgātiōnis Divicŏ prīnceps fuit.   3. Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit Orgetorix.   4. Fuerat omnīnō in Galliā ūlteriōre legiŏ ūna.   5. Ad bellum parātī sīmus.   6. Legiōnēs multās cōnscrīpsit ut ad bellum parātus esset.[3]

7. Hūjus rĕī populus Rōmānus sit testis.   8. Ager Sēquanus erat optimus tōtīus Galliae.   9. Ariovistus, rēx Germānōrum, tertiam partem agrī Sēquanī occupāvit.   10. In[4] eō flūmine pōns erat.   11. Mīlitēs omnēs fortēs esse dēbent.   12. Hostēs parēs esse nostrō exercituī[5] nōn poterant.

144. *Translate into Latin.*

1. You shall be chief of the embassy which the citizens are sending to the enemy.   2. You are the bravest of all the soldiers.   3. Who will be braver than this soldier?   4. Let us all be brave.   5. Did he not say that all the Gauls were in arms? He says that all the Gauls will be in arms.   6. Caesar was in Italy, but his legions were in Gaul.   7. The Helvetii said: "We are the bravest of the Gauls."
8. The Gauls had always been prepared for war.   9. Shall you be prepared to withstand the attack of the enemy?   10. Let us be brave, that we may be prepared to withstand the attacks of the enemy.   11. Were the Gauls a match for the Romans? They were not a match for the Roman soldiers.   12. Near the city there was a bridge over the Rhone.[6]

---

[1] *Gallōrum* is a Partitive Genitive, governed by *fortissimī* used substantively, according to Rule XVI.; see 31, 397.

[2] *Cūjus* is here an adjective, agreeing with *lēgātiōnis*, according to Rule XXXIV.; see 43.

[3] Why in the *Subjunctive*, and why in the *Imperfect?* See 119, Rules XLI. and XLII.

[4] Render *over*, and observe the difference of idiom between the Latin and the English.   [5] Why in the *Dative?* See 141, Rule XIV.

[6] Latin idiom, IN *the Rhone.*

LESSON XLVIII.

FIRST CONJUGATION. — INDICATIVE ACTIVE.

145. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

In the verb *Amō* learn the Indicative Mood of the Active voice.   See page 124.

LESSON XLIX.

FIRST CONJUGATION. — INDICATIVE ACTIVE. —
EXERCISES.

146. *Vocabulary.*

Acceptus, a, um,	*acceptable.*
Aeduī, ōrum, *m. pl.*	*the Aedui, Aeduans,* a tribe of
Amīcus, a, um,	*friendly.* [central Gaul.
Auxilium, iī, *n.*	*aid.*
Collocō, āre, āvī, ātum,	*to place, station.*
Dīvitiacus, ī, *m.*	*Divitiacus,* an Aeduan chieftain.
Dumnorix, ĭgis, *m.*	*Dumnorix,* an Aeduan chieftain.
Ēdūcit,	*he leads out.*
Fīnitimus, a, um,	*neighboring.*
Graecia, ae, *f.*	*Greece.*
Graviter, *adv.*	*severely.*
Hīberna, ōrum, *n. pl.*	*winter quarters.*
Jam, *adv.*	*already.*
Māximē, *sup. adv.*	*most, very greatly.*
Mōns, montis, *m.*	*mountain.*
Plēbs, plēbis, *f.*	*the common people, populace.*
Profectiō, ōnis, *f.*	*departure, starting.*
Senātus, ūs, *m.*	*senate.*
Trāns, *prep. w. acc.*	*across, beyond.* [Gaul.
Trēverī, ōrum, *m. pl.*	*the Treveri,* a tribe of northeastern

147. *Translate into English.*

1. Caesar exercitum in hībernīs collocāvit.   2. Helvētiī in tertium annum[1] profectiōnem lēge[2] cōnfirmant.   3. Cum

---

[1] *In tertium annum,* lit. ' into the third year '; render *for* or *upon the third year.*   [2] See **78, Rule XXV.**

multīs cīvitātibus pācem et amīcitiam cōnfirmāverant. 4.
Caesar Aeduōrum prīncipēs, quōrum māgnam cōpiam in
castrīs habēbat, graviter accūsāvit. 5. Fugitīvī hostibus[1]
eam rem nūntiāvērunt. 6. Omnēs auxilium ā populō Rō-
mānō implōrābant. 7. Divitiacus Aeduus māximē plēbī
acceptus erat. 8. Belgae prōximī sunt Germānīs quī trāns
Rhēnum incolunt. 9. Trēverī prōximī flūminī Rhēnō fuērunt.

10. Caesar trēs legiōnēs quae circum Aquilēiam hiemābant
ex hībernīs ēduxit. 11. Tum in Galliā hiemābāmus. 12.
Auxilium ā Caesare implōrāverāmus. 13. Num nostra cōn-
silia hostibus nūntiāvīstī? Nōn vestra cōnsilia hostibus nūn-
tiāvī. 14. Prīncipēs Aeduōrum graviter accūsāvīstis. 15.
Prō patriā fortiter pūgnābimus. 16. Nōnne timōris sus-
pīciōnem vītābis. In reliquum tempus omnēs suspīciōnēs
vītābō. 17. Helvētiī frūmentum sēcum[2] portābunt. 18.
Helvētiī jam agrōs vastāverant et oppida expūgnābant.

148. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Will this judge be acceptable to you? He will be
acceptable to me and to all the citizens. 2. Have you an-
nounced this battle to the consul?[3] I have announced it
to the consul and to the senate. 3. Shall you pass the
winter in Italy? We shall pass the winter in Greece.
4. The commander will place his whole army in winter
quarters in Gaul, and pass the the winter himself in Italy.

5. We hastened to establish peace and friendship with
the neighboring states. 6. Did you not implore aid from
your friends? We implored aid from all our friends. 7.
You have severely censured the commander himself. 8.
The Remi were friendly to the Romans. 9. Of all the
Gauls the Helvetii were the nearest to the Germans, with
whom[4] they were continually waging war.

---

[1] Explain the construction; **54**, Rule XII.   [2] See **102, 184, 6.**
[3] For the proper construction, see **54**, Rule XII.
[4] *With whom.* See **106, 187, 2.**

LESSON L.

149. *Vocabulary.*

Absum, abesse, āfuī,	*to be absent, distant.*
Collis, is, *m.*	*hill.*
Convocō, āre, āvī, ātum,	*to call together, assemble.*
Fuga, ae, *f.*	*flight.*
Movet,	*he moves.*
Nox, noctis, *f.*	*night.*
Occultō, āre, āvī, ātum,	*to hide.*
Praesidium, iī, *n.*	*garrison.*
Septimus, a, um,	*seventh.*
Subdūcit,	*he withdraws, leads off.*
Tentō, āre, āvī, atum,	*to try.*

150. *Translate into English.*

1. Rōmānī Helvētiōs superābunt. 2. Eō tempore[1] Helvētiī adventum Caesaris exspectābant. 3. Aeduī bellī fortūnam tentāvērunt. 4. Nox fugam hostium nōn occultāvit. 5. Ariovistus eās omnēs cōpiās ūnō proeliō superāvit. 6. Proximō diē Caesar ē castrīs cōpiās ēduxit. 7. Nōnne hŏc proelium imperātōrī nūntiāvistī? 8. Hŏc proelium imperātōrī nūntiābō. 9. Num bellum renovābitis? Multīs dē causīs[2] bellum renovābimus.

10. Caesar prīncipēs Aeduōrum convocāvit et graviter eōs accūsāvit. 11. Septimō diē Ariovistī cōpiae ā nōbīs nōn longē aberant. 12. Proximā nocte castra movēbāmus. 13. Imperātor castra movet ut intellegat[3] utrum apud mīlitēs pudor atque officium an timor valeat.[3] 14. Caesar hŏc

---

[1] For construction, see 93, Rule **XXXI**.

[2] Literally, *from or out of many causes*; render *for many reasons.*

[3] Explain Mood; 119 and 127, Rules **XLII.** and **LV.**

oppidum occupāvit et ibī praesidium collocāvit. 15. Suās cōpiās in prōximum collem subdūcit.

151. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Caesar was at that time praising the soldiers of the tenth legion. 2. He had often praised the valor of that legion. 3. On what day did you renew the war? We renewed the war on the tenth day. 4. On which day did the ambassadors announce to you the flight of the enemy? They announced it to us on the same day. 5. Caesar had called together the chiefs of the Aedui, that he might upbraid[1] them. 6. Have you called us together at this time, that you may upbraid us? I have called you together that I may praise your valor, and that I may announce to you the approach of the enemy.

7. For what reason[2] did you renew the war at that time? We renewed the war that we might conquer the enemy. 8. At that time we were awaiting the arrival of the general. 9. On the next night the Gauls seized the town. 10. We shall conquer in a single battle[3] all the forces of the enemy. 11. On the seventh day we shall have placed a garrison in the town, and on the next day we shall try the fortune of war.

LESSON LI.

FIRST CONJUGATION. — ACTIVE VOICE IN FULL. — REVIEW OF DECLENSION III.

152. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

In the verb *Amō*, learn the Active voice in full. See the following page.

---

[1] For Mood and Tense, see 119, Rules XLI. and XLII.
[2] *For what reason;* see note on *multis dē causis,* 150.
[3] *In a single battle;* Latin idiom, BY *a single battle.*

FIRST CONJUGATION : A VERBS.

205. ACTIVE VOICE.—Amŏ, *I love.*

VERB STEM AND PRESENT STEM, amā.[1]

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	SUPINE.
amŏ,	amāre,	amāvī,	amātum.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
amŏ,[1]	*I love,*[2]	amāmus,	*we love,*
amās,	*you love,*[3]	amātis,	*you love,*
amat,	*he loves;*	amant,	*they love.*

IMPERFECT.

amābam,	*I was loving,*	amābāmus,	*we were loving,*
amābās,	*you were loving,*	amābātis,	*you were loving,*
amābat,	*he was loving;*	amābant,	*they were loving.*

FUTURE.

amābŏ,	*I shall love,*[4]	amābimus,	*we shall love,*
amābis,	*you will love,*	amābitis,	*you will love,*
amābit,	*he will love;*	amābunt,	*they will love.*

PERFECT.

amāvī,	*I have loved,*[5]	amāvimus,	*we have loved,*
amāvistī,	*you have loved,*	amāvistis,	*you have loved,*
amāvit,	*he has loved;*	amāvērunt, ēre,	*they have loved.*

PLUPERFECT.

amāveram,	*I had loved,*	amāverāmus,	*we had loved,*
amāverās,	*you had loved,*	amāverātis,	*you had loved,*
amāverat,	*he had loved;*	amāverant,	*they had loved.*

FUTURE PERFECT.

amāverŏ,	*I shall have loved,*[4]	amāverimus,	*we shall have loved,*
amāveris,	*you will have loved,*	amāveritis,	*you will have loved,*
amāverit,	*he will have loved;*	amāverint,	*they will have loved.*

---

[1] The final ā of the stem disappears in *amŏ* for *ama-ŏ, amem, amēs,* etc., for *ama-im, ama-is,* etc. Also in the Pass. in *amor* for *ama-or, amer,* etc., for *ama-ir,* etc. Final *o,* marked ŏ, is generally long.

[2] Or *I am loving, I do love.* So in the Imperfect, *I loved, I was loving, I did love.*

[3] Or *thou lovest.* So in the other tenses, *thou wast loving, thou wilt love,* etc.

[4] Or *I will love.* So in the Future Perfect, *I shall have loved* or *I will have loved.*

[5] Or *I loved.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
amem,	*may I love,*[1]	amēmus,	*let us love,*
amēs,	*may you love,*	amētis,	*may you love,*
amet,	*let him love ;*	ament,	*let them love.*

IMPERFECT.

amārem,	*I should love,*	amārēmus,	*we should love,*
amārēs,	*you would love,*	amārētis,	*you would love,*
amāret,	*he would love ;*	amārent,	*they would love.*

PERFECT.

amāverim,	*I may have loved,*[2]	amāverīmus,	*we may have loved,*
amāverīs,	*you may have loved,*	amāverītis,	*you may have loved,*
amāverit,	*he may have loved ;*	amāverint,	*they may have loved.*

PLUPERFECT.

amāvissem,	*I should have loved,*	amāvissēmus,	*we should have loved,*
amāvissēs,	*you would have loved,*	amāvissētis,	*you would have loved,*
amāvisset,	*he would have loved ;*	amāvissent,	*they would have loved.*

IMPERATIVE.

Pres.	amā,	*love thou ;*	amāte,	*love ye.*
Fut.	amātō,	*thou shalt love,*	amātōte,	*ye shall love,*
	amātō,	*he shall love ;*	amantō,	*they shall love.*

INFINITIVE.			PARTICIPLE.		
Pres.	amāre,	*to love.*	*Pres.*	amāns,[4]	*loving.*
Perf.	amāvisse,	*to have loved.*			
Fut.	amātūrus[3] esse,	*to be about to love.*	*Fut.*	amātūrus,[3]	*about to love.*

GERUND.			SUPINE.		
Gen.	amandī,	*of loving,*			
Dat.	amandō,	*for loving,*			
Acc.	amandum,	*loving,*	*Acc.*	amātum,	*to love,*
Abl.	amandō,	*by loving.*	*Abl.*	amātū,	*to love, be loved.*

---

[1] On the translation of the Subjunctive, see 111, 196.
[2] Often best rendered *I have loved.* So in the Pluperfect, *I had loved.*
[3] Decline like *bonus,* 42, 148.
[4] For declension, see 86, 157.

LESSON LII.

FIRST CONJUGATION. — ACTIVE VOICE. — REVIEW OF
    DECLENSION III. — RULE VI. — EXERCISES.

153. *Examples.* — *Two Accusatives.*

1. *Platōnem Homērum* philo-
    sophōrum appellant.
	They call PLATO THE HOMER *of*
	    philosophers.

2. *Urbem Rōmam* vocāvit.	*He called* THE CITY ROME.

Note. — In these examples observe that *appellant,* 'they call,'
takes *two* Accusatives, *Platōnem* and *Homērum,* both referring to the
same *person,* and that *vocāvit,* 'he called,' also takes *two* Accusatives,
urbem and *Rōmam,* both referring to the same city. This Latin usage
is expressed in the following

RULE VI. — Two Accusatives — Same Person.

373. Verbs of MAKING, CHOOSING, CALLING, REGARD-
ING, SHOWING, and the like, admit two Accusatives of
the same person or thing:

Hamilcarem *imperātōrem* fēcērunt, *they made Hamilcar* COM-
MANDER. Nep. Ancum *rēgem* populus creāvit, *the people elected
Ancus* KING. Liv. Summum cōnsilium appellārunt *Senātum, they
called their highest council* SENATE. Cic.

1. PREDICATE ACCUSATIVE. — One of the two Accusatives is the
Direct Object, and the other an essential part of the Predicate. The
latter may be called a *Predicate Accusative;* see **59,** Rule I.

154. *Vocabulary.*

Allobrogēs, um, *m. pl.*	*the Allobroges,* a tribe of southeast- ern Gaul; *sing.* Allobrox, ogis.
Appellō, āre, āvī, ātum,	*to call.*
Boiī, ōrum, *m. pl.*	*the Boii,* a tribe of central Gaul.
Conjunx, conjugis, *m. and f.*	*spouse, husband, wife.*
Cōnservō, āre, āvī, ātum,	*to preserve.*
Fīlius, ii,[1] *m.*	*son.* [army.
Galba, ae, *m.*	*Galba,* a lieutenant in Caesar's

---

[1] In the singular, the *Genitive* and *Vocative* are generally contracted to
fīlī. See **35, 51, 5.**

Gēns, gentis, *f.*	*race, tribe, nation.*
Līberī, ōrum, *m. pl.*[1]	*children.*
Mārcus, ī, *m.*	*Marcus,* a Roman praenōmen.
Nōmen, inis, *n.*	*name.*
Nōminō, āre, āvī, ātum,	*to name, call.*
Nūtrix, īcis, *f.*	*nurse.*
Octōdūrus, ī, *m.*	*Octodurus,* a town of the Veragri,
Prōpulsō, āre, āvī, ātum,	*to repulse.* [now *Martigny.*
Recūsō, āre, āvī, ātum,	*to reject.*
Rōma, ae, *f.*	*Rome.*
Sicilia, ae, *f.*	*Sicily.* [Gaul.
Veragrī, ōrum, *m. pl.*	*the Veragri,* a tribe of eastern
Vergobretus, ī, *m.*	*Vergobretus,* the title of the chief
	magistrate of the Aedui.

155. *Translate into English.*

1. Senātus Rōmānus Aeduōs frātrēs appellāvit. 2. Senātus Ariovistum rēgem et amīcum appellāverat. 3. Senātus patrem Casticī populī[2] Rōmānī amīcum appellat. 4. Galba in vīcō Veragrōrum hiemābat. 5. Gallī hunc vīcum Octōdūrum appellant. 6. Mārcus Catō nūtrīcem plēbis Rōmānae Siciliam nōminābat. 7. Gallī omnēs auxilium ā populō Rōmānō implōrent. 8. Allobrogēs, quī trāns Rhodanum incolunt, auxilium ā Caesare implōrāre cōnstituērunt.

9. Boiī, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, hanc urbem oppūgnāre cōnstituērunt. 10. Cōnservāte vōs, conjugēs, līberōs, fortūnāsque vestrās. 11. Ariovistus cum Rōmānīs dēcertāre parātus erat. 12. Nē[3] timor exercitum Rōmānum occupet. 13. Utinam[4] timor omnem hostium exercitum occupāvisset.[4] 14. Nē populī Rōmānī amīcitiam recūsēmus. 15. Prō patriā fortiter pūgnēmus et hostēs prōpulsēmus. 16. Ariovistus partem suārum cōpiārum quae castra Rōmāna oppūgnāret[5] mīsit.

---

[1] Not used in the singular.
[2] Construe with *amicum.*
[3] Why is *nē* rather than *nōn* used? See 114, 483, 3.
[4] For *utinam* and for the force of the *Pluperfect,* see 114, 483, 1 and 2.
[5] For the use of *Mood,* see Rule XLII.

156. *Translate into Latin.*

1. They called the city Rome. 2. The Aedui called their chief Vergobretus. 3. Will you call us brothers? We shall call you all brothers. 4. The Romans call us Gauls. 5. At that time we called Ariovistus king. 6. Did not the consul name his son Marcus? Cicero the consul named his son Marcus. 7. The citizens called Marcus Cato wise. 8. The enemy had determined to call the bravest of their leaders general.

9. Galba determined to winter with the legion in a village which the Gauls call Octodurus. 10. Do you call Ariovistus a friend or an enemy?[1] I call him the enemy of the Roman people. 11. He inquired whether you called him a friend or an enemy.[2] 12. Ariovistus, whom the Germans called king, was prepared to try the fortune of war. 13. The Gauls implored aid of the Romans, in order that they might repulse the enemy.

LESSON LIII.

FIRST CONJUGATION. — INDICATIVE PASSIVE. — REVIEW OF DECLENSIONS IV. AND V. — RULE XXII.

157. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

In the verb *Amō*, learn the Indicative Mood of the Passive voice. See page 136.

158. *Examples. — Ablative.*

1. Caedem *ā vōbīs* dēpellit.   *He wards off slaughter* FROM YOU.
2. Statua *ex aere* facta.   *A statue made* OF BRONZE.
3. Expulsus est *patriā*.   *He was banished* FROM HIS COUNTRY.
4. Ars *ūtilitāte* laudātur.   *An art is praised* BECAUSE OF ITS USEFULNESS.

---

[1] For the construction of *Double* or *Disjunctive Questions*, see 106, 353.

[2] For the construction of *Indirect Double Questions*, see 127, 529, 3.

Note. — In these examples *vōbīs* (*ā vōbīs*), 'from you,' *aere* (*ex aere*), 'of bronze,' *patriā*, 'from his country,' and *ūtilitāte*, 'because of its usefulness,' are all in the *Ablative*, in accordance with the Latin usage expressed in the following

RULE XXII. — Separation, Source, Cause.

413. Separation, Source, and Cause are denoted by the *Ablative with* or *without a preposition :*

Separation. — Caedem ā vōbīs dēpellō, *I ward off slaughter* from you. Cic. Expulsus est patriā, *he was banished from his country.* Cic. Urbem commeātū prīvāvit, *he deprived the city of supplies.* Nep. Cōnātū dēstitērunt, *they desisted from the attempt.* Caes.

Source. — Hōc audīvī dē parente meō, *I heard this* from my father. Cic. Oriundī ab Sabīnīs, *descended* from the Sabines. Liv. Statua ex aere facta, *a statue made of bronze.* Cic.

Cause. — Ars ūtilitāte laudātur, *an art is praised* because of its usefulness. Cic. Rogātū vēneram, *I had come by request.* Cic. Ex vulnere aeger, *ill in consequence of his wound.* Cic.

415. The Ablative of Source more commonly takes a preposition ; see examples under 413. It includes *agency, parentage, material,* etc.

I. The *agent* or *author* of an action is designated by the *Ablative* with ā or ab :

Occīsus est ā Thēbānīs, *he was slain by the Thebans.* Nep.

Note 1. — The Accusative with *per* may be used of the *person through whose agency* the action is effected :

Ab Oppianicō *per Fabriciōs* factum est, *it was accomplished by Oppianicus* through the agency of the Fabricii. Cic.

LESSON LIV.

FIRST CONJUGATION. — INDICATIVE PASSIVE. — RULE XXII. — EXERCISES.

159. *Vocabulary.*

Conventus, ūs, *m.*	*assembly, meeting, council, convention.*
Ēnūntiō, āre, āvī, ātum,	*to report, disclose, announce.*
Etiam, *adv.*	*also, even.*

`Lingua, ae, f.	tongue, language.
Liscus, ī, m.	**Liscus,** the chief magistrate of the
Meritō, adv.	deservedly. [Aedui.
Paulātim, adv.	little by little, by degrees, gradually.
Per, prep. w. acc.	through, by, over.
Prōvincia, ae, f.	province. [of northwestern Gaul.
Santonēs, um, m. pl.	the Santoni or Santones, a tribe

160. *Translate into English.*

1. Mīlitēs legiōnis decimae omnēs ā Caesare[1] laudantur.
2. Eōdem tempore multae legiōnēs meritō laudābantur.
3. Semper laudāberis.   4. Ab omnibus meritō laudāminī.
5. Ab omnibus laudātus es.   6. Diviātiacus ad Caesarem vocā-
tus erat.   7. Haec omnia Ariovistō ēnūntiāta sunt.   8. Pater
Casticī ā senātū amīcus[2] appellātus erat.   9. Ea rēs per fugi-
tīvōs[3] hostibus nūntiātur.   10. Aeduī frātrēs ab senātū
appellātī sunt.

11. Timor eōs, quī nōn māgnum in rē mīlitārī[4] ūsum
habēbant, occupāvit; hōrum timōre, paulātim etiam iī, quī
māgnum in castrīs ūsum habēbant, perturbābantur.   12.
Prīncipēs Helvētiōrum ā Caesare convocātī sunt.   13. Fīnēs
Santonum ā prōvinciā Rōmānā nōn longē absunt.   14. Liscus
multās rēs illō diē in conventū dixit.   15. Iī quī tertiam
Galliae partem incolunt nostrā linguā[5] Gallī appellantur.
16. Galba in vīcō quī appellātur Octōdūrus hiemābat.

161. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The brave soldiers will be praised by the general.[6]   2.
You have been deservedly praised by Caesar himself.   3.

---

[1] See 158, 415, I., and observe that in the *Active* construction the *Author*
or *Agent* of the action is denoted by the *Nominative;* in the Passive by the
Ablative with *ā* or *ab.* Thus in this sentence the *Active* construction
would be: *Caesar mīlitēs . . . laudat.*

[2] *Predicate Nominative; see* 59, Rule I.

[3] See 158, 415, note 1.

[4] Lit. *in the military thing;* render, *in military affairs.*

[5] Ablative of Means; see 78, Rule XXV.

[6] *By the general; see* note on *ā Caesare,* 160.

Was not Cicero the consul praised by the senate? He was deservedly praised by the Roman people. 4. Has not this citizen been accused by you? He has not been accused by me, but by the magistrate. 5. Will not all these things be announced to the commander?

6. By whom were our plans announced to the enemy? They have not been announced to the enemy. 7. What has been announced to Caesar? All these things have been announced to him. 8. The consul, with a large army, is not far from the city. 9. At that time the enemy were not far from the village which is called Octodurus. 10. The Aedui, who had been called brothers by the senate, implored aid from Caesar.

LESSON LV.

FIRST CONJUGATION. — INDICATIVE PASSIVE. — REVIEW OF ADJECTIVES OF DECLENSIONS I. AND II.

162. *Vocabulary.*

Āc, *conj.*	*and.*
Alpēs, ium, *f. pl.*	*the Alps.*
Arvernī, ōrum, *m. pl.*	*the Arverni,* a tribe of southern Gaul.
Celeriter, *adv.*	*quickly.*
Centuriō, ōnis, *m.*	*centurion.*
Excitō, āre, āvī, ātum,	*to excite, arouse.*
Fabius, iī, *m.*	*Fabius,* a celebrated Roman general.
Harūdēs, um, *m. pl.*	*the Harudes,* a tribe of southwestern
Nūper, *adv.*	*recently, of late.* [Germany.
Obsignō, āre, āvī, ātum,	*to seal, sign and seal.*
Paene, *adv.*	*almost, well nigh, nearly.*
Parō, āre, āvī, ātum,	*to prepare.*
Quīntus, ī, *m.*	*Quintus,* a Roman praenōmen.
Sēdēs, is, *f.*	*seat, abode;* locus āc sēdēs, *place of*
Testāmentum, ī, *n.*	*will.* [abode.
Trānsportō, āre, āvī, ātum,	*to transport, carry over, take over, bring over.* [universally.
Vulgō, *adv.*	*commonly, as a general thing,*

163. *Translate into English.*

1. Oppida Aeduōrum paene in cōnspēctū exercitūs nostrī expūgnāta sunt. 2. Rēs frūmentāria[1] māgnō cum perīculō comparāta erat. 3. Eōdem tempore agrī Aeduōrum vastābantur. 4. Ariovistus, rēx Germānōrum, amīcus ā senātū appellātus erat. 5. Māgnae Gallōrum cōpiae ab Ariovistō ūnō proeliō[2] superātae sunt. 6. Timor exercitum populī Rōmānī occupāvit; etiam centuriōnēs quī māgnum in rē mīlitārī ūsum habēbant perturbābantur; vulgō in castrīs testāmenta obsīgnābantur.

7. Omnēs ferē Gallī ad bellum celeriter excitantur. 8. Aeduī bellī fortūnam tentāvērunt et superātī sunt. 9. Harūdēs nūper in Galliam trānsportātī sunt.[3] Hīs locus āc sēdēs parābuntur. 10. Imperātor in ulteriōrem Galliam per Alpēs cum quīnque legiōnibus contendit. 11. Multae gentēs ūnō nōmine Germānī appellantur. 12. Arvernī ab Quīntō Fabiō bellō superātī sunt.

164. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Our fields have been devastated by the enemy. 2. Many towns had been taken by storm.[4] 3. Large forces of the enemy will be conquered by our commander. 4. The Gauls had been conquered by Caesar in many battles.[5] 5. Many chiefs had been called together by Caesar. 6. The chiefs who had been called together said many things in the council. 7. Many Germans were carried over into Gaul by Ariovistus. For these Germans places of abode had been

---

[1] *Rēs frūmentāria*, lit. *the thing relating to corn* or *grain, the affair of the grain*; render ' grain ' or ' supplies.'

[2] Observe the difference of construction between expressions of AGENCY, AUTHORSHIP, *ab Ariovistō*, and MEANS, *proeliō*.

[3] That is, *across the Rhine.*

[4] *By storm* is not to be rendered by a separate word, but is involved in the meaning of the Latin verb.

[5] *In many battles*; Latin idiom, BY *many battles.*

prepared in Gaul. 8. These legions were wintering in Gaul with great peril.

9. We are not quickly aroused to war. 10. Many nations had already been aroused to war. 11. The fortune of war has been tried by the Gauls, and they will all be conquered. 12. You, who have large experience in military affairs, will not be quickly aroused to war. 13. Were all kings called friends of the Roman people? Many kings were called friends by the senate. 14. The lands of the Gauls were often devastated by the Germans. 15. The town in which our army wintered was not attacked by the Gauls.

LESSON LVI.

FIRST CONJUGATION. — SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE. — RE-VIEW OF ADJECTIVES. — RULE LIX.

165. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

In the verb *Amō*, learn the Subjunctive Mood of the Passive voice. See page 137.

166. *Examples. — Supine.*

1. Ad Caesarem *congrātulātum* convēnērunt. They came to Caesar TO CONGRATU-LATE *him.*
2. Vēnērunt rēs *repetītum.* They came TO DEMAND *restitution.*

NOTE. — In these examples the supines *congrātulātum* and *repetītum* are employed to denote the purpose of the leading action, in accordance with the Latin usage expressed in the following

RULE LIX. — Supine in Um.

546. The Supine in *um* is used with verbs of motion to express PURPOSE:

Lēgātī vēnērunt rēs repetītum, *deputies came to demand restitution.* Liv. Ad Caesarem congrātulātum convēnērunt, *they came to Caesar to congratulate him.* Caes.

LESSON LVII.

·167. *Vocabulary.*

Cāsus, ūs, *m.*	*accident, occurrence, emergency.*
Commeātus, ūs, *m.*	*supplies.*
Dēditiō, ōnis, *f.*	*surrender.*
Iter, itineris, *n.*	*march, journey;* māgna itinera, *forced*
Jūdicium, iī, *n.*	*judgment, decision.* [*marches.*
Observō, āre, āvī, ātum,	*to observe, keep, comply with.*
Sōcratēs, is, *m.*	*Socrates,* the celebrated Greek philosopher.
Sublevō, āre, āvī, ātum,	*to assist, support.*

168. *Translate into English.*

1. Adventus hostium Caesarī nūntiētur.   2. Utinam ea
rēs imperātōrī nūntiāta esset.[1]   3. Utinam haec cōnsilia Hel-
vētiīs nūntientur.[1]   4. Nē nostra cōnsilia per fugitīvōs hosti-
bus nūntientur.   5. Jūdicium senātūs observētur.   6. Utinam
omnia senātūs jūdicia observāta essent.   7. Ab hīs lēgātīs
quaerit quantae Galliae cīvitātēs superātae sint.[2]   8. Ab hīs
quaerēbat quae urbēs expūgnātae essent.   9. Quaerēbat quam
ob rem commeātūs nōn ad Caesarem portātī sint.   10. Eōdem
tempore ille mōns ā Labiēnō occupētur.

11. Ab prīncipibus Aeduōrum quaerēbat quam ob rem
exercitus populī Rōmānī ab iīs nōn sublevārētur.   12. Caesar
ad omnēs cāsūs subsidia comparābat.   13. Sōcratēs omnium[3]
sapientissimus fuit.   14. Imperātor in citeriōrem Galliam
māgnīs itineribus[4] contendit.   15. Hae nāvēs lātiōrēs erant
quam reliquae.   16. Prīncipēs Gallōrum lēgātōs ad senātum
Rōmānum mittēbant.   17. Hostēs lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē

---

[1] Show the force of *Tenses;* see 114, 483, 2.
[2] See 127, Rule LV., and Suggestion XXIV., 2.
[3] *Partitive Genitive.*
[4] Lit. *with large journeys;* render *with forced marches.*

169. *Translate into Latin.*

dēditiōne[1] mittunt. 18. Aeduī lēgātos ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum[2] auxilium.

1. What towns have been taken by storm? 2. Let us ascertain what towns have been taken by storm. 3. Let not our fields be devastated in sight of your army. 4. Let us inquire for what reason these Germans have been brought over into Gaul. 5. May the laws be observed by us and by all the citizens. 6. May you all be wise. 7. Would that these boys were wiser. 8. Would that this mountain had been occupied by our army.

9. Let supplies be brought to our army by the Aedui. 10. Caesar was hastening with forced marches into Gaul. 11. Would that all the forces of the enemy had been conquered.[3] 12. May our towns never be stormed by the enemy. 13. What towns of the Gauls were stormed by the Germans? 14. Let us inquire of the ambassadors what towns have been stormed and what fields have been devastated. 15. Let not these things be announced to the Germans. 16. Would that these towns were all occupied by our friends. Let us send ambassadors to the senate to ask[4] aid.

LESSON LVIII.

FIRST CONJUGATION. — PASSIVE VOICE IN FULL. — REVIEW OF PRONOUNS. — RULES LVII. AND LVIII.

170. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

In the verb *Amō,* learn the Passive voice in full. See the following page.

---

[1] Lit. *concerning a surrender;* render *to treat for a capitulation,* or *to capitulate.*

[2] *To ask;* see 166, Rule LIX.

[3] See 114, 483, 2.

[4] See 166, Rule LIX.

FIRST CONJUGATION: A VERBS.

206. PASSIVE VOICE.—Amor, *I am loved.*

VERB STEM AND PRESENT STEM, amā.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.
amor,	amārī,	amātus sum.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.
I am loved.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
amor	amāmur
amāris, *or* re	amāminī
amātur	amantur

IMPERFECT.
I was loved.

amābar	amābāmur
amābāris, *or* re	amābāminī
amābātur	amābantur

FUTURE.
I shall or *will be loved.*

amābor	amābimur
amāberis, *or* re	amābiminī
amābitur	amābuntur

PERFECT.
I have been loved or *I was loved.*

amātus sum[1]	amātī sumus
amātus es	amātī estis
amātus est	amātī sunt

PLUPERFECT.
I had been loved.

amātus eram[1]	amātī erāmus
amātus erās	amātī erātis
amātus erat	amātī erant

FUTURE PERFECT.
I shall or *will have been loved.*

amātus erō[1]	amātī erimus
amātus eris	amātī eritis
amātus erit	amātī erunt

[1] *Fuī, fuistī,* etc., are sometimes used for *sum, es,* etc.: *amātus fuī* for *amātus sum.* So *fueram, fuerās,* etc., for *eram,* etc.: also *fuerō,* etc., for *erō,* etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

May I be loved, let him be loved.[1]

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
amer	amēmur
amēris, *or* re	amēmini
amētur	amentur

IMPERFECT.

I should be loved, he would be loved.[1]

amārer	amārēmur
amārēris, *or* re	amārēmini
amārētur	amārentur

PERFECT.

I may have been loved, or *I have been loved.*[1]

amātus sim[2]	amāti sīmus
amātus sis	amāti sītis
amātus sit	amāti sint

PLUPERFECT.

I should have been loved, he would have been loved.[1]

amātus essem[2]	amāti essēmus
amātus essēs	amāti essētis
amātus esset	amāti essent

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. amāre, *be thou loved ;* | amāmini, *be ye loved.*

Fut. amātor, *thou shalt be loved,*
amātor, *he shall be loved ;* | amantor, *they shall be loved.*

INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
Pres. amāri, *to be loved.*	
Perf. amātus esse,[2] *to have been loved.*	*Perf.* amātus, *having been loved.*
Fut. amātum īri, *to be about to be loved.*	*Ger.*[3] amandus, *to be loved, deserving to be loved.*

---

[1] But on the translation of the Subjunctive, see 111, 196.

[2] *Fuerim, fueris,* etc., are sometimes used for *sim, sis,* etc.—So also *fuissem, fuisses,* etc., for *essem, esses,* etc. : rarely *fuisse* for *esse.*

[3] *Ger.* = Gerundive; see 14, 200, IV., note.

171. *Examples. — Infinitive with Subject.*

1. *Pontem* jubet *rescindī.*   *He orders* THE BRIDGE TO BE BROKEN
                              DOWN.

2. Sentīmus *calēre ignem.*   *We perceive* THAT FIRE IS HOT.

NOTE 1. — The Latin usage illustrated in these examples by the Accusative and the Infinitive is expressed in the following

RULE LVII. — Accusative and Infinitive.

534. Many transitive verbs admit both an Accusative and an Infinitive :

Tē sapere docet, *he teaches you to be wise.* Cic. Eōs suum adventum exspectāre jūssit, *he ordered them to await his approach.* Caes. Pontem jubet rescindī, *he orders the bridge to be broken down.* Caes.

NOTE 2. — In the second of the above examples, the Accusative *ignem* may be regarded as the Subject of the Infinitive *calēre*, in accordance with the Latin usage expressed in the following

RULE LVIII. — Subject of Infinitive.

536. The Infinitive sometimes takes an Accusative as its subject :

Sentīmus calēre ignem, *we perceive that fire is hot.* Cic. Platōnem Tarentum vēnisse reperiō, *I find that Plato came to Tarentum.* Cic.

172. *Vocabulary.*

Accommodātus, a, um,	*fitted, adapted.*
Carīna, ae, *f.*	*keel, bottom* (of a vessel).
Concursus, ūs, *m.*	*running together ; running about, running to and fro, agitation.*
Extrā, *prep. w. acc.*	*beyond, outside of.*
Flūctus, ūs, *m.*	*wave.*
Fremitus, ūs, *m.*	*din, noise.*
Jubet,	*he orders, commands.*
Māgnitūdō, inis, *f.*	*size.*
Modus, ī, *m.*	*measure, manner.*
Nātiō, ōnis, *f.*	*nation.*
Nūdō, āre, āvī, ātum,	*to bare, expose.*
Paulum, *adv.*	*a little, somewhat.*
Plānus, a, um,	*flat, level.*

Prior, us, *sup.* prīmus, a, um, **86, 166,**	*former, first.*
Prōra, ae, *f.*	*prow.*
Scientia, ae, *f.*	*knowledge.*
Segusiānī, ōrum, *m. pl.*	*the Segusiani,* a tribe of southeastern
Sīgnificō, āre, āvī, ātum,	*to signify, indicate.* [Gaul.
Superus, a, um, *comp.* supe-rior, us, *sup.* suprēmus *and* summus, a, um,	*upper;* summus, *highest, greatest.*
Tardō, āre, āvī, ātum,	*to retard, check, hinder, impede.*

173. *Translate into English.*

1. Castra ab ūnā parte[1] nūdāta sunt. 2. Nē tōta castra nūdentur. 3. Caesaris adventū paulum hostium impetus tardātus est. 4. Omnēs in cōnspectū imperātōris etiam in summō perīculō fortiter pūgnābant. 5. Agrī nostrī vastārī[2] nōn dēbent. 6. Oppida Aeduōrum paene in cōnspectū exercitūs nostrī expūgnārī nōn dēbent. 7. Timor hostium fremitū et concursū sīgnificābātur. 8. Māximae nātiōnēs ā Rōmānīs superātae sunt. 9. Intellegunt māximās nātiōnēs superātās esse.[3]

10. Ducēs hostium summam scientiam rēī mīlitāris habēre exīstimābantur. 11. Caesar duās legiōnēs in prōximō monte collocārī jubet. 12. Fugitīvī dīcunt montem ā Labiēnō occupārī.[3] 13. Segusiānī sunt extrā prōvinciam Rōmānam trāns Rhodanum prīmī. 14. Nāvēs hostium ad hunc modum aedificātae sunt; carīnae plāniōrēs sunt quam nostrārum nāvium,[4] prōrae ad māgnitūdinem flūctuum accommodātae.

174. *Translate into Latin.*

1. They say that supplies[5] have not been brought to Caesar by the Aedui. 2. He says that our fields have been devastated by the Gauls. 3. How many vessels have been

---

[1] *Ab ūnā parte;* Latin idiom, *from one part;* render, *on one side.*
[2] See **132,** Rule LVI.   [3] See Suggestion XXV., 1.
[4] *Nāvium* depends upon *carīnae* understood.
[5] See **171,** Rule LVIII.

built by the Gauls? Let us ascertain how many vessels have
been built by them.   4. Deserters say that ten vessels have
been built by the Gauls.   5. They say that many cities were
stormed by the Romans.   6. Deserters say that the camp of
the enemy is exposed on (*from*) one side.   7. Let not our
camp be exposed.   8. Our camp ought not to be exposed.

9. Will you not fight bravely in sight of your general?
10. We ought to fight bravely for our country.   11. Caesar
orders this city to be occupied by our army.   12. An ambas-
sador announced that the cities of our friends were occupied
by the enemy.   13. The Germans ought not to lay waste the
fields of the Gauls.   14. The arrival of Caesar checked the
attack of the enemy.   15. They say that one legion was
stationed in the city.   16. In what part of Gaul were the
legions wintering?   17. Let us ask in what part of Gaul the
legions are wintering.   18. Caesar said that the legions were
wintering among the Belgae.

LESSON LIX.

**FIRST CONJUGATION IN FULL. — EXERCISE IN READ-
ING AT SIGHT.**

175. *Read at Sight, examine carefully, and Translate into
English.*[1]

Helvētiī per agrum Aeduōrum in Santonum fīnēs conten-
dēbant, quī nōn longē ā prōvinciā Rōmānā absunt.   Ob eās
causās Caesar in Ìtaliam māgnīs itineribus contendit, duāsque
ibī legiōnēs cōnscrīpsit, et trēs quae circum Aquilēiam hiemā-
bant ex hībernīs ēduxit, et in ūlteriōrem Galliam per Alpēs
cum hīs quīnque legiōnibus contendit.   Ab citeriōre prō-
vinciā[2] in Segusiānōs exercitum duxit.   Hī sunt extrā prō-

---

[1] See Directions for Reading at Sight, 137.
[2] *Citerior prōvincia* is the Roman province of *Citerior* or *Cisalpine Gaul*,
while *ūlterior prōvincia* is the province of *Ulterior* or *Transalpine Gaul*.

vinciam trāns Rhodanum prīmī. Helvētiī jam Aeduōrum
agrōs vastābant et oppida expūgnābant. Tum vērō tantus
timor Aeduōs occupāvit ut omnium mentēs animōsque per-
turbāret. Lēgātōs igitur ad Caesarem mīsērunt. Eōdem
tempore multae Galliae cīvitātēs auxilium ā Caesare implō-
rāvērunt.

176. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Caesar says that nearly all the Belgae conspired against
the Roman people. The Gauls, whom Caesar had com-
manded to ascertain what the Belgae were doing, announced
that the enemy were collecting large forces (*bands of men*),
and bringing them together in (*into*) one place. 2. How
many legions did Caesar enrol in Italy? At that time he
enrolled two legions there. How many legions will winter
in the vicinity of this town (*around this town*)? The gen-
eral says that three legions will winter in the vicinity of this
town.

3. By whom have the lands of the Aedui been devastated?
He inquired by whom the lands of the Aedui had been devas-
tated. Ambassadors announced that the lands of the Aedui
had been devastated by the Helvetii. 4. The general ought
to lead all his forces out of winter quarters. 5. At that time
Caesar was hastening from Italy over the Alps into Gaul.
6. The Remi sent ambassadors to Caesar, to establish (*who
should establish*) peace and friendship with the Roman peo-
ple, and to say that all the rest of the Belgae were in arms.

LESSON LX.

SECOND CONJUGATION. — INDICATIVE ACTIVE.

177. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

In the verb *Moneō*, learn the Indicative Mood of the
Active voice. See page 144.

<div align="center">

178. *Vocabulary.*

</div>

Agmen, inis, *n.*	*army* on the march, *line of march, line;* extrēmum agmen, *the extremity of the line, the rear.*
Aliquamdiū, *adv.*	*for a time.*
Armō, āre, āvī, ātum,	*to arm.*
Dēbeō, ēre, uī, itum,	*to owe; ought.*
Exterus, a, um, *comp.* exterior, us, *sup.* extrēmus *and* extimus, a, um,	[*the extremity of. outward;* extrēmus, *the outermost,*
Habeō, ēre, uī, itum,	*to have, hold; to regard, regard as.*
Inermus, a, um,	*unarmed.*
Moneō, ēre, uī, itum,	*to advise, warn.*
Nōnne, *interrog. part.,*	*not?* **106,** 351, 1, note 2.
Sine, *prep. v. abl.*	*without.*
Sustineō, ēre, tinuī, tentum,	*to sustain, withstand, resist.*
Timeō, ēre, uī,	*to fear.*

<div align="center">

179. *Translate into English.*

</div>

1. Num hostēs timētis? Nōn hostēs timēmus. 2. Timōris suspīciōnem vītāre dēbētis. 3. Nōnne omnēs suspīciōnēs vītāre dēbēmus? 4. Nōn sine causā hostēs timuimus. 5. Vōbīs omnia dēbeō. 6. Aeduī populō Rōmānō multum dēbēbant. 7. Id Caesarī nūntiāre dēbēmus. 8. Nostra oppida expūgnāre nōn dēbētis. 9. Centuriōnēs māgnum in castrīs ūsum habēbant. 10. Nōnne māgnum in rē mīlitārī ūsum habēbās? Nōn māgnum in rē mīlitārī ūsum habēbam. 11. Caesar Divitiacum fīdum semper habēbat. 12. Vōs fīdōs semper habēbimus. 13. Nōnne mē fīdum habēs? Tē fīdum habeō.

14. Caesar Dumnorigem ad sē vocāvit; monuit ut in reliquum tempus omnēs suspīciōnēs vītāret. 15. Vōs moneō ut in reliquum tempus hās suspīciōnēs vītētis. 16. Ariovistus Caesarem nōn prō amīcō,[1] sed prō hoste habēbit. 17. Tē prō amīcō semper habuī. 18. Num mē prō hoste habētis? Tē nōn prō hoste sed prō amīcō habēmus. 19. Impetum

---

[1] Render *prō* as, lit. *for.*

hostium fortiter sustinuerāmus. 20. Hostēs ab extrēmō agmine[1] fortiter impetum nostrōrum mīlitum sustinēbant. 21. Quōs aliquamdiū inermōs sine causā timuerāmus, hōs posteā armātōs superāvimus.

180. *Translate into Latin.*

1. At that time the Gauls feared the Germans, who dwelt beyond (*across*) the Rhine. 2. Nearly all the Gauls feared Ariovistus, the king of the Germans. 3. Shall you, who have large experience in military affairs, fear the Gauls?[2] We have not large experience in military affairs, but we do not fear this army. 4. These boys owe much to their father. 5. We all owe much to our fathers. 6. Ought we not to attack that town? We ought to take it by storm. 7. Our soldiers always withstand the attacks of the enemy.

8. We shall always regard you all as our friends.[3] 9. Caesar regarded the Germans not as friends, but as enemies. 10. Do you not regard your general as faithful? We all regard him as faithful. 11. Whom do these boys regard as faithful? They regard you as faithful. 12. Did I not warn you not to announce these things to the Germans?[2] You warned us not to announce your plans to the enemy. 13. Did you not fear Ariovistus at that time? I feared him, and regarded him as an enemy.

LESSON LXI.

SECOND CONJUGATION. — ACTIVE VOICE IN FULL.

181. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

In the verb *Moneō*, learn the Active voice in full. See the following page.

---

[1] Render *ab*, ON, lit. *from.* See note on *ab ūnā parte*, **173.**
[2] Which interrogative particle will you use ? See **106, 351, 1,** notes.
[3] *As our friends ;* Latin idiom, FOR *our friends.*

SECOND CONJUGATION: Ē VERBS.

207. ACTIVE VOICE.—Moneŏ, *I advise.*

VERB STEM, *mon, moni;* PRESENT STEM, *monē.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	SUPINE.
moneŏ,	monēre,	monuī,	monĭtum.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I advise.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
moneŏ	monēmus
monēs	monētis
monet	monent

IMPERFECT.

I was advising, or *I advised.*

monēbam	monēbāmus
monēbās	monēbātis
monēbat	monēbant

FUTURE.

I shall or *will advise.*

monēbŏ	monēbimus
monēbis	monēbitis
monēbit	monēbunt

PERFECT.

I have advised, or *I advised.*

monuī	monuīmus
monuīstī	monuīstis
monuit	monuērunt, *or* ēre

PLUPERFECT.

I had advised.

monueram	monuerāmus
monuerās	monuerātis
monuerat	monuerant

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or *will have advised.*

monuerŏ	monuerīmus
monueris	monuerītis
monuerit	monuerint

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.
May I advise, let him advise.[1]

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
moneam	moneāmus
moneās	moneātis
moneat	moneant

IMPERFECT.
I should advise, he would advise.

monērem	monērēmus
monērēs	monērētis
monēret	monērent

PERFECT.
I may have advised, or I have advised.[1]

monuerim	monuerīmus
monuerīs	monuerītis
monuerit	monuerint

PLUPERFECT.
I should have advised, he would have advised.[2]

monuissem	monuissēmus
monuissēs	monuissētis
monuisset	monuissent

IMPERATIVE.

Pres.	monē, *advise thou;*	monēte, *advise ye.*
Fut.	monētō, *thou shalt advise,*	monētōte, *ye shall advise,*
	monētō, *he shall advise;*	monentō, *they shall advise.*

INFINITIVE.

Pres. monēre, *to advise.*
Perf. monuisse, *to have advised.*
Fut. moniturus esse, *to be about to advise.*

PARTICIPLE.

Pres. monēns, *advising.*

Fut. moniturus, *about to advise.*

GERUND.

Gen. monendī, *of advising,*
Dat. monendō, *for advising,*
Acc. monendum, *advising,*
Abl. monendō, *by advising.*

SUPINE.

Acc. monitum, *to advise,*
Abl. monitū, *to advise, be advised.*

---

[1] But on the translation of the Subjunctive, see 111, 196.

[2] The Pluperfect, like the Perfect, is often rendered by the Indicative: *I had advised, you had advised,* etc.

7

LESSON LXII.

SECOND CONJUGATION. — ACTIVE VOICE. — EXERCISES.

182. *Vocabulary.*

Memoria, ae, *f.*	*memory, recollection.*
Novus, a, um,	*new;* novae rēs, *new things, a change*
Pareō, ēre, uī, itum,	*to obey.* [*of affairs, revolution.*
Pristinus, a, um,	*ancient, pristine.*
Retineō, ēre, tinuī, tentum,	*to retain, keep.*
Studeō, ēre, uī,	*to desire.*
Studium, iī, *n.*	*desire.*
Taceō, ēre, uī, itum,	*to be silent, keep silent, remain silent.*
Teneō, ēre, uī, tentum,	*to hold, keep.*

183. *Translate into English.*

1. Nē hostēs sine causā timeāmus.   2. Germānōs timēre nōn dēbēmus.   3. Hōs agrōs armīs teneāmus.   4. Mīlitēs dīcēbant sē hostēs nōn timēre.[1]   5. Hīc centuriō dīcit sē hostēs nōn timuisse.[1]   6. Hostium impetum fortiter sustineāmus. 7. Eās rēs memoriā[2] teneāmus.   8. Nōnne eās rēs memoriā tenēre dēbēmus?   9. Mīlitēs suae pristinae virtūtis memoriam retineant.   10. Nostrae pristinae virtūtis memoriam retineāmus.   11. Tuae pristinae virtūtis memoriam retinēre dēbēs.

12. Vestrae pristinae virtūtis memoriam retinēte, hostiumque impetum fortiter sustinēte.   13. Dīcunt Caesarem ūnam legiōnem sēcum[3] habuisse.[1]   14. Dīcunt tē magnum amīcōrum numerum habuisse.[1]   15. Dīcunt tē magnum amīcōrum numerum habitūrum esse.[1]   16. Dīcunt vōs magnum amīcōrum numerum habitūrōs esse.[1]   17. Amīcōs habēns; cōnsul amīcōs habēns; amīcōs habitūrus; cōnsulēs amīcōs habitūrī. 18. Ob eās causās Dumnorix novīs rēbus[4] studēbat.   19. Monendō, timendō, tenendī, causa tenendī, studium habendī.

---

[1] See Suggestion XXV., 1.

[2] *Memoriā*, literally, **BY** *the memory*, Ablative of *Means*; render **IN** *memory.*

[3] See 102, 184, 6.   [4] See 54, Rule XII.

20. Omnēs ferē Gallī novīs rēbus student et ad bellum celeriter excitantur; omnēs autem hominēs lībertātī student.

184. *Translate into Latin.*

1. We shall always retain the recollection of these things.
2. May you ever retain the recollection of this day. 3. The consul says that he shall always retain the recollection of your friendship. 4. For what reason did the Gauls desire a revolution at that time? 5. Does not Caesar say that the Gauls always desire a revolution? He says that all men desire liberty. 6. Let us obey all the laws, and let us not desire a revolution. 7. Obeying, about to obey; obeying the laws, about to obey the laws; by obeying[1] the laws,[2] of obeying the laws, the desire of obeying the laws.

8. By being silent[1] you avoided suspicion of fear. 9. Let us not fear the Germans without cause. 10. We ought not to regard them as enemies without cause. 11. Would that they had not feared[3] us without cause. 12. How many legions will our commander have with him in Italy? They say that he will have five legions with him. 13. The general says that he shall always regard us as his friends. 14. So great fear took possession of the Romans, that they did not retain[4] the recollection of their ancient courage.

LESSON LXIII.

FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS. — ACTIVE VOICE. — RULE XXX.

185. *Examples. — Place in which.*

1. In nostrīs *castrīs* fuit.	*He was in our* CAMP.
2. *Rōmae* fuit.	*He was* AT ROME.

---

[1] Use the Ablative of the Gerund, as *Ablative of Means.*

[2] Remember that the Gerund governs the same case as other parts of the verb.

[3] For Mood and Tense, see 114, 483, 2. [4] See 123, 500, II.

Note. — The Latin usage illustrated in the Locative Ablative *castris*, and in the Locative *Rōmae*, is expressed in the following

RULE XXX. — Place in which.

425. The Place in which is denoted —

I. Generally by the *Locative Ablative*[1] *with the preposition* **in**:

Hannibal *in Ĭtaliā* fuit, *Hannibal was* IN ITALY. Nep. In nostris castris, *in our camp*. Caes. In Appiā viā, *on the Appian way*. Cic.

II. In Names of Towns by the *Locative*,[2] if such a form exists, otherwise by the *Locative Ablative:*

Rōmae fuit, *he was* AT ROME. Cic. *Corinthī* puerōs docēbat, *he taught boys* AT CORINTH. Cic. *Athēnis* fuit, *he was* AT ATHENS. Cic.

1. In the names of places which are not towns, the Locative Ablative is often used without a preposition, when the idea of *means, manner,* or *cause* is combined with that of *place*:

Castris sē tenuit, *he kept himself* IN CAMP. Caes. Aliquem *tectō* recipere, *to receive any one* IN ONE'S OWN HOUSE. Cic. *Proeliō* cadere, *to fall* IN BATTLE. Caes.

2. The Ablatives *locō, locis, parte, partibus, dextrā, laevā, sinistrā, terrā,* and *mari,* especially when qualified by an adjective, and other Ablatives, when qualified by *tōtus,* are generally used without the preposition:

Aliquid *locō* pōnere, *to put anything* IN ITS PLACE. Cic. Terrā marique, *on land and sea*. Liv. Tōtā Graeciā, *in all Greece*. Nep.

426. Like Names of Towns are used —

1. Many Names of Islands :

Lesbī vixit, *he lived in Lesbos.* Nep. Conōn Cyprī vixit, *Conon lived in Cyprus.* Nep.

2. The Locatives **domī, rūrī, humī, militiae,** and **bellī**:

Domī militiaeque, *at home and in the field.* Cic. Rūrī agere vītam, *to spend life in the country.* Liv.

---

[1] The *Locative Ablative* does not differ in *form* from any other Ablative. It is simply the *Ablative* used with the force of the original *Locative*, i.e. to designate the *place* of the action.

[2] See 10, 48, 4; 35, 51, 8; 63, 66, 4. The Locative was the original construction in all names of places.

186. *Vocabulary.*

Agendicum, ī, *n.*	*Agendicum,* a town of the Senones in central Gaul.
Alesia, ae, *f.*	*Alesia,* a town in central Gaul.
Apertus, a, um,	*open.*
Avus, ī, *m.*	*grandfather.*
Bibrax, actis, *n.*	*Bibrax,* a town of the Remi.
Contineō, ēre, tinuī, tentum,	*to retain, keep, confine, restrain; to enclose, surround.*
Dēsīgnō, āre, āvī, ātum,	*to designate, indicate.*
Dēterreō, ēre, uī, itum,	*to deter.*
Difficultās, ātis, *f.*	*difficulty.*
Domus, ūs, *f.*	*house, home;* domī, *at home.*
Genāva, ae, *f.*	*Geneva.*
Improbus, a, um,	*wicked, unprincipled.*
Karthāgō, inis, *f.*	*Carthage.*
Largiter, *adv.*	*largely, widely, extensively;* largiter potest, *he has extensive influence.*
Mare, is, *n.*	*sea.*
Multitūdō, inis, *f.*	*multitude; the multitude, common*
Obtineō, ēre, tinuī, tentum,	*to obtain, hold.* [*people.*
Sēditiōsus, a, um,	*seditious.*
Servitūs, ūtis, *f.*	*servitude, slavery.*
Sōlum, *adv.*	*only.*
Vir, virī, *m.*	*man.*

187. *Translate into English.*

1. Caesar eō tempore in citeriōre Galliā erat. 2. Eōdem tempore exercitus noster in Galliā hiemābat. 3. Dīcunt imperātōrem in Galliā in hībernīs fuisse. 4. Germānī Aeduōs in servitūte tenēre nōn dēbent. 5. Ariovistus, rēx Germānōrum, eō diē exercitum castrīs [1] continuit. 6. Apertō marī [2] tempestātēs timēbāmus. 7. Summa erat apertō marī difficultās nāvigandī. [3] 8. Allobrogēs lēgātōs ad senātum mīsērunt rogātum auxilium. 9. Dumnorix māgnum numerum equitātūs habēbat.

---

[1] *Ablative of Place,* involving the idea of *Means.*

[2] See 185, 425, II., 2.

[3] *Nāvigandī,* Genitive of the Gerund, depending upon *difficultās.* Observe that the Genitive of the Gerund is here treated as any other Genitive would be treated in the same situation. See 31, Rule XVI.

10. Liscus dīcit Dumnorigem, Divitiacī frātrem, māgnum numerum equitātūs semper circum sē habēre. Is nōn sōlum domī,[1] sed etiam apud fīnitimās cīvitātēs largiter poterat.[2]

11. Caesar duās legiōnēs Agendicī[1] collocāverat. Ipse Bibracte hiemāre cōnstituit.   12. Cōnsul eō tempore Rōmae[1] erat.   13. Timor hostēs Alesiae occupāvit.   14. Avus hūjus Gallī, virī fortissimī, amīcus ab senātū nostrō appellātus erat.   15. Avus hūjus Gallī in cīvitāte suā rēgnum obtinuerat, amīcus ab senātū nostrō appellātus.   16. Dīcunt hāc ōrātiōne Dumnorigem dēsīgnātum esse.   17. Sēditiōsā atque improbā ōrātiōne multitūdinem dēterrētis nē frūmentum comportent.[3]

188. *Translate into Latin.*

1. They say that you have been in Italy. We were in winter quarters in Italy. 2. Ought wè not to place our army in winter quarters in Gaul? The army ought to be placed in winter quarters in the vicinity of (*around*) Geneva. The general has already decided to station three legions at Geneva.[4] 3. Ariovistus, the king of the Germans, was not at home,[4] but was laying waste the lands of the Gauls. 4. Messengers announced that the consul at that time was at Carthage.

5. You ought not to hold the deserters in servitude. We shall keep them in camp.[5] 6. How many Gauls did Ariovistus hold in servitude? They announced that Ariovistus always held a very large number of Gauls in servitude. 7. Was Caesar at that time in Italy, or in Gaul?[6] He was at Rome, and he had with him a large number of friends. 8. Was there not at Geneva a bridge across the Rhone?[7] Caesar says that at Geneva there was a bridge across the Rhone.

---

[1] See 185, 425, 426, II.

[2] *Largiter poterat*, literally, *was largely able*; render, *was very powerful*, or *had great influence*.   [3] See 119, 497, II.

[4] What *Case* will you use in rendering *at Geneva, at home?* See 185, 425; 426, 2.

[5] In camp; see 185, 425, 1.   [6] For Double Question, see 106, 353.

[7] *Across the Rhone*; Latin idiom, ɪɴ the Rhone.

LESSON LXIV.

SECOND CONJUGATION. — INDICATIVE PASSIVE. — RULE
IV. — REVIEW OF RULES I., II., AND III.

189. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

In the verb *Moneō*, learn the Indicative Mood of the
Passive voice. See page 154.

190. *Examples. — Vocative.*

1. Tuum est, *Servī*, rēgnum.	*The kingdom is yours,* SERVIUS.
2. Quid est, *Catilīna?*	*Why is it,* CATILINE ?

NOTE. — In these examples the names of the persons addressed,
Servī and *Catilīna*, are in the Vocative, in accordance with the Latin
usage expressed in the following

RULE IV. — Case of Address.

369. The name of the person or thing addressed is
put in the Vocative :

Perge, *Laelī, proceed,* LAELIUS. Cic. Quid est, *Catilīna ? Why is
it,* CATILINE? Cic. Ō *diī* immortālēs, *O immortal* GODS. Cic.

LESSON LXV.

SECOND CONJUGATION. — INDICATIVE PASSIVE. — RULE
IV. — REVIEW OF RULES I., II., AND III. — EX-
ERCISES.

191. *Vocabulary.*

Alter, era, erum, **42**, 151.	*other* (of two), *second.*
Anteā, *adv.*	*before.*
Ascendit,	*he ascends.*
Bellicōsus, a, um,	*warlike.*
Clāmor, ōris, *m.*	*shout.*
Cōnsultō, āre, āvī, ātum,	*to consult.*
Dēmum, *adv.*	*at length.*
Dētineō, ēre, tinuī, tentum,	*to detain.*
Ferus, a, um,	*fierce, savage.*

Impendeŏ, ēre,	*to overhang.*
Inter, *prep. w. acc.*	*among.*
Jubeŏ, ēre, jūssī, jūssum,	*to order.* [Gaul.
Jūra, ae, *m.*	*Jura,* a mountain range in eastern
Lūx, lūcĭs, *f.*	light; prīma lūx, *the beginning of*
	light, daybreak, early dawn.[1]
Mūnĭtĭŏ, ōnis, *f.*	*fortification.*
Nervĭī, ōrum, *m. pl.*	*the Nervii,* a tribe of northern Gaul.
Obsideŏ, ēre, sēdī, sēssum,	*to besiege.*
Salūs, ūtis, *f.*	*safety.*
Sapĭenter, *adv.*	*wisely.* [powerful German tribe.
Suēbī, ōrum, *m. pl.*	*the Suebi, Suevi,* or *Suabians,* a
Summus, a, um, *sup. of* superus,	*highest; highest part of, top of.*[1]
Terreŏ, ēre, uī, itum,	*to terrify.*

192. *Translate into English.*

1. Nōnne ab amīcīs monitī estis? Ā vōbīs, amīcī, monitī sumus. 2. Nunc, mīlĭtēs, sapĭenter monēmur. 3. Prīmā lūce summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenēbātur. 4. Nōnne hŏc oppidum ab hostibus tenētur? Ab hostibus tenētur. 5. Vīcus quī appellātur Octōdūrus altissimīs montibus[2] continētur. 6. Montēs quī impendēbant ā māximā multitūdine hostium tenēbantur. 7. Nervĭī māximē ferī inter Belgās habentur. 8. Helvētiī undique locī nātūrā continentur, ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō, alterā ex parte monte[2] Jūrā. 9. Omnēs hostium impetūs fortiter sustinēbantur.

10. Hostēs quī Alesiae obsidēbantur dē salūte cōnsultābant. 11. Iī quī mūnītiōnibus continentur clāmōre suōrum animōs cōnfirmābant. 12. Suēbōrum gēns est longē māxima et bellicōsissima Germānōrum omnium. 13. Rōmānae nāvēs tempestātibus dētinēbantur. 14. Caesar Labiēnum cum duābus legiōnibus montem ascendere jubet. 15. Caesar prīncipēs convocāvit, in hīs Liscum,[3] magistrātum quī Ver-

---

[1] Certain adjectives often designate a PARTICULAR PART of an object: *prīma nox,* 'the first part of the night;' *mediā aestāte,* 'in the middle of summer;' *summus mōns,* 'the top (highest part) of the mountain.' The adjectives thus used are *prīmus, medius, ūltimus, extrēmus, postrēmus, intimus, summus, īnfimus, īmus, suprēmus, reliquus, cētera,* etc.

[2] Ablative of *Means.*   [3] Object of *convocāvit.*

gobretus appellātur. 16. Tum dēmum, quod anteā tacueram, ēnūntiāvī.

193. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Many Gauls were held in slavery by Ariovistus, the king of the Germans. 2. On that day the Germans were kept in camp by their commander. 3. Brave soldiers, you have been kept in camp by your commander. 4. Judges, you have been regarded by Caesar as friends.[1] 5. Galba, the lieutenant, was ordered to winter in a village which is called Octodurus. 6. You will always be regarded by us as friends. 7. This mountain was held on that day by the Romans. 8. Was not Labienus, the lieutenant, commanded by Caesar to ascend this mountain? He was commanded to ascend this mountain, and to hold it.

9. The difficulty of navigation[2] on the open sea is great, and our vessels will be detained by the storms. 10. Was not Dumnorix, the brother of Divitiacus, warned by Caesar? He was warned by Caesar to avoid all suspicion in future. 11. We have been warned not to attack this town, on account of the width of the moat and the height of the wall. 12. We have been ordered to fortify our camp with a rampart. 13. The Suebi were regarded by the Romans as very warlike.

LESSON LXVI.

SECOND CONJUGATION. — PASSIVE VOICE IN FULL. — REVIEW OF RULES XXXVII., XXXVIII, AND XL.

194. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

In the verb *Moneō,* learn the Passive voice in full. See the following page.

---

[1] Remember the Latin idiom, **FOR** *friends.*
[2] Use the *Gerund.*

SECOND CONJUGATION: E VERBS.

208. PASSIVE VOICE.—Moneor, *I am advised.*

VERB STEM, *mon, moni ;* PRESENT STEM, *monē.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.
moneor,	monērī,	monitus sum.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.
I am advised.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
moneor	monēmur
monēris, *or* re	monēmini
monētur	monentur

IMPERFECT.
I was advised.

monēbar	monēbāmur
monēbāris, *or* re	monēbāmini
monēbātur	monēbantur

FUTURE.
I shall or *will be advised.*

monēbor	monēbimur
monēberis, *or* re	monēbimini
monēbitur	monēbuntur

PERFECT.
I have been advised, I was advised.

monitus sum[1]	monitī sumus
monitus es	monitī estis
monitus est	monitī sunt

PLUPERFECT.
I had been advised.

monitus eram[1]	monitī erāmus
monitus erās	monitī erātis
monitus erat	monitī erant

FUTURE PERFECT.
I shall or *will have been advised.*

monitus erō[1]	monitī erimus
monitus eris	monitī eritis
monitus erit	monitī erunt

---

[1] See 170, 206, foot-notes.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
monear	moneāmur
moneāris, *or* re	moneāmini
moneātur	moneamtur

IMPERFECT.

I should be advised, he would be advised.

monērer	monērēmur
monērēris, *or* re	monērēmini
monērētur	monērentur

PERFECT.

I may have been advised, or I have been advised.

monitus sim [1]	moniti sīmus
monitus sis	moniti sītis
monitus sit	moniti simt

PLUPERFECT.

I should have been advised, he would have been advised.[2]

monitus essem [1]	moniti essēmus
monitus essēs	moniti essētis
monitus esset	moniti essent

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. monēre, *be thou advised;* | monēmini, *be ye advised.*
Fut. monētor, *thou shalt be advised,*
monētor, *he shall be advised;* | monemtor, *they shall be advised.*

INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
Pres. monēri, *to be advised.*	
Perf. monitus esse,[1] *to have been advised.*	*Perf.* monitus, *advised.*
Fut. monitum iri, *to be about to be advised.*	*Ger.* monemdus, *to be advised, deserving to be advised.*

---

[1] See 177, 206, foot-notes.

[2] Or *I had been advised, you had been advised,* etc.

LESSON LXVII.

**SECOND CONJUGATION. — PASSIVE VOICE. — REVIEW OF
RULES XXXVII., XXXVIII., AND XL. — EXERCISES.**

195. *Vocabulary.*

Amor, ōris, *m.*	*love.*
Annuus, a, um,	*annual, annually, for a year.*
Auctōritās, ātis, *f.*	*authority, influence.*
Cōnsidius, iī, *m.*	*Considius,* an officer in Caesar's
Creō, āre, āvī, ātum,	*to create, appoint, elect.* [army.
Falsus, a, um,	*false.*
Imperītus, a, um,	*unskilful, ignorant.*
Mors, mortis, *f.*	*death.*
Nex, necis, *f.*	*death, putting to death.*
Nōnnūllī, ae, a, *pl.*	*some.*
Perterreō, ēre, uī, ītum,	*to terrify greatly, terrify, frighten.*
Plūs, *comp. adv.*, *pos.* multum,	*more.*
Potestās, ātis, *f.*	*power.*
Pūblius, iī, *m.*	*Publius,* a Roman praenōmen.
Renūntiō, āre, āvī, ātum,	*to report.*
Rūmor, ōris, *m.*	*rumor, report.*
Sēsē,	*reduplicated form of* sē. See
Temerārius, a, um,	*rash.* [102, 184, 4.
Valeō, ēre, uī, ītum,	*to avail, prevail.*

196. *Translate into English.*

1. Omnēs collēs ā nōbīs tenentur. 2. Omnia loca superiōra
ā nōbīs tenēbuntur. 3. Omnēs collēs āc loca superiōra ab
exercitū tenēbantur. 4. Nē falsīs rūmōribus terreāmur. 5.
Nē hīs rūmōribus terreantur. 6. Utinam omnēs hostēs hōc
rūmōre terreantur. 7. Dīcunt vōs hīs rūmōribus terrērī. 8.
Hominēs temerāriī atque imperītī saepe falsīs rūmōribus ter-
rentur. 9. Imperātor dīcit hominēs temerāriōs atque imperī-
tōs saepe falsīs rūmōribus terrērī. 10. Pūblius Cōnsidius
timōre perterritus renūntiāvit montem ab hostibus tenērī.
11. Sunt nōnnūllī quī multitūdinem dēterrent nē frūmentum
comportent.

SECOND CONJUGATION.   157

12. Nōnnūllī prīncipēs adventū nostrī exercitūs perterritī
erant.   Hī prīncipēs, adventū nostrī exercitūs perterritī,
lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittēbant. 13. Liscus in conventū
dixit sēsē ob eam causam diū tacuisse. 14. Nōn is sum quī
gravissimē mortis perīculō terrear.[1] 15. Mīlitēs mortis perī-
culō terrērī nōn dēbent.   16. Vergobretus, quī creātur
annuus, vītae necisque in suōs[2] habet potestātem.   17.
Auctōritās Dumnorigis apud plēbem plūs valēbat quam
ipsīus magistrātūs.[3]

197. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Have not your vessels been detained by storms? Mes-
sengers have announced to us that our vessels have been
detained by storms. 2. May we always be regarded by you
as friends. 3. They say that the Aedui were always re-
garded by Caesar as friends. 4. Many towns were besieged
by the Germans. 5. Messengers announce that many towns
have been besieged by the Germans. Let us ascertain which
towns have been besieged by them. 6. We are advised by
our friends, who have large experience in military affairs, to
remain (*keep ourselves*)[4] in camp. 7. The ambassadors were
so terrified that they remained silent for a long time.

8. You ought not to be terrified by these rumors. 9.
Would that we had not been terrified by false rumors. 10.
Were not the Gauls often terrified by false rumors? Caesar
said that the Gauls were often terrified by false rumors. ·11.
By what rumors, my brave soldiers, have you been terrified?
12. With (*among*) you, Romans, the love of country ought
to avail more than the fear of death. 13. Announce to the

---

[1] Subjunctive in a clause denoting Result. See 123, 500, I.; Sugges-
tion XXIV., 3.

[2] In *suōs*, literally *into* or *against his own*, render OVER or AMONG *his
subjects*, or *his countrymen*. Adjectives in the plural are often used sub-
stantively in Latin, as in English. *Suōs* is thus used.

[3] Governed by *auctōritās* understood.

[4] For Mood, see 119, Rule XLII.

general that this mountain is held by us. 14. Let us hold the mountain which we were ordered to occupy.

LESSON LXVIII.

FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS. — PASSIVE VOICE IN FULL. — REVIEW OF RULES XLI., XLII., AND XLIII.

198. *Vocabulary.*

Adequitō, āre, āvī, ātum,	*to ride toward, ride.*
Alius, a, ud, **42, 151,**	*other, another.*
Cōnservō, āre, āvī, ātum,	*to save, preserve, spare.*
Gubernātor, ōris, *m.*	*pilot.*
Impetrō, āre, āvī, ātum,	*to obtain one's request.*
Liger, is, *m.*	*the Liger*, now the *Loire*, a river in southwestern Gaul.
Lingonēs, um, *m. pl.*	*the Lingones*, a tribe of central Gaul.
Nauta, ae, *m.*	*sailor.*
Navis longa,	*a long ship, ship of war.*
Nēve, *conj.*	*nor, and not.*
Sed, *conj.*	*but.*
Triplex, icis,	*triple.*
Undique, *adv.*	*on every side.*

199. *Translate into English.*

1. Vīcus appellābātur Octōdūrus. 2. Dīcunt vīcum appellātum esse Octōdūrum. 3. Dīcēbant hunc vīcum altissimīs montibus undique continērī. 4. Nē ad bellum celeriter excitēmur. 5. Caesar dīcit omnēs ferē Gallōs novīs rēbus studēre et ad bellum celeriter excitārī. 6. Dīxērunt sē tibī rem ēnūntiāsse,[1] sed intellegere quantō cum perīculō eam rem ēnūntiāssent.[1] 7. Caesar ad Lingonēs litterās nūntiōsque mīsit nē Helvētiōs frūmentō nēve aliā rē juvārent. 8. Dīcunt eam rem per fugitīvōs hostibus nūntiātam esse. 9. Tum dēmum Caesar partem suārum copiārum quae castra

---

[1] Contracted from *ēnūntiāvisse* and *ēnūntiāvissent.*

hostium oppūgnāret[1] mīsit. 10. Triplicem aciem prō castrīs īnstrūxit.

11. Gallī lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditiōne mīsērunt, et impetrāvērunt ut cōnservārentur.[2] 12. Nē montēs quī vīcō Octōdūrō impendent ab hostibus teneantur. 13. Nāvēs longae in flūmine Ligere aedificentur. 14. Caesar nāvēs longās in flūmine Ligere aedificārī jubet. 15. Nautae gubernātōrēsque ex prōvinciā nostrā comparentur. 16. Caesar nautās gubernātōrēsque ex prōvinciā nostrā comparārī jubet. 17. Caesarī nūntiātum est[3] equitēs Ariovistī ad nostrōs adequitāre.

200. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The village in which Galba wintered was surrounded by very high mountains. Did he understand with how great peril he was wintering in that village? He understood that he was wintering there with great peril. 2. Horsemen rode toward us to announce the words of the king. 3. The Aedui were so terrified, that they sent messengers to Caesar to implore help. 4. The general sent a part of his forces to fortify the town. 5. Caesar sent a lieutenant to order ships of war to be built. 6. Ten ships of war have been built on the Rhine. 7. The deserters obtained their request, not to be regarded (*that they might not be regarded*) as enemies.

8. Those who were ordered to withstand the attack of the enemy were so terrified, that they implored help from Caesar. 9. May our authority avail more with you than that[4] of our enemies. 10. The messengers said that their towns had been besieged by the enemy. 11. Brave soldiers will not be terrified by the fear of death. 12. The general says that his

---

[1] For *Mood*, see 119, 497, I.; see also Suggestion XXIV., 3.

[2] *Ut cōnservārentur.* This is an *Object Clause*, depending upon *impetrāvērunt*, but it was developed out of a *Clause of Result*, and accordingly has the *Subjunctive*.

[3] The *Subject* of *nūntiātum est* is the clause *equitēs . . . adequitāre*. See Suggestion XXV., 1.

[4] Omit the pronoun in rendering into Latin.

soldiers are so brave that they are not terrified by the fear of death. 13. May that city always be held by our friends. 14. Would that these towns were held by our friends.

LESSON LXIX.

FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS IN FULL. — EXERCISE IN READING AT SIGHT.

201. *Read at Sight, examine carefully, and translate into English.*[1]

Caesar convocāvit prīncipēs, quōrum māgnam cōpiam in castrīs habēbat, in hīs Liscum, magistrātum Aeduōrum. Hīc magistrātus, quī Vergobretus appellātur, creātur annuus, et vītae necisque in suōs habet potestātem.

Caesar prīncipēs Aeduōrum graviter accusāvit. Tum dēmum Liscus, quod anteā tacuerat, ēnūntiāvit. Haec sunt verba: "Sunt nōnnūllī, quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem plūs valet quam ipsōrum magistrātuum. Hī sēditiōsā atque improbā ōrātiōne multitūdinem dēterrent nē frūmentum comportent. Ab iīsdem vestra cōnsilia hostibus ēnūntiantur." Posteā dixit intellegere sēsē quantō cum perīculō Caesarī rem ēnūntiāsset, et ob eam causam diū tacuisse.

Hāc ōrātiōne Dumnorix, Divitiacī frāter, dēsīgnātus est. Is māgnum numerum equitātūs semper circum sē habēbat, et nōn sōlum domī, sed etiam apud fīnitimās cīvitātēs, largiter poterat.

202. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Liscus said that with the populace the authority of these citizens availed more, than that of the magistrate himself, and that they deterred the multitude from bringing (*that they should not bring*) grain. He also said that they announced to the enemy nearly all the plans of the Romans.

---

[1] See Directions for Reading at Sight, 137.

2. Who was Dumnorix? He was an Aeduan chief, the brother of Divitiacus, who was called the friend of Caesar and the Roman people.

3. So great fear took possession of the Aedui, whose lands the Helvetii were devastating, that they sent ambassadors to Caesar to implore aid from him. 4. The general ought to lead his army through the lands (*fields*) of the Aedui into the territory of the Santones, who are not far from our province. 5. The general is hastening with forced marches into Italy; he will there enrol three legions, and lead out of winter quarters the five that are now wintering in the vicinity of Rome.

LESSON LXX.

THIRD CONJUGATION. — INDICATIVE ACTIVE. — REVIEW OF RULES V., VI., AND IX.

203. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

In the verb *Regō*, learn the Indicative Mood of the Active Voice. See page 164.

204. *Vocabulary.*

Auxilia, ōrum, *n. pl.*	*auxiliaries.*
Cōnscrībō, ere, scrīpsī, scrīptum,	*to enrol, enlist.* [*decide.*
Cōnstituō, ere, stituī, stitūtum,	*to station, place; to determine,*
Continuus, a, um,	*continuous, successive.*
Dēlīberō, āre, āvī, ātum,	*to deliberate.*
Dīcō, ere, dīxī, dictum,	*to say, speak.*
Ēdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductum,	*to lead out.*
Hiems, emis, *f.*	*winter.*
Īnstruō, ere, strūxī, strūctum,	*to draw up, arrange, array.*
Interim, *adv.*	*meanwhile, in the meantime.*
Item, *adv.*	*also, likewise.*
Jugum, ī, *n.*	*ridge, height.*
Maneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsum,	*to remain.*
Medius, a, um,	*middle; the middle of.*[1]

---

[1] See foot-note on *summus*, 191.

Mittō, ere, misi, missum,	*to send.*
Prōdūcō, ere, duxi, ductum,	*to lead forth.*
Prŏximē, *sup. adv.*	*nearest, most recently, last.*
Quattuor, *indeclinable,*	*four.*
Redūcō, ere, duxi, ductum,	*to lead back.*
Sextus, a, um,	*sixth.*
Subdūcō, ere, duxi, ductum,	*to withdraw, lead off.*
Sūmō, ere, sūmpsi, sūmptum,	*to take.*
Veterānus, a, um,	*veteran.*

205. *Translate into English.*

1. Caesar diem ad dēlīberandum[1] sūmpsit. 2. Nōnne diem ad dēlīberandum sūmētis? Diem ad dēlīberandum sūmpsimus. 3. Hostēs diem ad dēlīberandum sūmpserant. 4. Quīnque legiōnēs quae sustineant[2] hostium impetum mittēmus. 5. Caesar copiās suās in prŏximum collem subduxerat, equitātumque quī sustinēret[2] hostium impetum mīserat. Ipse interim in colle mediō[3] aciem īnstrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterānārum, sed in summō[3] jugō duās legiōnēs, quās in Galliā citeriōre prŏximē cōnscrīpserat, et omnia auxilia collocāvit. 6. Nōnne haec in conventū dixīstī? Ea quae in conventū dixī sunt vēra. 7. Quid Liscus dixerat? Liscus in conventū dixerat Dumnorigem, Dīvitiacī frātrem, novīs rēbus studēre.

8. Imperātor sōlis occāsū[4] suās cōpiās in castra redūcet. 9. Caesar ex eō diē diēs[5] continuōs quīnque prō castrīs suās cōpiās prōduxit et aciem īnstrūxit. 10. Ipse cōnstituerat in Galliā hiemāre et tōtam hiemem ad[6] exercitum manēre. 11. Caesar sex legiōnēs prō castrīs in aciē cōnstituit. Hostēs item suās cōpiās ex castrīs ēduxerant. 12. Nōnne dixīstī

---

[1] *Ad dēlīberandum,* 'for deliberation,' or 'to deliberate.' *Dēlīberandum* is a *Gerund* in the *Accusative* depending upon *ad.* In Gerunds the *Accusative* always depends upon a *preposition.*

[2] See Suggestion XXIV., 3.

[3] See foot-note on *summus,* **191.**

[4] *Ablative of Time.* See **93,** Rule XXXI.

[5] *Duration of Time.* See **98,** Rule IX.

[6] *Near, in the vicinity of.*

Aeduōs ā senātū populī Rōmānī amīcōs appellātōs esse?
Dixī eōs ā senātū frātrēs appellātōs esse.

206. *Translate into Latin.*

1. What did you say in the convention? I said that
nearly all the Gauls at that time desired a revolution. 2.
Shall you not send ambassadors to the neighboring states
to implore aid from them? We have already sent ambas-
sadors to these states, and have established peace and friend-
ship with them. 3. How many legions shall you enrol in
Italy? We shall enrol five legions in Italy, and three in
Gaul. 4. The general had placed his legions in line of
battle before the camp. 5. Have you taken time for[1] de-
liberation? We have taken time for deliberation, and have
decided to send ambassadors to the Belgae.

6. The enemy kept themselves in camp for five days,[2]
but on the sixth day they led their forces out of the camp,
and placed them in line of battle. 7. Caesar placed in
winter quarters the legions that he had enrolled in Italy.
8. Have you decided to pass the winter in Italy? We have
decided to remain in Gaul during the whole winter. 9. For
many days the Romans had formed the line of battle in
front of the camp. 10. Caesar says that he remained near
the army the whole winter.

LESSON LXXI.

THIRD CONJUGATION. — ACTIVE VOICE IN FULL.

207. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

In the verb *Regō*, learn the Active Voice in full. See the
following page.

---

[1] *For;* render by *ad.*
[2] For the Latin construction, see **98**, Rule IX.

THIRD CONJUGATION: CONSONANT VERBS.

209. ACTIVE VOICE.—Regŏ, *I rule.*

Verb Stem, *reg;* Present Stem, *rege.*[1]

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine
regŏ,	regere,	rēxī,[2]	rēctum.[2]

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

I rule.

Singular.	Plural.
regŏ	regimus
regis	regitis
regit	regunt

Imperfect.

I was ruling, or *I ruled.*

regēbam	regēbāmus
regēbās	regēbātis
regēbat	regēbant

Future.

I shall or *will rule.*

regam	regēmus
regēs	regētis
reget	regent

Perfect.

I have ruled, or *I ruled.*

rēxī	rēximus
rēxistī	rēxistis
rēxit	rēxērunt, *or* ēre

Pluperfect.

I had ruled.

rēxeram	rēxerāmus
rēxerās	rēxerātis
rēxerat	rēxerant

Future Perfect.

I shall or *will have ruled.*

rēxerŏ	rēxerimus
rēxeris	rēxeritis
rēxerit	rēxerint

---

[1] The characteristic is a variable vowel—ŏ, u, e, i: regŏ, regunt, regere, regis; Curtius calls it the *thematic vowel; see* Curtius, I., p. 199, but on ŏ, see also Meyer, 441.

[2] See 1, 30, 33.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

May I rule, let him rule.[1]

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
regam	regāmus
regās	regātis
regat	regant

IMPERFECT.

I should rule, he would rule.

regerem	regerēmus
regerēs	regerētis
regeret	regerent

PERFECT.

I may have ruled, or I have ruled.

rēxerĭm	rēxerĭmus
rēxerĭs	rēxerĭtis
rēxerit	rēxerint

PLUPERFECT.

I should have ruled, he would have ruled.

rēxissem	rēxissēmus
rēxissēs	rēxissētis
rēxisset	rēxissent

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. rege, *rule thou ;*	regite, *rule ye.*
Fut. regĭtŏ, *thou shalt rule,*	regĭtōte, *ye shall rule,*
regĭtŏ, *he shall rule ;*	reguntŏ, *they shall rule.*

INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
Pres. regere, *to rule.*	*Pres.* regēns, *ruling.*
Perf. rēxisse, *to have ruled.*	
Fut. rēctūrus esse, *to be about to rule.*	*Fut.* rēctūrus, *about to rule.*

GERUND.	SUPINE.
Gen. regendī, *of ruling,*	
Dat. regendŏ, *for ruling,*	
Acc. regendum, *ruling,*	*Acc.* rēctum, *to rule,*
Abl. regendŏ, *by ruling.*	*Abl.* rēctū, *to rule, be ruled.*

---

[1] But on the translation of the Subjunctive, see 111, 196.

208. *Vocabulary.*

Addūcō, ere, duxī, ductum,	to lead to, lead, bring. [Gaul.
Arvernī, ōrum, *m. pl.*	the Arverni, a tribe of southern
Cógnōscō, ere, nōvī, nitum,	to ascertain.
Conjungō, ere, junxī, junctum,	to join, unite.
Cōnsulō, ere, suluī, sultum,	to consult.
Contendō, ere, tendī, tentum,	to contend, strive ; to hasten.
Dēfendō, ere, fendī, fēnsum,	to defend.
Deinde, *adv.*	then, in the next place.
Genus, eris, *n.*	kind, class.
Inter sē,	among themselves ; with each other, with one another, to-
Nōndum, *adv.*	not yet. [gether.
Nunc, *adv.*	now.
Perīculōsus, a, um,	perilous, dangerous.
Portus, ūs, *m.*	port, harbor.
Potentātus, ūs, *m.*	power, dominion, control.
Prīmum, *sup. adv.*	first.
Tenuis, e,	thin ; feeble.
Tribūnus, ī, *m.*	tribune, one of the six principal officers of the legion.
Unquam, *adv.*	ever, at any time.

209. *Translate into English.*

1. Nunc dē hōc perīculōsō bellō dīcam.   2. Prīmum dē genere bellī, deinde dē māgnitūdine[1] dīcāmus.   3. Dē salūte cīvium dīcere dēbētis.   4. Patriam dēfendere dēbēmus.   5. Quae cīvitās unquam anteā tam tenuis fuit quae nōn portūs suōs et agrōs dēfenderet.[2]   6. Cōnsulite vōbīs, cōnservāte vōs, conjugēs, līberōs, fortūnāsque vestrās, populī Rōmānī nōmen salūtemque dēfendite.   7. Ob eās causās quīnque legiōnēs in Galliā cōnscrībāmus.

8. Caesar dīcit sē in Ītaliam māgnīs itineribus contendisse, duāsque ibī legiōnēs cōnscrīpsisse.   9. Aeduī et Arvernī dē potentātū inter sē multōs annōs contendēbant.   10. Imperātor tribūnōs mīlitum monuit ut paulātim sēsē legiōnēs conjungerent.   11. Mīlitēs castra dēfendant.   12.

---

[1] That is, *dē māgnitūdine bellī.*   [2] For Mood, see 123, 500, I.

Nōnne castra dēfendētis? Castra dēfendēmus. 13. Caesar Labiēnum lēgātum in Trēverōs cum equitātū mīsit. 14. Dīcunt imperātōrem suās cōpiās in prōximum collem subduxisse. 15. Postulāmus nē quem mīlitem ad colloquium addūcātis. 16. Utinam Ariovistus suās cōpiās in castra redūcat.

<div align="center">

210. *Translate into Latin.*

</div>

1. The general has decided to lead back his forces into camp. 2. Caesar says that the enemy led back their forces into camp at sunset. 3. Let us lead our forces out of the camp, and place them in line of battle. 4. Did you not say that the general placed his whole army in line of battle in front of the camp? We said that he led out six legions, and placed them in line of battle in front of the camp. 5. Would that the enemy would lead back their forces into camp. 6. Would that the general had led us back into camp.

7. Let us speak first of the Romans, then of the Gauls. 8. You have spoken of the valor of the soldiers; speak now of the safety of the citizens. 9. Let us defend the safety of our country. 10. Caesar said that these tribes were at that time contending with each other (*among themselves*). 11. We ought to consult, not for ourselves, but for our country. 12. The general says that he shall consult, not for himself, but for his country. 13. How many legions has the general enrolled in Gaul?

<div align="center">

LESSON LXXII.

</div>

<div align="center">

FIRST, SECOND, AND THIRD CONJUGATIONS. ➡ **ACTIVE VOICE. — REVIEW OF RULES XII. AND XIV.**

</div>

<div align="center">

211. *Vocabulary.*

</div>

Commeō, āre, āvī, ātum,	*to go back and forth, resort.*
Dēdūcō, ere, duxī, ductum,	*to lead from, conduct.*
Dūcō, ere, duxī, ductum,	*to lead.*
Effēminō, āre, āvī, ātum,	*to effeminate, enervate.*
Excūsō, āre, āvī, ātum,	*to excuse.*

Gerō, ere, gessī, gestum,	*to carry on, wage, do.*
Importō, āre, āvī, ātum,	*to bring in, import.*
Incolō, ere, coluī, cultum,	*to inhabit, dwell.*
Levitās, ātis, *f.*	*levity, fickleness, impulsiveness.*
Mātrimōnium, iī, *n.*	*marriage;* in mātrimōnium dū-cere, *to marry.*
Menapiī, ōrum, *m. pl.*	*the Menapii,* a tribe of northern
Mercātor, ōris, *m.*	*merchant, trader.* [Gaul.
Mātūrē, *adv.*	*promptly, early.*
Nocturnus, a, um,	*nocturnal, by night.*
Perfringō, ere, frēgī, frāctum,	*to break through.*
Pertineō, ēre, tinuī, tentum,	*to pertain, tend.*
Phalanx, phalangis, *f.*	*phalanx, line.*
Praepōnō, ere, posuī, positum,	*to place over* or *in command of.*
Regiō, ōnis, *f.*	*direction; region, district.*
Rīpa, ae, *f.*	*bank* of a river.
Sēquanī, ōrum, *m. pl.*	*the Sequani* or *Sequanians,* a tribe
Sub, *prep. w. acc. and abl.*	*under; up to.* [of eastern Gaul.
Succēdō, ere, cēssī, cēssum,	*to come under, come up to, ap-*
Uterque, utraque, utrumque,[1]	*each; both.* [proach.

212. *Translate into English.*

1. Gallī lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt quī sē excūsārent.
2. Mercātōrēs ad Belgās nōn saepe commeant. 3. Mercā-
tōrēs ea, quae ad effēminandōs animōs[2] pertinent, saepe im-
portant. 4. Menapiī eās regiōnēs incolēbant, et ad utramque
rīpam flūminis Rhēnī agrōs vīcōsque habēbant. 5. Caesar
mātūrius quam tempus annī postulābat in hīberna in Sē-
quanōs exercitum dēduxit; hībernīs[3] Labiēnum praeposuit.
6. Gallī levitāte animī novīs rēbus stūdēbant. 7. Belgae cum
Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, bellum gerunt.

8. Lēgātī dixērunt reliquōs omnēs Belgās in armīs esse.
9. Rēmī, quī prōximī Galliae sunt, lēgātōs ad Caesarem

---

[1] Declined like *uter.* See *42,* 151.

[2] *Ad effēminandōs animōs* = *ad effēminandum animōs,* which is a rare
construction. In the second form *animōs* depends upon the gerund *effēm-
inandum;* in the first form it depends upon *ad,* and *effēminandōs* agrees
with it; *43,* Rule XXXIV. Literally, *to the souls to be enervated;* render
to enervate the soul. [3] For construction, see *54, 384,* II.

misērunt, quī dīcerent,[1] reliquōs Belgās in armīs esse. 10. Dumnorix Helvētiīs erat amīcus, quod ex eā cīvitāte Orgetorigis fīliam in mātrimōnium duxerat. 11. Hostēs sub prīmam nostram aciem succēssērunt. 12. Hostium phalangem perfringāmus. 13. Galliae cīvitātēs nocturnōs conventūs habēbant.

213. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Who inhabit these regions? Deserters say that the Menapii inhabit these regions, and that they have many villages beyond the Rhine. 2. Were not these Gauls friendly to Caesar? They were not friendly to him; they feared the Romans and desired a revolution. 3. Will not the soldiers obey the lieutenant? He has ordered them to fortify the winter quarters. They will obey him, and they will fortify the winter quarters with a high rampart. 4. Let the citizens consult in regard to the war.

5. To whom was Dumnorix friendly? Caesar says that Dumnorix, the brother of Divitiacus, was friendly to the Helvetii. 6. For this reason[2] the chiefs remained silent many days. 7. The Aedui were always friends to the Romans. 8. The general sent a lieutenant to lead the army out of winter quarters. 9. We advise you not to speak of this war. 10. We ought to ascertain how many legions Caesar enrolled in Gaul. 11. Let us lead back the soldiers into the camp that we may defend it.

LESSON LXXIII.

THIRD CONJUGATION. — PASSIVE VOICE IN FULL. — REVIEW OF RULES XVI., XXIII., AND XXV.

214. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

In the verb *Regō*, learn the Passive voice in full. See the following page.

---

[1] For *Mood*, see 119, 497, I. [2] Latin idiom, *on account of these causes.*

THIRD CONJUGATION: CONSONANT VERBS.

210. PASSIVE VOICE.—Regor, *I am ruled.*

VERB STEM, *reg;* PRESENT STEM, *rege.*[1]

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.
regor,	**regī,**	**rĕctus**[1] **sum.**

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.
I am ruled.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
regor		**regimur**
regĕris, *or* **re**		**regiminī**
regĭtur		**reguntur**

IMPERFECT.
I was ruled.

regēbar		**regēbāmur**
regēbāris, *or* **re**		**regēbāminī**
regēbātur		**regēbantur**

FUTURE.
I shall or will be ruled.

regar		**regēmur**
regēris, *or* **re**		**regēminī**
regētur		**regentur**

PERFECT.
I have been ruled, or *I was ruled.*

rĕctus sum[2]		**rĕctī sumus**
rĕctus es		**rĕctī estis**
rĕctus est		**rĕctī sunt**

PLUPERFECT.
I had been ruled.

rĕctus eram[2]		**rĕctī erāmus**
rĕctus erās		**rĕctī erātis**
rĕctus erat		**rĕctī erant**

FUTURE PERFECT.
I shall or will have been ruled.

rĕctus erŏ[2]		**rĕctī erimus**
rĕctus eris		**rĕctī eritis**
rĕctus erit		**rĕctī erunt**

---

[1] See 207, 209, foot-notes.　　　[2] See 170, 206, foot-notes.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

May I be ruled, let him be ruled.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
regar	regāmur
regāris, *or* re	regāmini
regātur	regantur

IMPERFECT.

I should be ruled, he would be ruled.

regerer	regerēmur
regerēris, *or* re	regerēmini
regerētur	regerentur

PERFECT.

I may have been ruled, or I have been ruled.

rēctus sim [1]	rēctī sīmus
rēctus sīs	rēctī sītis
rēctus sit	rēctī sint

PLUPERFECT.

I should have been ruled, he would have been ruled.

rēctus essem [1]	rēctī essēmus
rēctus essēs	rēctī essētis
rēctus esset	rēctī essent

IMPERATIVE.

Pres.	regere, *be thou ruled;*	regimini, *be ye ruled.*
Fut.	regitor, *thou shalt be ruled,*	
	regitor, *he shall be ruled;*	reguntor, *they shall be ruled.*

INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
Pres. regī, *to be ruled.*	
Perf. rēctus esse,[1] *to have been ruled.*	*Perf.* rēctus, *ruled.*
Fut. rēctum īrī, *to be about to be ruled.*	*Ger.* regendus, *to be ruled, deserving to be ruled.*

---

[1] See 170, 206, foot-notes.

LESSON LXXIV.

THIRD CONJUGATION. — PASSIVE VOICE IN FULL. — REVIEW OF RULES XVI., XXIII., AND XXV. — EX- ERCISES.

215. *Vocabulary.*

Aedificium, ĭi, *n.*	*building, house.*
Aquilifer, erī, *m.*	*standard-bearer.*
Cārus, a, um,	*dear.*
Centum, *indeclinable*,	*hundred.*
Claudō, ere, clausī, clausum,	*to shut, close.*
Germānia, ae, *f.*	*Germany.*
Germānus, a, um,	*German.*
Incendō, ere, cendī, cēnsum,	*to set on fire, fire, burn.*
Īnsula, ae, *f.*	*island.*
Irrumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptum,	*to break in, rush in.*
Nūnquam, *adv.*	*never.*
Occīdō, ere, cīdī, cīsum,	*to kill, slay.*
Pāgus, ī, *m.*	*division, canton.*
Porta, ae, *f.*	*gate.*
Premō, ere, pressī, pressum,	*to press, press hard, distress.*
Quoque, *adv.*	*also.*
Remaneŏ, ēre, mānsī, mānsum,	*to remain.*
Repellō, ere, reppulī, repulsum,	*to repel, repulse.* [many.
Ubiī, ōrum, *m. pl.*	*the Ubii,* a tribe of western Ger-
Usīpetēs, um, *m. pl.*	*the Usipetes,* a tribe of north-western Germany.
Vercingetorix, ĭgis, *m.*	*Vercingetorix,* a Gallic chieftain.

216. *Translate into English.*

1. Aquilifer ipse prŏ castrīs fortissimē pūgnāns[1] occīditur. 2. Multī mīlitēs fortissimē pūgnantēs occīsī sunt. 3. Nōnne omnēs māgnā multitūdine hostium premēmur? 4. Utinam hostēs omnēs nostrā virtūte repellantur. 5. Num ab hosti-bus eō tempore repulsī estis? Nūnquam ab hostibus repulsī sumus. 6. Quid apud Alesiam geritur? Gallī perterritī in oppidum irrumpunt; Vercingetorix imperātor jubet portās

---

[1] *While fighting.* See Suggestion XX., 3.

claudī, nē castra nūdentur. 7. Omnia vīcī Octōdūrī aedificia incēnsa sunt. 8. Nōnne multa oppida ab Helvētiīs incēnsa sunt? Post Orgetorigis mortem Helvētiī oppida sua omnia incendērunt.

9. Māgna Germāniae pars ā bellicōsissimīs nātiōnibus eō tempore incolēbātur. 10. Multae īnsulae ā ferīs barbarīsque nātiōnibus incoluntur. 11. Caesar obsidēs ad sē addūcī jubet. 12. Usīpetēs Germānī ab Suēbīs multōs annōs premē-bantur. Ubiī quoque graviter ab Suēbīs pressī erant. 13. Suēbī centum pāgōs habēre dīcuntur. 14. Omnium[1] quī Galliam incolunt fortissimī sunt Belgae. 15. Suēbī, quī bellicōsissimī Germānōrum omnium esse dīcuntur, ūnō in locō nōn longius annō[2] remanent. 16. Caesar mīlitum vītam suā salūte[3] cāriōrem habēbat.

217. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Were not the Belgae braver than the other Gauls?[3] They are said to have been the bravest of all the Gauls. Did they not often wage war with the Germans who dwelt beyond the Rhine? They are said to have waged war continually with the neighboring states. 2. What is dearer than life? To brave soldiers liberty and country are dearer than life. Ought we not to hold (*regard*) liberty and coun-try dearer than life itself? 3. This part of Gaul has always been inhabited by warlike nations. 4. Which part of Gaul was inhabited by the brave Belgae? 5. One part of Gaul is said to have been inhabited by the Celts.

6. The bravest and most warlike of the Gauls were con-quered by the Romans. 7. By the valor of our soldiers the enemy have been repulsed. 8. The bravest of the soldiers were slain. 9. Let us not remain in this town longer than one day. 10. Did you not say that these islands were in-habited by fierce nations? These islands are said to have

---

[1] *Partitive Genitive.* See 31, 397, 3.   [2] For Case, see 88, Rule XXIII.
[3] Render first with *quam*, and secondly without it.

been inhabited by barbarous nations. 11. Were not many towns burned by the enemy? Many towns are said to have been burned by them. 12. The general has ordered the army to be led back into camp, and the gates to be closed.

LESSON LXXV.

FIRST, SECOND, AND THIRD CONJUGATIONS. — PASSIVE VOICE. — REVIEW OF RULES XXX., XXXI., AND XXXIII.

218. *Vocabulary.*

Aquitānī, ōrum, *m. pl.*	*the Aquitani* or *Aquitanians*, the inhabitants of the southwestern division of Gaul.
Cabillōnum, ī, *n.*	*Cabillonum*, a town of Eastern Gaul.
Certus, a, um,	*certain, fixed, appointed.*
Compleō, ēre, ēvī, ētum,	*to fill, cover.*
Cōnfestim, *adv.*	*hastily, speedily.*
Cotta, ae, *m.*	*Cotta*, a lieutenant under Caesar.
Dīvidō, ere, vīsī, vīsum,	*to divide.*
Funda, ae, *f.*	*sling.*
Indīcō, ere, dīxī, dictum,	*to appoint.*
Inopia, ae, *f.*	*lack, want, need.*
Mandō, āre, āvī, ātum,	*to commission, order; to entrust, consign, commit, betake.*
Matiscō, ōnis, *m.*	*Matisco*, a town in southeastern Gaul.
Novus, a, um,	*new.*
Sulpicius, iī, *m.*	*Sulpicius*, a lieutenant under Caesar.
Supplicātiō, ōnis, *f.*	*thanksgiving.*
Tigurīnus, ī, *m.*	*Tigurinus*, one of the four cantons of
Vesper, erī, *m.*	*evening.* [the Helvetii.
Vīgintī, *indeclinable*,	*twenty.*
Vulnerō, āre, āvī, ātum,	*to wound.*

219. *Translate into English.*

1. Omnis cīvitās Helvētiōrum in quattuor pāgōs dīvīsa est. Hōrum ūnus appellātur Tigurīnus. 2. Gallia est dīvīsa

in partēs trēs, quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquītānī, tertiam Gallī.   3. Imperātor hōrā septimā vīcum hominibus[1] complērī jūssit.   4. Cotta lēgātus fortissimē pūgnāns[2] fundā vulnerātus est.   5. Rōmae diērum vīgintī[3] supplicātiō indīcitur.   6. Caesar Cicerōnem et Sulpicium Cabillōnī et Matiscōne in Aeduīs collocāvit.

7. Hostēs ad vesperum fortiter pūgnāvērunt ; tum dēmum fugae sēsē mandāvērunt.   8. Lītterae ad Caesarem cōnfestim ab Cicerōne mittuntur.   9. Ariovistus dīxit eās omnēs cōpiās ā sē ūnō proeliō superātās esse.   10. Multī omnium rērum inopiā adductī auxilium ā Caesare implōrābant.   Itaque obsidēs imperāvit, eōsque ad certam[4] diem addūcī jūssit. 11. Multa ab Caesare in colloquiō dicta sunt.   12. Duae legiōnēs, quae in Galliā prōximē cōnscrīptae erant, fugae sēsē mandābant.

220. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The lands of the Gauls were often seized by the Germans.   2. Many Gauls, distressed with want at home, implored aid from the neighboring towns.   3. At that time Caesar was enrolling new legions in Italy.   4. Many legions had already been enrolled in Gaul and Italy.   5. At Rome[5] Caesar is said to have been advised to hasten into Gaul. On the same day he was advised by Labienus to enlist a new legion.   6. A part of a legion had been placed in winter quarters at Octodurus.   7. At that time he is said to have ordered all the legions to be led out of winter quarters.

8. On that day the camp of the Romans was assaulted by the Gauls.   9. These brave soldiers were wounded while fighting[6] for their country. 10. Let us order them to remain

---

1 For *Case*, see **78**, Rule **XXV.**

2 See Suggestion **XX.**, 3.

3 Literally, *of twenty days;* render, *for twenty days.* The *Accusative of Duration of Time* could have been used.

4 See foot-note 1, page 234.   5 See **185, 425, II.**

6 In rendering into Latin, omit *while.* See Suggestion **XX.**, 3.

in the province during the winter.[1] 11. Into how many parts was Gaul divided? Caesar says that Gaul was divided into three parts. 12. Gaul is said to have been divided into three parts. 13. Into how many parts did you say that our country is divided? I said that it is divided into many parts. 14. He is said to have led his army back into camp about midday.

LESSON LXXVI.

FIRST, SECOND, AND THIRD CONJUGATIONS. — EXERCISE IN READING AT SIGHT.

221. *Read at Sight, examine carefully, and translate into English.*[2]

Caesar cōpiās suās in prōximum collem subdūxit, equitā-tumque quī sustinēret[3] hostium impetum mīsit. Ipse interim in colle mediō[4] triplicem aciem īnstrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterānārum, sed in summō jugō duās legiōnēs, quās in Galliā citeriōre prōximē cōnscrīpserat, et omnia auxilia collocārī, āc tōtum montem hominibus complērī jūssit. Helvētiī sub prīmam nostram aciem successērunt, sed Rōmānī facile hostium phalangem perfrēgērunt. Hostēs ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum fortiter pūgnāvērunt. Diūtius nostrōrum impetūs sustinēre nōn poterant; multī vulnerātī erant; itaque timōre perterritī fugae sēsē mandāvērunt, atque in fīnēs Lingonum contendērunt. Caesar ad Lingonēs lītterās nūntiōsque mīsit, nē eōs frūmentō nēve aliā rē juvārent. Tum dēmum Hel-vētiī, omnium rērum inopiā adductī, lēgātōs dē dēditiōne ad eum mīsērunt.

---

[1] *During the winter.* Use the Accusative of Duration of Time. See 98, 379.

[2] See Directions for Reading at Sight, 137.

[3] See Suggestion XXIV., 3.

[4] See foot-note on *summus,* 141.

222. *Translate into Latin.*

1. About midday the general led out all his forces, and placed them in line of battle before the camp. The enemy in sight of their commander fought bravely for many hours, but at length, repulsed by the valor of our soldiers, and overcome (*terrified*) by fear, they betook themselves to flight. The general was wounded, and many soldiers were slain. 2. So great fear took possession of the Gauls, that they decided to fortify their cities, to bring grain into them from their lands, and to build a large number of ships.

3. The Gauls had filled this town with brave soldiers, and Caesar had been advised not to attack it on account of the valor of the men, the width of the moat, and the height of the wall. 4. At that time so great fear took possession of all the Aedui, whose lands the Helvetii were devastating, that they fortified their cities, and sent ambassadors to Caesar to ask aid.

LESSON LXXVII.

FOURTH CONJUGATION. — INDICATIVE ACTIVE. — REVIEW OF RULES XXXIV., XXXV. AND XXXVI.

223. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

In the verb *Audiō* learn the Indicative Mood of the Active Voice. See page 180.

224. *Vocabulary.*

Aduātucī, ōrum, *m. pl.*	*the Aduatuci,* a tribe of northern
Ante, *adv.*	*before.* [Gaul.
Audiō, īre, īvī *or* iī, ītum,	*to hear, hear of.*
Clēmentia, ae, *f.*	*clemency, forbearance, mercy.*
Cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctum,	*to drive together, bring together, collect; to force, compel.*

Convĕniō, īre, vēnī, ventum,	*to come together, assemble, meet,*
Cotīdiānus, a, um,	*daily.* [*come.*
Duplex, ĭcis,	*double.*
Helvētius, a, um,	*Helvetian.*
Latus, ĕris, *n.*	*side.*
Mūniō, īre, īvī *or* iī, ītum,	*to fortify.*
Neque, *conj.*	*neither, nor;* neque . . . neque,
Pĕs, pedis, *m.*	*foot.* [*neither . . . nor.*
Scrībō, ere, scrīpsī, scrīptum,	*to write.*
Venĭō, īre, vēnī, ventum,	*to come.*
Vĭdeō, ēre, vīdī, vīsum,	*to see.*

225. *Translate into English.*

1. Nōnne vōcēs mīlitum audītis? Vōcēs omnium mīlitum audīmus. 2. Tum vērō nostrī clāmōrem ab eā parte audīvērunt. 3. Nōnne castra mūniētis? Castra vallō mūniēmus. 4. Caesar castra in altitūdinem pedum[1] duodecim vallō mūnīverat. 5. Legiōnēs sex, quae prīmae vēnerant, castra mūniēbant. 6. Aduātucī, dē quibus suprā scrīpsimus, ūnum oppidum duplicī altissimō mūrō mūnierant.[2] 7. Eō tempore castra vallō fossāque mūniēbāmus. 8. Ob eās rēs Galba ūnam partem vīcī, quī appellātur Octōdūrus, vallō fossāque cōnfestim mūnīvit.

9. Flūmen latus ūnum castrōrum mūniēbat. 10. Venetī oppida mūniēbant, frūmenta ex agrīs in oppida comportābant, nāvēs in Venetiam cōgēbant. 11. Rhēnus lātissimus atque altissimus agrum Helvētium ā Germānīs dīvidit. 12. Aduātucī Caesaris clēmentiam ab aliīs audiēbant. 13. Tanta opera neque vīderant ante[3] Gallī neque audierant.[2] 14. Eādem dē causā Helvētiī Celtārum omnium fortissimī sunt, quod ferē cotīdiānīs proeliīs cum Germānīs contendunt. 15. Totīus ferē Galliae lēgātī, prīncipēs cīvitātum, ad Caesarem convēnērunt.

---

[1] Construe with *vallō.*

[2] *Mūnierant,* contracted from *mūnīverant; audierant,* from *audīverant.*

[3] Observe that *ante* is sometimes an adverb, and sometimes a preposition.

226. *Translate into Latin.*

1. What did you hear at Rome? We heard that nearly all the Belgae had conspired against the Roman people. From whom did you hear this report? We heard it from many citizens and from the consuls themselves. 2. Judges, you have heard the words of many witnesses, and all these things which you have heard are true. 3. Have the enemy heard what we are doing? I hear that all our plans have been announced to them by deserters. 4. Have you heard what we have been doing at this time at Rome? We have heard of[1] the many good things which you have done in that city.

5. Have you not fortified all these towns with high walls? We fortify our towns, not by walls and ramparts, but by the valor of our citizens. 6. I have never seen the cities of which[2] you write, but I have heard of them from others. 7. The legions that had been enrolled in Gaul were at that time fortifying the camp. 8. Have you not often heard that the Belgae incessantly wage war with the Germans? I have often heard that[3] from you. 9. You have all heard that many states sent ambassadors to Caesar at that time to ask aid.

LESSON LXXVIII.

FOURTH CONJUGATION. — ACTIVE VOICE IN FULL. — REVIEW OF RULES LV., LVI., AND LXI.

227. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

In the verb *Audiō*, learn the Active Voice in full. See the following page.

---

[1] Omit *of* in rendering into Latin. See 225, sentence 13.

[2] *Of which* = *concerning which.*

[3] When the antecedent is a *clause*, the pronoun must be *neuter.*

FOURTH CONJUGATION : I VERBS.

211. ACTIVE VOICE.—Audiŏ, *I hear.*

VERB STEM AND PRESENT STEM, *audĭ.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	SUPINE.
audiŏ,	audīre,	audīvī,	audītum.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I hear.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
audiŏ	audīmus
audīs	audītis
audit	audiunt

IMPERFECT.

I was hearing, or *I heard.*

audiēbam	audiēbāmus
audiēbās	audiēbātis
audiēbat	audiēbant

FUTURE.

I shall or *will hear.*

audiam	audiēmus
audiēs	audiētis
audiet	audient

PERFECT.

I have heard, or *I heard.*

audīvī	audīvimus
audīvistī	audīvistis
audīvit	audīvērunt, *or* ēre

PLUPERFECT.

I had heard.

audīveram	audīverāmus
audīverās	audīverātis
audīverat	audīverant

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or *will have heard.*

audīverŏ	audīverimus
audīveris	audīveritis
audīverit	audīverint

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

May I hear, let him hear.[1]

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
audiam	audiāmus
audiās	audiātis
audiat	audiant

IMPERFECT.

I should hear, he would hear.

audīrem	audīrēmus
audīrēs	audīrētis
audīret	audīrent

PERFECT.

I may have heard, or I have heard.

audīverim	audīverīmus
audīverīs	audīverītis
audīverit	audīverint

PLUPERFECT.

I should have heard, he would have heard.

audīvissem	audīvissēmus
audīvissēs	audīvissētis
audīvisset	audīvissent

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. audī, *hear thou;*	audīte, *hear ye.*
Fut. audītō, *thou shalt hear,*	audītōte, *ye shall hear,*
audītō, *he shall hear;*	audiuntō, *they shall hear.*

INFINITIVE.

Pres. audīre, *to hear.*
Perf. audīvisse, *to have heard.*
Fut. audītūrus esse, *to be about to hear.*

PARTICIPLE.

Pres. audiēns, *hearing.*
Fut. audītūrus, *about to hear.*

GERUND.

Gen. audiendī,	*of hearing,*
Dat. audiendō,	*for hearing,*
Acc. audiendum,	*hearing,*
Abl. audiendō,	*by hearing.*

SUPINE.

Acc. audītum, *to hear,*
Abl. audītū, *to hear, be heard.*

---

[1] But on the translation of the Subjunctive, see 111, 196, II.

228. *Vocabulary.*

Alŏ, ere, aluī, alitum *and* altum,	*to nourish, support, sustain.*
Intellegŏ, ere, lēxī, lēctum,	*to understand, know.*
Prōnūntiŏ, āre, āvī, ātum,	*to proclaim, declare.*
Proptereā, *adv.*	*for this reason;* proptereā quod, *for the reason that, because.*
Quaerŏ, ere, quaesīvī *or* iī, ītum,	*to seek, inquire, ask.*
Quisque, quaeque, quidque *and* quodque,	*every, every one, each, each one.*
Quod, *conj.*	*that; because.*
Sabīnus, ī, *m.*	*Sabīnus,* a lieutenant under [Caesar.
Sciŏ, īre, īvī *or* iī, ītum,	*to know.*
Secundus, a, um,	*second.* [devote oneself to.
Serviŏ, īre, īvī *or* iī, ītum,	*to serve, subserve; to promote,*
Sincērē, *adv.*	*truthfully.*
Sūmptus, ūs, *m.*	*expense.*
Titūrius, iī, *m.*	*Titūrius,* a Roman name.
Ūllus, a, um, **42, 151,**	*any.*
Ūtilitās, ātis, *f.*	*usefulness; interest, advantage.*
Vēstiŏ, īre, īvī *or* iī, ītum,	*to clothe.*
Viātor, ōris, *m.*	*traveller.*

229. *Translate into English.*

1. Hŏc oppidum duplicī mūrō mūniāmus. 2. Hostēs suam urbem altissimō mūrō mūnīre parābant. 3. Imperātor nōs castra vallō mūnīre jubet. 4. Caesar Quīntum Titūrium Sabīnum lēgātum castra in altitūdinem pedum duodecim vallō mūnīre jūssit. 5. Utinam Caesar castra vallō fōssāque mūnīvisset.[1] 6. Audiāmus Rōmānōs mīlitēs. 7. Haec ut intellegātis ā mē sincērē prōnūntiārī, audīte Rōmānōs mīlitēs. 8. Caesar prīmam et secundam aciem in armīs esse, tertiam castra mūnīre jūssit.

9. Siciliam nūtrīcem plēbis Rōmānae nōminō, proptereā quod sine ūllō sūmptū nostrō[2] māximōs exercitūs nostrōs vēstīvit, aluit, armāvit. 10. Cōnsulēs ūtilitātī salūtīque serviunt. 11. Salūtī cīvium omnium servīre dēbētis. 12. Dīcit

---

[1] For the force of the *Tense,* see 114, 483, 2.

[2] *Sūmptū nostrō,* literally, *our expense;* render, *expense* TO US.

sē hŏc ab aliīs audīvisse.   13. Dīcunt sex legiōnēs castra
mūnītūrās esse.   14. Studium audiendī; mūniendō; mīles
vōcem audiēns; nostrī clāmōrem audientēs; mīlitēs castra
munītūrī.   15. Gallī ab viātōribus quaerunt quid dē quāque
rē audierint.

230. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Which legion was at that time fortifying the camp?
The lieutenant said that the sixth legion was fortifying the
camp.   2. The general says that he shall fortify the winter
quarters with a high rampart.   3. We all know what you
heard at Rome.   4. Let us now hear what you are doing
and what you are seeing.   5. Lieutenants, fortify this city
with a double wall; let not the enemy take it by storm.

6. Judges, hear now the words of these witnesses.   7.
Would that you had all heard the words of these witnesses.
8. Hearing the shouts of the soldiers, the general ordered
the lieutenants to lead out the whole army, and to place it
in line of battle.   9. Have you heard which legions have
been sent to sustain[1] the attack of the enemy? We have
heard that five legions have been sent to sustain the attack
of the enemy, and that two remain in camp.

LESSON LXXIX.

THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS. — ACTIVE VOICE. — RULE
XXIX. — REVIEW OF RULES LVII. AND LVIII.

231. *Examples.* — *Ablative of Specification.*

1. *Nōmine* fuit rēx.	*He was king* IN NAME.
2. Claudus alterō *pede.*	*Lame* IN *one* FOOT.

NOTE. — The Latin usage illustrated in the Ablatives *nōmine* and
pede is expressed in the following

---

[1] *To sustain;* render by a *Relative Clause* denoting *Purpose.*

RULE XXIX.—Specification.

424. A noun, adjective, or verb may take an Ablative to define its application:

Nōmine, nōn *potestāte* fuit rēx, *He was king* IN NAME, *not* IN POWER. Nep. Claudus *alterō pede, lame* IN ONE FOOT. Nep. Reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, *they surpass the other Gauls in courage.* Caes.

232. *Vocabulary.*

Accurrō, ere, cucurrī *or* currī, cursum,	*to run to, hasten to, run.* · [*much.*
Adamō, āre, āvī, ātum,	*to be greatly pleased with, like very*
Administrō, āre, āvī, ātum,	*to administer, manage, direct.*
Angustus, a, um,	*narrow, limited.* [Gaul.
Bellovacī, ōrum, *m. pl.*	*the Bellovaci,* a tribe of northwestern
Cultus, ūs, *m.*	*culture, refinement, civilization.*
Dēfēnsor, ōris, *m.*	*defender.*
Fīniō, īre, īvī *or* iī, ītum,	*to end; to bound, limit.*
Fluō, ere, flūxī, flūxum,	*to flow.*
Imperium, iī, *n.*	*empire, government.*
Īnfluō, ere, flūxī, flūxum,	*to flow into, empty, flow.*
Īnstituō, ere, uī, ūtum,	*to begin, proceed.*
Lacus, ūs, *m.*	*lake.* |*Lake of Geneva.*
Lemannus, ī, *m.*	*Lemannus, Leman;* lacus Lemannus,
Minus, *comp. adv.*	*less;* minimē, *sup.,* least, *very little, not at all, by no means.*
Noviodūnum, ī, *n.*	*Noviodunum,* a town in northwestern
Praecēdō, ere, cēssī, cēssum,	*to surpass.* [Gaul.
Superior, us, *comp. of* superus,	*superior.*
Vacuus, a, um,	*vacant, empty, deserted, abandoned.*

233. *Translate into English.*

1. Eō tempore Rhēnus populī Rōmānī imperium ūnā ex parte fīniēbat. 2. Minimē ad Belgās mercātōrēs saepe commeant. 3. Helvētiī angustōs fīnēs habent, et ob eam rem minus facile cum fīnitimīs bellum gerere possunt. 4. Rhodanus inter fīnēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum fluit. 5. Lacus Lemannus in flūmen Rhodanum īnfluit. 6. Ducēs hostium castra mūnīre īnstituunt. 7. Caesar in fīnēs Suessiōnum exercitum duxit, et māgnīs itineribus ad oppidum Noviodū-

num contendit; id vacuum ab dēfēnsōribus esse audierat.
8. Helvētiī reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt.

9. Imperātor hostēs equitātū superiōrēs esse intellegēbat.
10. Germānī, hominēs ferī āc barbarī, agrōs et cultum et
cōpiās Gallōrum adamābant. 11. Cōnsīdius ad Caesarem
accurrit, et dīcit montem ab hostibus tenērī. 12. Bellovacī
sē cum Rōmānīs bellum gestūrōs dixērunt. 13. Vercinge-
torix bellum administrāre parābat.

234. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Caesar says that the warlike Germans were greatly
pleased with (*liked very much*) the refinement of the Gauls.
2. We all know that the river Rhone separated the territory
of the Helvetii from the Roman province. 3. The Romans
are said to have surpassed the Gauls in valor. 4. I have
often heard that the Gauls at that time surpassed the Ger-
mans in refinement. 5. I have heard from deserters that a
brave lieutenant was slain in that battle.

6. They say that the enemy have fortified their towns, and
that they will fight bravely for their country. 7. We have
heard that you will remain in Italy the whole winter. 8.
Have you not heard that many Gauls were held in servi-
tude by Ariovistus. We have often heard that from the
Gauls themselves. 9. The Aedui ought not to be held in
servitude by barbarians. 10. At Geneva many friends were
awaiting our arrival from Italy.

LESSON LXXX.

FOURTH CONJUGATION. — PASSIVE VOICE IN FULL.

235. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

In the verb *Audiō*, learn the Passive Voice in full. See
the following page.

FOURTH CONJUGATION: I VERBS.

212. PASSIVE VOICE.—Audior, *I am heard.*

VERB STEM AND PRESENT STEM, *audī.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.
audior,	audīrī,	audītus sum.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I am heard.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
audior	audīmur
audīris, *or* re	audīminī
audītur	audiuntur

IMPERFECT.

I was heard.

audiēbar	audiēbāmur
audiēbāris, *or* re	audiēbāminī
audiēbātur	audiēbantur

FUTURE.

I shall or *will be heard.*

audiar	audiēmur
audiēris, *or* re	audiēminī
audiētur	audientur

PERFECT.

I have been heard, or *I was heard.*

audītus sum [1]	audītī sumus
audītus es	audītī estis
audītus est	audītī sunt

PLUPERFECT.

I had been heard.

audītus eram [1]	audītī erāmus
audītus erās	audītī erātis
audītus erat	audītī erant

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or *will have been heard.*

audītus erŏ [1]	audītī erimus
audītus eris	audītī eritis
audītus erit	audītī erunt

[1] See 170, 206, foot-notes.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

May I be heard, let him be heard.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
audiar	audiāmur
audiāris, *or* re	audiāminī
audiātur	audiantur

IMPERFECT.

I should be heard, he would be heard.

audīrer	audīrēmur
audīrēris, *or* re	audīrēminī
audīrētur	audīrentur

PERFECT.

I may have been heard, or I have been heard.

audītus sim[1]	audītī sīmus
audītus sīs	audītī sītis
audītus sit	audītī sint

PLUPERFECT.

I should have been heard, he would have been heard.

audītus essem[1]	audītī essēmus
audītus essēs	audītī essētis
audītus esset	audītī essent

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. audīre, *be thou heard;* | audīminī, *be ye heard.*

Fut. audītor, *thou shalt be heard,*
audītor, *he shall be heard;* | audiuntor, *they shall be heard.*

INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
Pres. audīrī, *to be heard.*	
Perf. audītus esse,[1] *to have been heard.*	*Perf.* audītus, *heard.*
Fut. audītum īrī, *to be about to be heard.*	*Ger.* audiendus, *to be heard, deserving to be heard.*

[1] See 170, 206, foot-notes.

LESSON LXXXI.

FOURTH CONJUGATION. — PASSIVE VOICE IN FULL. — RULE XXVIII. — REVIEW OF RULE XXII. — EXERCISES.

236. *Examples. — Ablative of Difference.*

1. Ūnō diē longior mēnsis.   *A month one* DAY *longer (longer* BY *one* DAY).

2. Biduō mē antecēssit.   *He preceded me* BY TWO DAYS.

NOTE. — The Latin usage illustrated in the Ablatives *diē* and *biduō* is expressed in the following

RULE XXVIII. — Ablative of Difference.

423. The MEASURE OF DIFFERENCE is denoted by the Ablative:

Ūnō diē longiōrem mēnsem faciunt, *they make the month* ONE DAY *longer* (longer BY ONE DAY). Cic. Biduō mē antecēssit, *he preceded me* BY TWO DAYS. Cic. Sōl multis partibus mājor est quam terra, *the sun is very much* (literally BY MANY PARTS) *larger than the earth.* Cic.

237. *Vocabulary.*

Britannī, ōrum, *m. pl.*	*the Britons.*
Cantium, iī, *n.*	*Kent.*
Cevenna, ae, *f.*	*Cevenna, a mountain range in southern Gaul, now the Cé-* [*vennes.*
Ēgregiē, *adv.*	*excellently.*
Existimō, āre, āvī, ātum,	*to think.*
Hūmānus, a, um,	*civilized.*
Impediō, īre, īvī *or* iī, ītum,	*to impede, hinder, embarrass.*
Impedītus, a, um,	*entangled.*
Mēnsis, is, *m.*	*month.*
Oppūgnātiō, ōnis, *f.*	*assault, attack.*
Paucī, ae, a,	*few.*
Pellis, is, *f.*	*skin.* [*most.*
Plērusque, raque, rumque,	*the larger* or *greater part, the*
Praesentia, ae, *f.*	*presence;* in praesentiā, *for the present, at the time.*

Prohibeō, ēre, uī, itum,	*to prohibit, check, prevent, keep.*
Rapīna, ae, *f.*	*robbery, plundering, pillaging.*
Reperiō, īre, repperī, repertum,	*to find.*
Satis, *adv.*	*enough;* satis habēre, *to consider*
Tamen, *adv.*	*yet, nevertheless.* [*it sufficient.*
Vesontiō, ōnis, *m.*	*Vesontio,* a town of eastern Gaul,
Vincō, ere, vīcī, victum,	*to conquer.* [now *Besançon.*

238. *Translate into English.*

1. Vesontiō, oppidum māximum Sēquanōrum, nātūrā locī mūniebātur. 2. Nostrum oppidum altissimō mūrō mūnīrī dēbet. 3. Nostra oppida ēgregiē mūniantur. 4. Hīc locus ēgregiē nātūrā atque opere mūnītus est. 5. Britannī silvam impedītam, vallō atque fōssā mūnītam, oppidum vocant. 6. Caesar oppidum ēgregiē nātūrā atque opere mūnītum repperit; tamen hōc duābus ex partibus oppūgnāre contendit. 7. Iter agminis nostrī multīs rēbus impediēbātur. 8. Aduātucī, dē quibus suprā scrīpsimus, sua omnia in ūnum oppidum ēgregiē nātūrā mūnītum comportābant.

9. Ex Britannīs[1] omnibus longē sunt hūmānissimī quī Cantium incolunt; interiōrēs plērīque pellibus sunt vēstītī. 10. Oppidōrum oppūgnātiō duābus rēbus impediēbātur. 11. Arvernī sē monte Cevennā mūnītōs esse exīstimābant. 12. Ex captīvīs quaerāmus quam ob rem hostēs castra nōn mūniant. 13. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat, āc satis habēbat[2] in praesentiā[2] hostem rapīnīs prohibēre. 14. Ariovistus paucīs mēnsibus[3] ante Gallōrum cōpiās proeliō vīcerat.

239. *Translate into Latin.*

1. These cities are all excellently fortified by nature and art. 2. You will find that city excellently fortified with a double wall. 3. Did you say that the winter quarters of the

---

[1] Literally, *out of the Britons;* render, oꜰ *the Britons.* It has the force of a *Partitive Genitive.*
[2] See *Vocabulary.*
[3] See **236**, Rule XXVIII.

enemy are not fortified? I have heard from captives that the winter quarters of the Gauls are not fortified by art, but that they are enclosed on all sides[1] by high mountains. 4. Those who inhabited a large part of this island were barbarians, and were clothed in skins. 5. Many islands were then inhabited by barbarians, who were clothed in skins.

6. Among barbarians an entangled forest, fortified with a rampart and a moat, is often called a town. 7. Our cities will all be fortified many days[2] before the arrival of the enemy. 8. From whom did you hear that the camp of the Britons is already fortified with a high rampart? I have heard that report from the captives, of whom I have written above. 9. Did you not say that this tower is higher than that? It is higher than that by many feet. 10. The deserters said that the town had been fortified two years before. 11. Would that your towns had been fortified before the arrival of the enemy.

LESSON LXXXII.

FOUR CONJUGATIONS IN FULL. — PASSIVE VOICE. — REVIEW OF RULE IV. — RULE XXXII.

240. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

RULE XXXII.[3]—Ablative Absolute.[4]

431. A noun and a participle may be put in the Ablative to add to the predicate an attendant circumstance:

---

[1] *On all sides;* Latin idiom, FROM *all sides;* or render by a single adverb.

[2] Use the *Ablative of Difference.*

[3] It seems to be no longer necessary to introduce Rules, as in previous lessons, by means of examples. The pupil has already learned the fact that a *Grammatical Rule* is nothing more than a *statement of the general usage of the language.* The introductory examples were intended chiefly to show him this fact.

[4] This Ablative is called *absolute,* because it is not directly dependent for its construction upon any other word in the sentence.

. Serviō rēgnante viguērunt, *they flourished in the reign of Servius* (Servius reigning).[1] Cic.   Rēgibus exāctīs, cōnsulēs creātī sunt, *after the banishment of the kings,*[2] *consuls were appointed.* Liv.   Equitātū praemissō, subsequēbātur, *having sent forward his cavalry, he followed.* Caes.   Rēgnum haud satis prōsperum neglēctā rēligiōne, *a reign not sufficiently prosperous because religion was neglected.* Liv. Perditīs rēbus omnibus tamen virtūs sē sustentāre potest, *though all things are lost, still virtue is able to sustain itself.* Cic.

1. The Ablative Absolute, much more common than the English Nominative Absolute, generally expresses the *time, cause,* or some *attendant circumstance* of an action.

2. This Ablative is generally best rendered — (1) by a *noun* with a *preposition* — *in, during, after, by, with, through,* etc.; (2) by an *active participle* with its *object;* or (3) by a *clause* with *when, while, because, if, though,* etc.;[3] see examples above.

3. A connective sometimes accompanies the Ablative:

Nisi mūnītīs castrīs, *unless the camp should be fortified.* Caes.

4. A *noun* and an *adjective,* or even *two nouns,* may be in the *Ablative Absolute :*[4]

Serēnō caelō, *when the sky is clear.* Sen.   Canīniō cōnsule, *in the consulship of Caninius.* Cic.

241. *Vocabulary.*

Abstineō, ēre, tinuī, tentum,	*to abstain, refrain.*
Acūtus, a, um,	*sharpened, sharp.*
Adhūc, *adv.*	*hitherto, thus far, as yet.*
Catēna, ae, *f.*	*chain.*
Culpa, ae, *f.*	*fault, blame.*
Dēligō, ere, lēgī, lēctum,	*to choose, select, elect.*
Latīnus, a, um,	*Latin.*
Līberō, āre, āvī, ātum,	*to free, liberate.*
Ligārius, iī, *m.*	*Ligarius,* a prominent Roman in whose behalf Cicero pleaded be-
Nāvigium, iī, *n.*	*vessel, ship.* [fore Caesar.

---

[1] Or, *while Servius was reigning* or *was king.*

[2] Or, *after the kings were banished.*

[3] The first method of translation comes nearer the original Latin conception, but the other methods generally accord better with the English idiom.

[4] This construction is peculiar to the Latin. In the corresponding constructions in Sanskrit, Greek, and English, the present participle of the verb *to be* is used.

Nōbilĭtās, ātis, *f.*	*nobility ; the nobility, nobles.*
Probō, āre, āvī, ātum,	*to approve ; to prove.*
Quārē, *adv.*	*wherefore.*
Relinquō, ere, līquī, lictum,	*to leave.*
Spoliō, āre, āvī, ātum,	*to despoil, rob, deprive.*
Sudēs, is, *f.*	*stake.*
Tamesis, is, *m.*	*the Thames.*
Trĭnī, ae, a,	*three-fold, triple.*
Vacō, āre, āvī, ātum,	*to be without, be free from.*
Vinciō, īre, vinxī, vinctum,	*to bind.*

242. *Translate into English.*

1. Labiēnus monte occupātō nostrōs exspĕctābat, proeliōque abstinēbat.　2. Mūnītīs castrīs, Caesar duās ibĭ legiōnēs relīquit, quattuor reliquās in castra reduxit.　3. Ducēs iī[1] dēliguntur, quī summam scientiam rĕī mīlitāris habēre exīstimantur.　4. Caesar ad[2] flūmen Tamesim exercitum duxit ; ad[2] alteram flūminis rīpam māgnae cōpiae hostium erant īnstrūctae ; rīpa autem erat acūtīs sudibus mūnīta.　5. Captīvī trīnīs catēnīs vinctī sunt.　6. Celtae Latīnā linguā Gallī appellantur.

7. Dumnorix, Divitiacī frāter, dixit Galliam omnī nōbilitāte spoliātam esse.　8. Helvētiī tertiā ex parte lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō continentur.　9. Imperātor fortis servitūte Graeciam līberāvit.　10. Mūrus dēfēnsōribus nūdātus est.　11. Tuum, Brūte,[3] jūdicium probō.　12. Adhūc, Caesar,[3] Quīntus Ligārius omnī culpā vacat.　13. Quārē cōnservāte, jūdicēs,[3] hunc hominem nōbilissimum.　14. Caesar nāvigia, quae sēcum habēbat, mīlitibus complērī jūssit, et lēgātōs tribūnōsque mīlitum monuit, ut ad[2] tempus omnēs rēs ab iīs administrārentur.

---

[1] Observe that *iī* is the *subject*, and *ducēs* a *Predicate Noun.*

[2] Observe that different English words must be used in rendering this preposition, according to the connection in which it occurs. Thus *to the river, on* or *near the bank, at the* (proper) *time,* or *in time.*

[3] The Vocative rarely stands at the beginning of a sentence. It usually follows an emphatic word.

243. *Translate into Latin.*

1. As the general had freed the citizens from servitude,[1] he was called the father of his country. 2. May our country always be protected (*fortified*) by the valor of its citizens. 3. Having filled the ships with soldiers,[1] Caesar prepared to hasten into Britain. 4. Soldiers,[2] may you be called true friends of your country.

5. Having led his army to the Thames,[1] Caesar was told[3] that the enemy were on the other bank of the river. 6. General,[2] we ask that your army be led back into camp. 7. On hearing our words,[1] the general ordered his army to be led back into camp. 8. Citizens,[2] this man is free from blame; let him be selected as leader. 9. The general, leaving one legion in camp,[1] led the others toward the enemy.

LESSON LXXXIII.

FOUR CONJUGATIONS IN FULL. — EXERCISE IN READING AT SIGHT.

244. *Read at Sight, examine carefully, and translate into English.*

Gallia est dīvīsa in partēs trēs, quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquītānī, tertiam Celtae, quī Latīnā linguā Gallī appellantur. Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, proptereā quod minimē ad eōs mercātōrēs saepe commeant, atque ea quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent important, prōximīque sunt Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, qui-

---

[1] Be careful here and elsewhere not to render the English *words* by the corresponding Latin *words*, but consider by what *idiom* the *thought* should be expressed in Latin. Here the Ablative Absolute should be used, as if the English were *the citizens having been freed*, etc. In the first sentence, *the general* will become the subject of the principal verb.

[2] On the position of the Vocative, see page 192, foot-note 3.

[3] Latin idiom, *it was told to Caesar.*

9

buscum continenter bellum gerunt. Eādem dē causā Helvētiī
reliquōs Celtās virtūte praecēdunt, quod ferē cotīdiānīs proe-
liīs cum Germānīs contendunt.

Helvētiī undique locī nātūrā continentur; ūnā ex parte
flūmine Rhēnō, lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvē-
tium ā Germānīs dīvidit; alterā ex parte monte Jūrā, quī est
inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā lacū Lemannō et flūmine
Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam Rōmānam ab Helvētiīs dīvidit.
Ob eās rēs minus facile cum fīnitimīs bellum gerere possunt.

245. *Translate into Latin.*

1. War could not readily be waged[1] by the Helvetii with
their neighbors. 2. Lake Lemannus and the river Rhone,
by which the Helvetii are separated from the Roman prov-
ince, shut in the Helvetii on one side. 3. The rest of the
Celts are surpassed in valor by the Helvetii. 4. Wars were
incessantly waged by the Germans with the Helvetii.

5. The things which are imported by merchants frequently
weaken the spirit of the Gauls. 6. Caesar says that Gaul
is divided into three parts. By whom are these parts of
Gaul inhabited? 7. Those whom the Romans named Gauls,
called themselves Celts. 8. Who were the bravest ·of all
those who inhabited Gaul?

LESSON LXXXIV.

THIRD CONJUGATION. — VERBS IN IŌ. — ACTIVE VOICE.
— REVIEW OF RULE LIX. — RULE LX.

246. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

217. A few verbs of the Third Conjugation form the
Present Indicative in **iō, ior,** like verbs of the Fourth Con-
jugation. They are inflected with the endings of the Fourth,
wherever those endings have two successive vowels.

---

[1] Render *was not able to be waged.*

218. Active Voice. — Capiō, *I take.*

Verb Stem, *cap;* Present Stem, *cape.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	SUPINE.
capiō,	capere,	cēpī,	captum.

Indicative Mood.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
capiō, capis, capit;	capimus, capitis, capiunt.

IMPERFECT.

capiēbam, -iēbās, -iēbat;	capiēbāmus, -iēbātis, -iēbant.

FUTURE.

capiam, -iēs, -iet;	capiēmus, -iētis, -ient.

PERFECT.

cēpī, -istī, -it;	cēpimus, -istis, -ērunt, *or* ēre.

PLUPERFECT.

cēperam, -erās, -erat;	cēperāmus, -erātis, -erant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

cēperō, -erĭs, -erit;	cēperĭmus, -erĭtis, -erint.

Subjunctive.

PRESENT.

capiam, -iās, -iat;	capiāmus, -iātis, -iant.

IMPERFECT.

caperem, -erēs, -eret;	caperēmus, -erētis, -erent.

PERFECT.

cēperim, -erĭs, -erit;	cēperĭmus, -erĭtis, -erint.

PLUPERFECT.

cēpissem, -issēs, -isset;	cēpissēmus, -issētis, -issent.

Imperative.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Pres. cape;	capite.
Fut. capitō,	capitōte,
capitō;	capiuntō.

INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
Pres. capere.	*Pres.* capiēns.
Perf. cēpisse.	
Fut. captūrus esse.	*Fut.* captūrus.

GERUND.-	SUPINE.
Gen. capiendī,	
Dat. capiendō,	
Acc. capiendum,	*Acc.* captum,
Abl. capiendō.	*Abl.* captū.

RULE LX. — Supine in ū.

547. The Supine in *ū* is generally used as an Ablative of Specification (**231,** 424):

Quid est tam jūcundum audītū, *what is so agreeable to hear* (in hearing)? Cic. Difficile dictū est, *it is difficult to tell.* Cic. Dē genere mortis difficile dictū est, *it is difficult to speak of the kind of death.* Cic. Cīvitās incrēdibile memorātū est quantum crēverit, *it is incredible to relate how much the state increased.* Sall.

247. *Vocabulary.*

Carrus, ī, *m.*	*cart, wagon.*
Certus, a, um,	*certain;* certiōrem facere, *to make more certain, to inform.*
Coëmō, ere, ēmī, ēmptum,	*to buy up, obtain by purchase.*
Cōnātus, ūs, *m.*	*undertaking, attempt, purpose.*
Conjūrātiō, ōnis, *f.*	*conspiracy.*
Cupiditās, ātis, *f.*	*desire.*
Dō, dare, dedī, datum,	*to give.*
Facilis, e, *comp.* facilior, *sup.* facillimus,	*easy.*
Faciō, ere, fēcī, factum,	*to do, make.*
Fidēs, ěī, *f.*	*faith, confidence; assurance,* [*pledge.*
Indūcō, ere, duxī, ductum,	*to induce, lead on.*
Jumentum, ī, *n.*	*draught animal, beast of burden.*
Mīlle,[1] *indeclinable,*	*a thousand.*

[1] *Mīlle* as an adjective is indeclinable; as a substantive it is used in the Nominative and Accusative singular, but in the plural it is declined like the plural of *mare* (**63,** 63): *mīliā, mīlium, mīlibus.* With the *substan-*

Parcō, ere, pepercī, parsum,	*to spare.* (Followed by the Dative.)
Perficiō, ere, fēcī, fectum,	*to accomplish.*
Permoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtum,	*to move, induce, influence.*
Quam, *adv.*	*how;* with a superlative, *as . . . as possible; quam māximus, the largest possible, as large as possible.*
Recipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptum,	*to retake, betake.*
Sēmentis, is, f.	*sowing, planting.*
Suscipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptum,	*to take up, undertake.*

248. *Translate into English.*

1. Caesar pācem cum Helvētiīs fēcit. 2. Pācem cum hostibus faciāmus. 3. Nōnne pācem cum Gallīs faciētis? Pācem cum iīs faciēmus. 4. Orgetorix sibī lēgātiōnem ad cīvitātēs suscēpit. Is rēgnī cupiditāte inductus conjūrātiōnem nōbilitātis Helvētiōrum fēcit. 5. Orgetorix facile esse factū Casticō et Dumnorigī probāvit cōnāta perficere. Iī hāc ōrātiōne adductī inter sē fidem dedērunt.[1] 6. Nostrī mīlitēs sub occāsum sōlis sē in castra recēpērunt. 7. Helvētiī, auctōritāte Orgetorigis permōtī, cōnstituērunt jūmentōrum et carrōrum quam māximum numerum coëmere, et sēmentēs quam māximās facere.

8. Hostēs posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent: idem facit Caesar, equitātumque omnem ad numerum quattuor mīlium mittit, quī videant[2] quās in partēs hostēs iter faciant. 9. Omnēs ūnō tempore in hostēs impetum faciēmus. 10. Utinam eō tempore in hostēs impetum fēcissētis. 11. Nūntiī Caesarem dē hīs rēbus certiōrem faciēbant. 12. Dux Gallōrum māgnā manū ad castra nostra oppūgnātum vēnit. Hīs rēbus permōtus Quīntus Titūrius lēgātum ad Gallōs mittit rogātum ut sibī mīlitibusque[3] parcant.

---

tive *mille, mīlia,* the name of the objects enumerated is generally in the Genitive.

[1] *Inter sē dare,* 'to give each other,' 'to exchange.'
[2] See Suggestion XXIV., 3.
[3] Indirect object; see 54, Rule XII.

249. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The Helvetii sent ambassadors to Caesar to ask peace.
2. As hostages had been sent by the Helvetii,[1] Caesar said
that he would make peace with them. 3. The Gauls hast-
ened to the winter quarters of the legion to attack it. 4.
Caesar understood that to conquer the Helvetii was not an
easy thing to do. 5. An hour[2] before sunset we shall be-
take ourselves into our camp.

6. Which is the easier thing to do, to march into the
forest or to remain in the camp? 7. Who will inform us in
which direction the enemy marched?[3] 8. The chiefs of the
Gauls did not accomplish their purposes. 9. To accomplish[4]
the purposes of the Helvetii, Orgetorix had undertaken an
embassy to the other states of Gaul.

LESSON LXXXV.

THIRD CONJUGATION. — VERBS IN IŌ. — PASSIVE VOICE.
RULE XLIV.

250. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

219. PASSIVE VOICE. — Capior, *I am taken.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.
capior,	capī,	captus sum.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
capior, caperis, capitur;	capimur, capiminī, capiuntur.

IMPERFECT.

capiēbar, -iēbāris, -iēbātur;	capiēbāmur, -iēbāminī, iēbantur.

---

[1] Use the Ablative Absolute.   [2] Ablative of Difference.

[3] An Indirect Question. What mood must be used?

[4] Remember that it is only after *verbs of motion* that the Supine is used
to express purpose. Here a clause with *ut* should be used.

FUTURE.

capiar, -iēris, -iētur;　　　|　capiēmur, -iēminī, -ientur.

PERFECT.

captus sum, es, est;　　　|　captī sumus, estis, sunt.

PLUPERFECT.

captus eram, erās, erat;　　|　captī erāmus, erātis, erant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

captus erō, eris, erit;　　　|　captī erimus, eritis, erunt.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.　　　　　　　　　　　PLURAL.

capiar, -iāris, iātur;　　　|　capiāmur, -iāminī, -iantur.

IMPERFECT.

caperer, erēris, -erētur;　　|　caperēmur, -erēminī, -erentur.

PERFECT.

captus sim, sīs, sit;　　　|　captī sīmus, sītis, sint.

PLUPERFECT.

captus essem, essēs, esset;　|　captī essēmus, essētis, essent.

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. capere;　　　　　　　　　　capiminī.

Fut. capitor,
　　　capitor;　　　　　　　　　　capiuntor.

INFINITIVE.　　　　　　　PARTICIPLE.

Pres. capī.

Perf. captus esse.　　　　　*Perf.* captus.

Fut. captum īrī.　　　　　　*Ger.* capiendus.

506. Every conditional sentence consists of two distinct parts, expressed or understood — the *Condition* and the *Conclusion:*

Sī negem, mentiar, *if I should deny it, I should speak falsely.*[1] Cic.

---

[1] Here *sī negem* is the condition, and *mentiar*, the conclusion.

RULE XLIV.— Conditional Sentences with sī, nisi, ni, sīn.

507. Conditional sentences with **sī, nisi, nī, sīn,** take —

I. The INDICATIVE in both clauses *to assume* the supposed case:

Sī spīritum dūcit, vīvit, *if he breathes, he is alive.* Cic. Sī tot exempla virtūtis nōn movent, nihil unquam movēbit, *if so many examples of valor do not move (you), nothing will ever move (you).* Liv.

II. The PRESENT or PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE in both clauses to represent the supposed case as *possible :*

Diēs dēficiat, sī velim causam dēfendere, *the day would fail me, if I should wish to defend the cause.* Cic. Improbē fēcerīs, nisi monuerīs, *you would do wrong, if you should not give warning.* Cic.

III. The IMPERFECT or PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE in both clauses to represent the supposed case as *contrary to fact :*

Plūribus verbīs ad tē scrīberem, sī rēs verba dēsīderāret, *I should write to you more fully* (with more words), *if the case required words.* Cic. Sī voluisset, dīmicāsset, *if he had wished, he would have fought.* Nep.

251. *Vocabulary.*

Admittō, ere, mīsī, missum,	*to admit, commit.*
Biennium, iī, *n.*	*two years, space of two years.*
Cōnficiō, ere, fēcī, fectum,	*to accomplish, complete, finish, bring to a close.*
Contrōversia, ae, *f.*	*controversy, dispute.*
Dēcernō, ere, crēvī, crētum,	*to decide, decree.*
Dēfessus, a, um,	*tired, exhausted, weary.*
Dēleō, ēre, ēvī, ētum,	*to destroy.*
Druidēs, um, *m. pl.*	*Druids,* the priests of the Gauls.
Facinus, facinoris, *n.*	*misdeed, crime.*
Hērēditās, ātis, *f.*	*inheritance.*
Interficiō, ere, fēcī, fectum,	*to kill, slay, put to death.*
Jaciō, ere, jēcī, jactum,	*to throw.*
Labor, ōris, *m.*	*labor, toil, effort, exertion.*
Mōs, mōris, *m.*	*usage, custom.*
Poena, ae, *f.*	*penalty, punishment.*
Praecipitō, āre, āvī, ātum,	*to precipitate, throw, hurl.*

Prīvātus, a, um,	*private, personal.*
Prōditor, ōris, *m.*	*traitor.*
Prōiciō,[1] ere, prōjēcī, jectum,	*to throw forward, throw down.*
Pūblicus, a, um,	*public.*
Sī, *conj.*	*if.*
Vinculum, ī, *n.*	*fetter, bond, chain.*

252. *Translate into English.*

1. Germānōrum[2] bellum celeriter cōnficiētur. 2. Bellum Helvētiōrum[2] jam cōnfectum erat. 3. Bellō Helvētiōrum cōnfectō,[3] tōtīus ferē Galliae lēgātī, prīncipēs cīvitātum, ad Caesarem convēnērunt. 4. Germānī suōs interficī vīdērunt; māgnō numerō interfectō,[3] reliquī sē in flūmen praecipitāvērunt. 5. Quid cōnficiētur? Eae rēs cōnficī dēbent. Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās[4] biennium nōbīs satis dūcimus. Quis ad eās rēs cōnficiendās[4] dēligētur? Jam tū dēlēctus es. 6. Lapidēs undique in mūrum jaciuntur, mūrusque dēfēnsōribus nūdātur. 7. In Galliā Druidēs ferē dē omnibus contrōversiīs pūblicīs prīvātīsque cōnstituunt; sī quod est admissum facinus, poenās cōnstituunt; sī dē hērēditāte contrōversia est, iīdem dēcernunt. 8. Sī quod sit admissum facinus, poenās cōnstituāmus. 9. Sī quod esset admissum facinus, poenās cōnstituissēmus.

10. Ego hōc cōnsilium probārem, sī nūllum perīculum vidērem. 11. Ego hōc cōnsilium probāvissem, sī nūllum perīculum vīdissem. 12. Helvētiī, sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum iīs fēcissent, arma prōjēcissent. 13. Nisi tōtīus diēī labōre mīlitēs essent dēfessī, omnēs hostium cōpiae dēlētae essent. 14. Helvētiī mōribus suīs[5] prōditōrem ex vinculīs[6] dīcere[7] coēgērunt.

---

[1] Pronounced as though spelled *prōjiciō.*
[2] English idiom, *war* with *the Germans,* etc.
[3] See Suggestion XXIII., (1).
[4] See Suggestion XX., 4.
[5] *In accordance with,* etc. See 158, Rule XXII.
[6] English idiom, ɪɴ *chains.*
[7] In this connection *dicere* may be rendered *plead.*

253. *Translate into Latin.*

1. If stones had been thrown against the wall, it would have been stripped of soldiers.　2. Should stones be thrown against the wall, the town would be taken. · 3. If the general were in the camp, the soldiers would not be daunted by fear.　4. If the general is in the camp, we ought not to fear danger.　5. If the war with the Helvetii should be finished, ambassadors would assemble from the rest of Gaul.

6. If any crime has been committed by these men, let the penalty be determined by the judge.　7. If our city had been fortified, we should not see these perils.[1]　8. If we approved your plan, we should not have accomplished these things so successfully.[1] 9. After these things were accomplished,[2] peace was made with the enemy.

LESSON LXXXVI.

FOUR CONJUGATIONS IN FULL, INCLUDING VERBS IN
IŌ. — RULE XLVI.

254. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

514. A concessive clause is one that concedes or admits something, generally introduced in English by *though* or *although :* [3]

Quamquam itinere fessī erant, tamen prōcēdunt, *although they were weary with the journey, they still* (yet) *advanced.* Sall.

---

[1] Observe that in 7, the condition refers to past time, and the conclusion to present time, while in 8 the condition refers to present time, and the conclusion to past time.

[2] Use the Ablative Absolute.

[3] *Concessive* clauses bear a close resemblance to *conditional* clauses both in form and in use. *Sī optimum est,* 'if it is best,' is a condition; *etsī optimum est,* 'even if (or though) it is best,' is a concession; the one *assumes* a supposed case, the other *admits* it.

RULE XLVI. — Moods in Concessive Clauses.

515. Concessive clauses take —

I. Generally the *Indicative* in the best prose, when introduced by *quamquam:*

Quamquam intellegunt, tamen nūnquam dīcunt, *though they understand, they never speak.* Cic. Quamquam festīnās, nōn est mora longa, *though you are in haste, the delay is not long.* Hor.

II. The *Indicative* or *Subjunctive*, when introduced by *etsī, etiamsī, tametsī,* or *sī,* like conditional clauses with *sī.* Thus —

1. The *Indicative* is used to represent the supposed case as a *fact:*

Gaudeō, etsī nihil sciō quod gaudeam, *I rejoice, though I know no reason why I should rejoice.* Plaut.

2. The *Present* or *Perfect Subjunctive,* to represent the supposed case as *possible:*

Etsī nihil habeat in sē glōria, tamen virtūtem sequitur, *though glory may not possess anything in itself, yet it follows virtue.* Cic.

3. The *Imperfect* or *Pluperfect Subjunctive,* to represent the supposed case as *contrary to fact:*

Etiamsī mors oppetenda esset, domī māllem, *even if death ought to be met, I should prefer to meet it at home.* Cic.

III. The *Subjunctive,* when introduced by *licet, quamvīs, ut, nē, cum,* or the relative *quī:*

Licet irrīdeat, plūs tamen ratiō valēbit, *though he may deride, reason will yet avail more.* Cic. Nōn tū possis, quamvīs excellās, *you would not be able, although you excel.* Cic. Ut dēsint vīrēs, tamen est laudanda voluntās, *though the strength fails, still the will should be approved.* Ovid. Nē sit summum malum dolor, malum certē est, *though pain may not be the greatest evil, it is certainly an evil.* Cic. Cum domī dīvitiae adfluerent, fuēre tamen cīvēs, etc., *though wealth abounded at home, there were yet citizens,* etc. Sall.

255. *Vocabulary.*

Aestās, ātis, *f.*	*summer.*
Commūniō, īre, īvī *or* iī, ītum,	*to wall around, encompass, surround.*
Conciliō, āre, āvī, ātum,	*to win, secure.*
Crēber, bra, brum,	*frequent.*

Cupiō, ere, īvī *or* iī, ītum,	*to desire.*
Cūrō, āre, āvī, ātum,	*to care, care for;* aliquid faciendum cūrāre, *to have anything done.*
Etsī, *conj.*	*although.*
Excursiō, ōnis, *f.*	*sally, sortie.*
Exigō, ere, ēgī, āctum,	*to complete, finish, end.*
Exiguus, a, um,	*restricted, limited, scanty, small,*
Graecus, a, um,	*Greek, Grecian.* [*brief.*
Indicium, iī, *n.*	*testimony, evidence.*
Juvō, āre, jūvī, jūtum,	*to aid.*
Mātūrus, a, um,	*early.*
Orbis, is, *m.*	*circle, circuit;* orbis terrārum, *the*
Ōrdō, inis, *m.*	*rank.* [*earth, world.*
Perpetuus, a, um,	*perpetual, endless, uninterrupted.*
Respiciō, ere, spēxī, spēctum,	*to regard, look upon.*
Tabula, ae, *f.*	*table, tablet; document, record.*
Terra, ae, *f.*	*earth, land.*
Trānsdūcō, ere, duxī, ductum,	*to lead across.*

256. *Translate into English.*

1. Ea rēs Helvētiīs per indicium ēnūntiātur. 2. Caesar pontem in[1] Arare faciendum cūrāvit[2] atque ita exercitum trānsduxit. 3. In castrīs Helvētiōrum tabulae repertae sunt, lītterīs Graecīs cōnfectae. 4. Orgetorix dixit sē suae cīvitātis imperium obtentūrum esse. Is sē suīs cōpiīs suōque exercitū Casticō Dumnorigīque rēgna conciliātūrum esse cōnfirmābat. 5. Sī Lingonēs Helvētiōs frūmentō jūvissent, Caesar eōs prō hostibus habuisset. 6. Hostēs prīmō adventū exercitūs nostrī crēbrās ex oppidō excursiōnēs faciēbant; posteā vallō circummūnītī[3] oppidō sēsē continēbant. 7. Eōdem ferē tempore Caesar, etsī prope exācta jam aestās erat, tamen in aliam gentem exercitum adduxit.

8. Exiguā parte aestātis reliquā, Caesar, etsī in Galliā mātūrae sunt hiemēs, tamen in Britanniam contendit. 9.

---

[1] English idiom, OVER.

[2] Literally, *cared for a bridge to be made,* i.e. *attended to the making of a bridge;* render, *had a bridge made.*

[3] The attacking party often constructed works completely enclosing the besieged town.

Etsī nōndum Britannōrum cōnsilia cōgnōverat, tamen perī-
culum vidēbat. 10. Cum ea ita sint, tamen vōbīscum pācem
faciēmus. 11. Cum prīmī ōrdinēs hostium interfectī essent,
tamen reliquī fortiter pūgnābant. 12. Caesar sē prīncipem
nōn sōlum urbis Rōmae, sed orbis terrārum esse cupiēbat.
13. Sī ea quae in aliīs nātiōnibus geruntur īgnōrātis, respicite
fīnitimam Galliam, quae perpetuā premitur servitūte.

<div align="center">

257. *Translate into Latin.*

</div>

1. Although we see other lands distressed by slavery, our
country is free. 2. Although thèse things have been an-
nounced to the enemy,[1] they do not know what is done in
our camp. 3. Although many very brave soldiers have been
slain,[1] we desire to make peace with the enemy. 4. Although
a bridge has been made over the river,[1] the army has not
yet been led across.

5. What was found in the camp of the Helvetii? Caesar
tells us what was found in their camp.[2] 6. Caesar regarded
them as enemies, in order that other nations might not assist
the Helvetii. 7. If a bridge had been made,[1] the army could
have been[3] led over. 8. Although they had made peace[1] a
few days before, they made frequent attacks upon the Roman
camp.

<div align="center">

LESSON LXXXVII.

**FOUR CONJUGATIONS. — DEPONENT VERBS. —
RULE XXVI.**

258. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

DEPONENT VERBS.

</div>

231. Deponent Verbs have in general the forms of the
Passive Voice with the signification of the Active. But —

---

[1] In all these sentences we may use the Ablative Absolute, but a finite
verb with a conjunction expresses more clearly the *concessive* or *con-
ditional* force of the clause.

[2] An *Indirect Question.*   [3] Render, *would have been able to be led.*

1. They have also in the Active, the future infinitive, the participles, gerund, and supine.

2. The gerundive generally has the passive signification; sometimes also the perfect participle: *hortandus*, to be exhorted; *expertus*, tried.

3. The Future Infinitive of the Passive form is rare, as the Active form is generally used.

NOTE.—The synopsis of a single example will sufficiently illustrate the peculiarities of Deponent Verbs.

232. Hortor, *I exhort.*

1. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

hortor,	hortārī,	hortātus sum.

2. PRESENT SYSTEM; STEM, *hortā.*

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPER.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
Pres. hortor[1]	horter	hortāre	hortārī	hortāns
Imp. hortābar	hortārer			
Fut. hortābor		hortātor		

Gerund, hortandī.   *Gerundive,* hortandus.

3. SUPINE SYSTEM; STEM, *hortāt.*

Perf. hortātus sum	hortātus sim		hortātus esse	hortātus
Plup. hortātus eram	hortātus essem			
F. P. hortātus erō				
Fut.			hortātūrus esse	hortātūrus

Supine, hortātum, hortātū.

RULE XXVI.—Ablative in Special Constructions.[2]

421. The Ablative is used—

I. With **ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor,** and their compounds:

---

[1] The tenses are inflected regularly throughout: *hortor, hortāris, hortātur; hortāmur, hortāmini, hortantur.* All the forms in this synopsis have the active meaning, *I exhort, I was exhorting,* etc., except the *Gerundive,* which has the passive force, *deserving to be exhorted, to be exhorted.* The *Gerundive,* as it is passive in meaning, cannot be used in intransitive Deponent Verbs, except in an impersonal sense; see **281, 301, 1.**

[2] This Ablative is readily explained as the Ablative of *means:* thus, *ūtor,* 'I use,' 'I serve myself *by means of*'; *fruor,* 'I enjoy,' 'I delight myself *with*'; *vescor,* 'I feed upon,' 'I feed myself *with*,' etc.

Plūrimīs rēbus fruimur et ūtimur, *we enjoy and use* VERY MANY THINGS. Cic. *Māgnā* est *praedā* potītus, *he obtained* GREAT BOOTY. Nep. Lacte et carne vescēbantur, *they lived upon milk and flesh.* Sall.

II. With VERBS and ADJECTIVES OF PLENTY:

Vīlla abundat *lacte, cāseō, melle, the villa abounds* IN MILK, CHEESE, *and* HONEY. Cic. Urbs referta *copiīs, a city filled* WITH SUPPLIES. Cic. Virtūte praeditus, *endowed with virtue.* Cic. Deus bonīs explēvit mundum, *God has filled the world with blessings.* Cic.

III. With **dīgnus, indīgnus,**[1] and **contentus:**

Dīgnī sunt *amīcitiā, they are worthy* OF FRIENDSHIP. Cic. Vir *patre* dīgnus, *a man worthy* OF HIS FATHER. Cic. Honōre indīgnissimus, *most unworthy of honor.* Cic. Nātūrā parvō contenta, *nature content with little.* Cic.

NOTE 1. — Transitive verbs of Plenty[2] take the Accusative and Ablative:

Armīs nāvēs onerat, *he loads the ships with arms.* Sall.

259. *Vocabulary.*

Abundō, āre, āvī, ātum,	*to abound, to be well supplied*
Arbitror, ārī, ātus sum,	*to think.* [*with.*
Cōnfīdō, ere, fīsus sum,[3]	*to trust, have confidence in, rely*
Cōnor, ārī, ātus sum,	*to try, attempt.* [*upon.*
Contentus, a, um,	*content, satisfied.*
Indīgnus, a, um,	*unworthy.*
Interclūdō, ere, clūsi, clūsum,	*to cut off.*
Nūllus, a, um, 42, 151,	*not any, no, none.*
Persuādeō, ēre, suāsī, suāsum,	*to persuade.*
Potior, īrī, ītus sum,	*to gain possession of, take possession of, obtain possession of.*
Prīvō, āre, āvī, ātum,	*to deprive.*
Proficīscor, ī, profectus sum,	*to start, set out.*

---

[1] The nature of the Ablative with *dignus* and *indignus* is somewhat uncertain. On etymological grounds it is explained as *instrumental;* see Delbrück, p. 72; Corssen, 'Krit. Beitr.,' p. 47.

[2] Transitive verbs of *plenty* mean 'to fill,' 'to furnish with,' etc., as *cumulō, compleō, impleō, imbuō, īnstruō, onerō, ōrnō,* etc.

[3] *Cōnfīdō* is a *semi-deponent,* i.e. in the tenses for completed action it has the forms of the passive voice, with the meaning of the active.

Trānō, āre, āvī, ātum,	*to swim across.*
Tūtō, *adv.*	*safely.*
Tūtus, a, um,	*safe.*
Ūllus, a, um, **42**, 151,	*any, any one.*
Ūtor, ī, ūsus sum,	*to use.*
Versus, ūs, *m.*	*verse.*
Vīs, vīs, *f.*	*force, violence; pl.* vīrēs, vīrium,
Vulnus, eris, *n.*	*wound.* [*strength.*

260. *Translate into English.*

1. Helvētiī dē fīnibus suīs cum omnibus cōpiīs proficīscē-
bantur.   2. Orgetorix Casticō[1] persuādet ut rēgnum in cīvi-
tāte suā occupet, itemque[2] Dumnorigī ut idem cōnētur.   3.
Prōditōrēs hanc urbem dēlēre cōnantur.   4. Prōditor nōs
omnēs vītā prīvāre cōnātus est.   5. Tibī, Caesar, bonī virī
grātiās agunt.   6. Bellō cōnfectō, omnēs Galliae cīvitātēs
lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt.   7. Eō tempore Druidēs
Graecīs litterīs ūtēbantur.   8. Druidēs versūs suōs litterīs
nōn mandant, cum in reliquīs ferē rēbus Graecīs litterīs
ūtantur.

9. Aeduī prō Bellovacīs rogābant ut Caesar suā clementiā
in eōs ūterētur.   10. Labiēnus castrīs hostium potītus est.
11. Hostēs, commeātū interclūsō, sine ūllō vulnere vīctōriā
potīrī cupiunt.   Illī, etsī sē tūtō pūgnātūrōs exīstimābant,
tamen tūtius[3] esse arbitrābantur, commeātū interclūsō, sine
ūllō vulnere vīctōriā potīrī.   12. Hostēs ad flūmen Rhēnum
vēnērunt; ibī paucī vīribus cōnfīsī trānāre contendērunt.   13.
Vercingetorix equitātū abundābat.   Is mīlitibus quōs anteā
habuerat sē esse contentum dixit.   14. Mīlitēs extrēmam
famem sustinēbant, nūlla tamen vōx est ab[4] iīs audīta, populī
Rōmānī glōriā et superiōribus vīctōriīs indīgna.   15. Gallī
superiōrem partem collis castrīs suīs complēvērunt.

---

[1] *Indirect Object;* the clause with *ut* is the *Direct Object.*
[2] *Item* modifies *persuādet.*
[3] What determines the gender of this predicate adjective?
[4] The context here shows that *ab* should be rendered *from,* not *by.*

261. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Although the Gauls were well supplied with grain, Caesar was cut off from supplies. 2. Gaul was filled with very warlike nations. 3. We shall not obtain possession of the camp of the enemy without receiving[1] many wounds. 4. Many words which we hear are unworthy of wise men. 5. The Helvetii were not contented with their territory, but desired to obtain possession of the lands of their neighbors.

6. The general, relying on[2] the valor of his soldiers, has determined to assault the town. 7. We shall attempt to set out to-night.[3] 8. Caesar thought that he should use the supplies of grain which were sent by the Aedui. 9. Do you understand for what reason the Druids used Greek letters?[4]

LESSON LXXXVIII.

FOUR CONJUGATIONS IN FULL. — RULES LIII. AND LIV.

262. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

INDIRECT DISCOURSE. — *Ōrātiŏ Oblīqua.*

522. When a writer or speaker expresses thoughts, whether his own or those of another, in any other form than in the original words of the author, he is said to use the Indirect Discourse — *Ōrātiŏ Oblīqua :* [5]

Platōnem ferunt in Ĭtaliam vēnisse, *they say that Plato came into Italy.* Cic. Respondeō tē dolōrem ferre moderātē, *I reply that you bear the affliction with moderation.* Cic. Ūtilem arbitror esse scientiam, *I think that knowledge is useful.* Cic.

---

[1] In rendering, omit *receiving.*
[2] See 260, sentence 12.
[3] Render *on this night.*
[4] What kind of a clause? See 127, 529.
[5] Thus, in the first example, *Platōnem in Ĭtaliam vēnisse* is in the indirect discourse ; in the direct, i.e. in the original words of those who made the statement, it would be *Platŏ in Ĭtaliam vēnĭt.*

1. In distinction from the INDIRECT DISCOURSE — *Ōrātiŏ Oblīqua*, the original words of the author are said to be in the DIRECT DISCOURSE — *Ōrātiŏ Rēcta.*

2. Words quoted without change belong to the DIRECT DISCOURSE:

Rēx 'duumvirōs' inquit 'secundum lēgem faciō,' *the king said, 'I appoint duumvirs according to law.'* Liv.

RULE LIII. — Moods in Principal Clauses.

523. The principal clauses of the DIRECT DISCOURSE on becoming INDIRECT take the *Infinitive* or *Subjunctive* as follows:

I. When DECLARATIVE, they take the *Infinitive with a Subject Accusative.*

Dīcēbat animōs esse dīvīnōs, *he was wont to say that souls are divine.* Cic. Platōnem Tarentum vēnisse reperiō, *I find that Plato came to Tarentum.* Cic. Catŏ mīrārī sē āiēbat, *Cato was wont to say that he wondered.* Cic. Hippiās glōriātus est, ānulum sē suā manū cōnfēcisse,[1] *Hippias boasted that he had made the ring with his own hand.* Cic.

II. When INTERROGATIVE, they take —

1. Generally the *Subjunctive:*

Ad postulāta Caesaris respondit, quid sibī vellet, cūr venīret,[2] *to the demands of Caesar he replied, what did he wish, why did he come ?* Caes.

2. Sometimes the *Infinitive with a Subject Accusative,* as in rhetorical questions:[3]

---

[1] In the direct discourse these examples would read — (1) *animī sunt dīvīnī*, (2) *Platŏ Tarentum vēnit*, (3) *mīror*, and (4) *ānulum meā manū cōnfēcī*. Observe that the pronominal subjects implied in *mīror* and *cōnfēcī* are expressed with the Infinitive, as *mīrārī sē, sē cōnfēcisse*. But the subject is sometimes omitted when it can be readily supplied; see second example under II., 2, below.

[2] In the direct discourse this example would read — *quid tibī vīs ? cūr venis ?*

[3] A question used for rhetorical effect in place of an assertion is called a *Rhetorical Question*, as *num potest,* 'can he ?' = *nōn potest,* 'he can not'; *quid est turpius,* 'what is baser ?' = *nihil est turpius,* 'nothing is baser.'

Docēbant rem esse testimōniō, etc.; quid esse levius, etc., *they showed that the fact was a proof* (for a proof), etc.; *what was more inconsiderate*, etc. ? Caes.   Respondit, num memoriam dēpōnere pōsse,[1] *he replied, could he lay aside the recollection ?* Caes.

III. When IMPERATIVE,[2] they take the *Subjunctive:*

Scrībit Labiēnō cum legiōne veniat, *he writes to Labienus to come* (that he should come) *with a legion.* Caes.   Redditur respōnsum, castrīs sē tenērent, *the reply was returned, that they should keep themselves in camp.* Liv.   Mīlitēs certiōrēs facit, sē reficerent, *he directed the soldiers to refresh themselves.* Caes.   Ōrābant ut sibī auxilium ferret, *they prayed that he would bring them help.* Caes.   Nūntius vēnit, nē dubitāret,[3] *a message came that he should not hesitate.* Nep.

RULE LIV. — Moods in Subordinate Clauses.

524. The subordinate clauses of the DIRECT DIS-COURSE on becoming INDIRECT take the *Subjunctive:*

Respondit sē id quod in Nerviīs fēcisset factūrum,[4] *he replied that he would do what he had done in the case of the Nervii.* Caes.   Hippiās glōriātus est, ānulum quem habēret sē suā manū cōnfēcisse,[5] *Hippias boasted that he had made with his own hand the ring which he wore.* Cic.

526. In passing from the DIRECT DISCOURSE to the INDIRECT, pronouns of the first and second persons are generally changed to pronouns of the third person,[6] and the first and

---

Here belong many questions which in the direct form have the verb in the first or in the third person. As such questions are equivalent to declarative sentences, they take the same construction, the Infinitive with its subject.

[1] Direct discourse — (1) *quid est levius = nihil est levius*, and (2) *num memoriam dēpōnere possum = memoriam dēpōnere nōn possum.*

[2] Imperative sentences include those sentences which take the *Subjunctive of Desire*; see 114, 483.

[3] In the direct discourse these examples would read — (1) *cum legiōne venī*, (2) *castrīs vōs tenēte*, (3) *vōs reficite*, (4) *nōbīs auxilium fer*, (5) *nōlī dubitāre.*

[4] Direct, *faciam id quod in Nerviīs fēcī.*

[5] Direct, *ānulum quem habeō meā manū cōnfēcī.*

[6] Thus — (1) *ego* is changed to *suī, sibī*, etc., or to *ipse*; *meus* and *noster* to *suus*; (2) *tū* to *is* or *ille*, sometimes to *suī*, etc.; *tuus* and *vester* to *suus* or to the Genitive of *is*; and (3) *hīc* and *iste* to *ille.*

second persons of verbs are generally changed to the third person :

Glōriātus est, ānulum sē suā manū cōnfēcisse,[1] *he boasted that he had made the ring with his own hand.* Cic. Redditur respōnsum, castris sē tenērent,[2] *the reply was returned that they should keep themselves in camp.* Liv. Respondit, sī obsidēs ab iis sibī dentur, sēsē cum iis pācem esse factūrum,[3] *he replied that if hostages were given to him by them, he would make peace with them.* Caes.

263. *Vocabulary.*

Appetō, ere, petīvī *or* iī, ītum,	*to seek after, seek.*
Artificium, iī, *n.*	*artifice.*
Concilium, iī, *n.*	*council, meeting.*
Creō, āre, āvī, ātum,	*to create, elect, appoint.*
Discēdō, ere, cessī, cessum,	*to depart, withdraw, swerve.*
Polliceor, ērī, itus sum,	*to promise.* [*er than, before.*
Prius, *adv. comp.,* sup. prīmum,	*before, sooner ;* prius quam, *sooner than, before.*
Quisquam, quaequam, quicquam,	*anyone, anything.*
Respondeō, ēre, spondī, spōnsum,	*to answer.*

264. *Translate into English.*

1. Ariovistus respondit sē prius in Galliam vēnisse, quam populum Rōmānum.[4] Dixit omnēs Galliae cīvitātēs contrā sē castra habuisse,[5] eās omnēs cōpiās ā sē ūnō proeliō superātās esse.[4] 2. Posterō diē, conciliō convocātō, Vercingetorix dixit nōn virtūte neque in aciē vīcisse Rōmānōs,[4] sed artificiō quōdam et scientiā oppūgnātiōnis.[6] 3. Aeduī summō in perīculō sunt. Aeduī dīcunt sē summō in perīculō esse.[4] Dixērunt sē summō esse in perīculō. 4. Aeduī summō in

---

[1] Direct, *ānulum ego meā manū cōnfēcī. Ego* becomes *sē,* and *meā, suā.*

[2] Direct, *castrīs vōs tenēte. Vōs* becomes *sē,* and *tenēte, tenērent.*

[3] Direct, *sī obsidēs ā vōbīs mihī dabuntur, vōbīscum pācem faciam. A vōbīs* becomes *ab iis ; mihī* becomes *sibī ; vōbīscum, cum iis ;* and the implied subject of *faciam* becomes *sēsē,* the subject of *esse factūrum.*

[4] Give the Direct form corresponding to this Indirect Discourse.

[5] *Castra habēre,* literally, *to have camp,* may be rendered *to encamp, to take the field.*

[6] English idiom, *skill* IN *assault.*

perīculō erant. Aeduī dīcunt sē summō fuisse in perīculō.[1]
Dixērunt sē summō fuisse in perīculō.

5. Liscus magistrātum gerēbat. Hōc tempore duo magis-
trātum gerunt. Aeduī summō in perīculō sunt quod duo
magistrātum gerunt. Aeduī dīcunt sē summō esse in perī-
culō, quod duo magistrātum gerant, et sē uterque eōrum
lēgibus creātum esse dīcat.[1] Dixērunt sē summō esse in
perīculō, quod duo magistrātum gererent, et sē uterque eōrum
lēgibus creātum esse dīceret.

6. Nōnne Orgetorix suae cīvitātis imperium obtinēbit?
Dīcit sē suae cīvitātis imperium obtentūrum esse.[1]   7. Im-
perātor cum hostibus pācem faciet.   Dīcit sī[2] obsidēs ab
hostibus sibī dentur, utī eōs ea quae polliceantur factūrōs in-
tellegat, sēsē cum iīs pācem esse factūrum.[1]   8. Caesar dixit
Ariovistum sē cōnsule[3] populī Rōmānī amīcitiam appetisse;[1]
cūr hunc quisquam ab officiō discēssūrum jūdicāret?

265. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Caesar says that Gaul was divided into three parts;
that the Belgae inhabited one of these, the Aquitani another,
and the Celts the third.[4]   2. He said that a third part of
Gaul was inhabited by those who called themselves Celts,
but whom the Romans named Gauls.[4]   He said that the
Helvetii were the bravest of the Gauls, and that they were
nearest to the Germans, with whom they were continually
waging war.[4]   3. The Helvetii said that if the Romans made
peace with them, they would remain where Caesar desired;
but that if peace was not made, the Romans would be re-
garded by them as enemies.[4]   Although they had attempted
to march through the province, they said that they wished
to make peace.[4]

---

[1] Give the corresponding Direct form.
[2] What form of condition in Direct Discourse ?
[3] Ablative Absolute, *he being consul;* render, *in his consulship.*
[4] Give the corresponding Direct form in English and in Latin.

LESSON LXXXIX.

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS. — EXERCISE IN READING AT SIGHT.

266. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

233. The ACTIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION, formed by combining the Future Active Participle with *sum,* denotes an intended or future action:

Amātūrus sum, *I am about to love.*

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INFINITIVE.
Pres.	amātūrus sum [1]	amātūrus sim	amātūrus esse
Imp.	amātūrus eram	amātūrus essem	
Fut.	amātūrus erō		
Perf.	amātūrus fuī	amātūrus fuerim	amātūrus fuisse
Plup.	amātūrus fueram	amātūrus fuissem	
F. P.	amātūrus fuerō [1]		

234. The PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION, formed by combining the Gerundive with *sum,* denotes *necessity* or *duty.*

Amandus sum, *I must be loved.* [2]

Pres.	amandus sum	amandus sim	amandus esse
Imp.	amandus eram	amandus essem	
Fut.	amandus erō		
Perf.	amandus fuī	amandus fuerim	amandus fuisse
Plup.	amandus fueram	amandus fuissem	
F. P.	amandus fuerō		

267. *Read at Sight, examine carefully, and translate into English.*

Helvētiī, auctōritāte Orgetorigis permōtī, cōnstituērunt dē finibus suīs cum omnibus cōpiīs proficiscī, jūmentōrum et carrōrum quam māximum numerum coëmere, sēmentēs quam māximās facere, cum prōximīs cīvitātibus pācem et amīcitiam cōnfirmāre. Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās biennium sibī satis esse

---

[1] The periphrastic forms are inflected regularly. The Future Perfect is exceedingly rare.   [2] Or, *I deserve* (ought) *to be loved.*

dūxērunt; in tertium annum profectiōnem lēge cōnfirmāvē-
runt. Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās Orgetorix dēlēctus est. Is
sibī lēgātiōnem ad cīvitātēs suscēpit. In eō itinere per-
suāsit Casticō Sēquanō, ut rēgnum in cīvitāte suā occupāret;
itemque Dumnorigī Aeduō, ut idem cōnārētur persuāsit.
Facile esse factū illīs probāvit cōnātūs perficere; sē suae
cīvitātis imperium obtentūrum esse, et suīs cōpiīs suōque
exercitū illīs rēgna conciliātūrum cōnfirmāvit. Hāc ōrātiōne
adductī inter sē fidem dedērunt. Ea rēs est Helvētiīs per
indicium ēnūntiāta. Mōribus suīs Orgetorigem ex vinculīs
causam dīcere coēgērunt.

268. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Orgetorix was intending to secure[1] regal power in his
state. 2. There were many things to be accomplished[2] by
the Helvetii, if they wished to set out from their territory.
3. In accordance with the customs[3] of the Helvetii, Orgetorix,
who was regarded by them as a traitor, was forced to plead
his cause in chains.[4] 4. It was announced to the Helvetii
what Orgetorix was attempting to accomplish. 5. He had
said that he would secure for these chieftains regal power in
their states. To accomplish his attempt was not an easy
thing to do. He had persuaded the Helvetii to set out from
their territory with all their forces.

LESSON XC.

IRREGULAR VERBS. — *Possum* AND *Ferō.*

269. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

289. A few verbs which have special irregularities are called,
by way of preëminence, *Irregular* or *Anomalous Verbs.*

---

[1] See 266, 233. [2] See 266, 234.
[3] *In accordance with*, etc., use the Ablative, under 158, 413.
[4] See 252, sentence 14.

290. Possum,[1]   **pŏsse,**   **potuī,**   *to be able.*

INDICATIVE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Pres. possum, potes, potest ;	possŭmus, potestis, possunt.
Imp. poteram;[2]	poterāmus.
Fut. poterō;	poterimus.
Perf. potuī;	potuimus.
Plup. potueram;	potuerāmus.
F. P. potuerō;	potuerĭmus.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres. possim, possis, possit;	possĭmus, possītis, possint
Imp. pŏssem;	pŏssēmus.
Perf. potuerim;	potuerĭmus.
Plup. potuissem;	potuissēmus.

INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
Pres. pŏsse.	*Pres.* potēns (*as an adjective*).
Perf. potuisse.	

292. Ferō,[3]   **ferre,**   **tulī,**   **lātum,**   *to bear.*

ACTIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Pres. ferō, fers, fert;	ferimus, fertis,[4] ferunt.
Imp. ferēbam;[5]	ferēbāmus.
Fut. feram;	ferēmus.
Perf. tulī;	tulimus.
Plup. tuleram;	tulerāmus.
F. P. tulerō;	tulerĭmus.

---

[1] *Possum* is compounded of *potis*, 'able,' and *sum*, 'to be.' In *possum* observe —

1) That *potis* drops *is*, and that *t* is assimilated before *s*; *possum* for *potsum.*

2) That *f* of the simple is dropped after *t* : *potui* for *potfui.*

3) That the Infinitive *pŏsse* and Subjunctive *pŏssem* are shortened forms for *potesse* and *potessem.*

[2] Inflected regularly through the different persons : *poteram, poterās, poterat,* etc. So also in the other tenses : *potui, potuisti,* etc.

[3] *Ferō* has forms derived from three independent stems, seen in *ferō, tuli, lātum.*

[4] *Fer-s, fer-t, fer-tis,* instead of *feris, ferit, feritis.*

[5] Inflect the several tenses in full : *ferēbam, ferēbās,* etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres.	feram;	ferāmus.
Imp.	ferrem;	ferrēmus.[1]
Perf.	tulerim;	tulerĭmus.
Plup.	tulissem;	tulissēmus.

IMPERATIVE.

Pres.	fer;[2]	ferte.
Fut.	fertō,	fertōte,
	fertō;	feruntō.

INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
Pres. ferre.[1]	*Pres.* ferēns.
Perf. tulisse.	
Fut. lātūrus esse.	*Fut.* lātūrus.

GERUND.	SUPINE.
Gen. ferendī,	
Dat. ferendō,	
Acc. ferendum,	*Acc.* lātum,
Abl. ferendō.	*Abl.* lātū.

Passive Voice.

feror,   ferrī,   lātus sum,   *to be borne.*

INDICATIVE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Pres. feror, ferris, fertur;	ferimur, feriminī, feruntur.
Imp. ferēbar;	ferēbāmur.
Fut. ferar;	ferēmur.
Perf. lātus sum;	lātī sumus.
Plup. lātus eram;	lātī erāmus.
F. P. lātus erō;	lātī erimus.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres.	ferar;	ferāmur.
Imp.	ferrer;	ferrēmur.
Perf.	lātus sim;	lātī sīmus.
Plup.	lātūs essem;	lātī essēmus.

---

[1] *Ferrem, etc., for fererem, etc.; ferre for ferere (e dropped).*

[2] *Fer for fere; fertō, ferte, fertōte, for feritō, ferite, feritōte.*

10

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. ferre;	ferimini.
Fut. fertor,	———
fertor;	feruntor.

INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
Pres. ferri.	
Perf. lātus esse.	*Perf.* lātus.
Fut. lātum īrī.	*Ger.* ferendus.

LESSON XCI.

IRREGULAR VERBS. — *Possum* AND *Ferō*. — EXERCISES.

270. *Vocabulary.*

Arrogantia, ae, *f.*	*arrogance.*
Avāritia, ae, *f.*	*avarice.*
Clāssis, is, *f.*	*fleet.*
Coërceō, ēre, uī, ĭtum,	*to restrain, control.*
Dolor, ōris, *m.*	*pain.* [*ferre, to propose a law.*
Ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum,	*to bear, carry; to endure;* lēgem
Juvenis, is, *m.*	*youth, a youth.*
Nĭhil, *n. indeclinable,*	*nothing.*
Patienter, *adv.*	*patiently.*
Praetor, ōris, *m.*	*praetor,* a Roman magistrate.
Prīvātim, *adv.*	*privately, in a private capacity.*
Sententia, ae, *f.*	*thought, plan, opinion.*
Statuō, ere, uī, ūtum,	*to determine, decide.*

271. *Translate into English.*

1. Hī cīvēs plūs possunt quam ipsī magistrātūs.[1] Liscus dīcit esse nōnnūllōs, quī prīvātim plūs possint quam ipsī magistrātūs; hōs ā sē coërcērī nōn pōsse. 2. Nōnne hī juvenēs arma ferre possunt? In Galliā arma ferunt. 3. In exercitū Caesaris·erant multī quī arma in Italiā tulerant. 4.

---

[1] After a comparative, *quam* is followed by the same construction as that which precedes it. *Magistrātūs* is here the subject of *possunt* to be supplied.

Cīvēs Rōmānī avāritiam praetōris ferre nōn potuērunt. 5. Ea quae ferrī possunt ferenda sunt. 6. Ferimus ea quae sunt ferenda. 7. Nōnne imperātor fīnitimīs cīvitātibus auxilium feret? Iīs auxilium ferre nōn poterit. 8. Rhēnus per fīnēs Helvētiōrum fertur. 9. Haec lēx ferētur.

10. Bonae lēgēs ferantur. 11. Multae lēgēs lātae sunt. 12. Gallī nostrōrum mīlitum impetum sustinēre nōn potuērunt. 13. Liscus dīcit sē quam diū potuerit tacuisse.[1] 14. Dolō-rem patienter ferāmus. 15. Dolor patienter ferendus est. 16. Ariovistus tantam arrogantiam sūmpserat, ut ferendus nōn vidērētur. 17. Nihil dē eōrum sententiā dictūrus sum quī hostēs timent. 18. Clāssis est exspēctanda. Caesar statuit exspectandam esse clāssem. 19. Cum fīnitimīs cīvitā-tibus pācem factūrī sumus. 20. Hostēs suam urbem altis-simō mūrō mūnītūrī sunt.

272. *Translate into Latin.*

1. We can fortify all our cities with walls and with moats. 2. If we are intending to bear[2] aid to our friends, our cities must be fortified.[3] 3. We have decided that we must await, in this place, the arrival[4] of our friends. 4. If you cannot endure pain, you must make peace[4] with your enemies.

5. If you had to endure the arrogance[4] of this general, you would not be silent. 6. They are intending to set out[2] for Gaul, to carry[5] arms against the Romans. 7. Good laws should be proposed[3] by those who are regarded as the friends of all the citizens. 8. To endure pain patiently is not an easy thing to do.[6] 9. The soldiers must be warned[3] not to fear the enemy. 10. In our state no citizens have greater

---

[1] *Tacuisse* must here be rendered, *that he has kept silent*, not *that he kept silent*.

[2] See 266, 233. [3] See 266, 234.

[4] Render as if the English were, *the arrival must be awaited, peace must be made, arrogance had to be endured.*

[5] See 119, 497. [6] See 248, sentence 5.

power than the magistrates.   11. All of us can carry arms
in defence of [1] our country.

LESSON XCII.

IRREGULAR VERBS. — *Volŏ*, *Nōlō*, AND *Mālō*. —
RULE VII.

273. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

293. Volŏ,[2]	velle,	voluī,	*to be willing.*
Nōlō,[3]	nōlle,	nōluī,	*to be unwilling.*
Mālō,[3]	mālle,	māluī,	*to prefer.*

INDICATIVE.

Pres. volŏ,	nōlō,	mālō,
vīs,	nōn vīs,	māvīs,
vult;	nōn vult;	māvult;
volumus,	nōlumus,	mālumus,
vultis,	nōn vultis,	māvultis,
volunt.	nōlunt.	mālunt.
Imp. volēbam.[4]	nōlēbam.	mālēbam.
Fut. volam.	nōlam.	mālam.
Perf. voluī.	nōluī.	māluī.
Plup. volueram.	nōlueram.	mālueram.
F. P. voluerō.	nōluerō.	māluerō.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres. velim.[5]	nōlim.	mālim.
Imp. vellem.[6]	nōllem.	māllem.
Perf. voluerim.	nōluerim.	māluerim.
Plup. voluissem.	nōluissem.	māluissem.

---

[1] 'In defence of,' *prō.*

[2] The stem of *volŏ* is *vol*, with variable stem vowel, o, e, u.

[3] Nōlō is compounded of *nē* or *nōn* and *volŏ*; MĀLŌ, of *magis and volŏ.*

[4] Inflect the several tenses in full.

[5] *Velim* is inflected like *sim*, and *vellem* like *essem.*

[6] *Vellem* and *velle* are syncopated forms for *velerem, velere; e* is dropped
and *r* assimilated; *velerem, velrem, vellem; velere, velre, velle.* So *nōllem*
and *nōlle*, for *nōlerem* and *nōlere; māllem* and *mālle*, for *mālerem* and
mālere.

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. nōlī,	nōlīte.
Fut. nōlītō,	nōlītōte,
nōlītō,	nōluntō.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. velle.	nōlle.	mālle.
Perf. voluisse.	nōluisse.	māluisse.

PARTICIPLE.

Pres. volēns.	nōlēns.	

RULE VII. — Two Accusatives — Person and Thing.

374. Some verbs of ASKING, DEMANDING, TEACHING, and CONCEALING, admit two Accusatives — one of the *person* and the other of the *thing :*

Mē *sententiam* rogāvit, *he asked me* MY OPINION. Cic. Philosophia nōs *rēs* omnēs docuit, *philosophy has taught us all* THINGS. Cic. *Auxilia* rēgem ōrābant, *they asked* AUXILIARIES *from the king.* Liv. *Pācem* tē poscimus, *we demand* PEACE *of you.* Verg. Nōn tē cēlāvī *sermōnem, I did not conceal from you* THE CONVERSATION. Cic.

1. In the PASSIVE the PERSON becomes the subject, and the Accusative of the thing is retained:

Mē *sententiam* rogāvit, *he asked me* MY OPINION. Cic. Ego *sententiam* rogātus sum, *I was asked* MY OPINION. Cic. *Artēs* ēdoctus fuerat, *he had been taught* THE ARTS. Liv.

LESSON XCIII.

IRREGULAR VERBS. — *Volŏ, Nōlŏ,* AND *Mālŏ.* — RULE VII. — EXERCISES.

274. *Vocabulary.*

Auctor, ōris, *m.*	*author, advocate.*
Crēdō, ere, didī, ditum,	*to believe.* (Followed by the Dative
Cūr, *adv.*	*why ?* [of the *person* believed).
Exūrō, ere, ūssī, ūstum,	*to burn up, burn.*

Flāgitō, āre, āvī, ātum,	to demand.
Libenter, *adv.*	*willingly, gladly.*
Maleficium, iī, *n.*	*mischief, harm.*
Mālō, mālle, māluī,	*to prefer.*
Nōlō, nōlle, nōluī,	*to be unwilling, not to be willing,*
Perferō, ferre, tulī, lātum,	*to endure.* [*not to wish.*
Permaneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsum,	to continue to remain, to remain.
Ūnā, *adv.*	*together.*
Unde, *adv.*	*whence, from which place.*
Vĭdeor,[1] ērī, vīsus sum,	*to seem, appear.*
Volŏ, velle, voluī,	*to wish, to be willing.*

275. *Translate into English.*

1. Caesar dē summīs rēbus cum Ariovistō, rēge Germānōrum, agere volēbat.   2. Num bellī fortūnam tentāre vultis? Patriam dēfendere volumus. Nōlīte dubitāre[2] lībertātem dēfendere.   3. Galba saepius[3] fortūnam tentāre nōlēbat.   4. Faciam id quod vultis.   5. Catō esse bonus[4] volēbat.   6. Hī cīvēs vidērī bonī volunt.   7. Catō esse quam[5] vidērī bonus mālēbat.   8. Libenter hominēs id quod volunt crēdunt.   9. Auctōrēs[6] bellī esse nōlēbāmus.   10. Auctōrēs[6] bellī esse nōlēmus.   11. Caesar montem ā Labiēnō occupārī voluit. 12. Cōnsīdius timōre perterritus dīcit montem, quem Caesar ā Labiēnō occupārī voluerit, ab hostibus tenērī.

13. Per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnābuntur, proptereā quod aliud iter habent nūllum.   14. Imperātor nōluit eum locum, unde Helvētiī discēsserant, vacāre.   15. Dixērunt sibī esse in animō sine ūllō maleficiō iter facere.   16. Gallī servitūtem perferre nōlēbant. In lībertāte permanēre

---

[1] *Videor* is the passive of *videō*, ' to see,' but it is also used as a deponent verb with a special meaning.

[2] Literally, *be unwilling to hesitate ;* render, *do not hesitate,* — a common circumlocution in prohibitions instead of *nē dubitā*, a form used in poetry only; as in English, *do not hesitate,* instead of *hesitate not.*

[3] The comparative sometimes has the force of TOO.

[4] A *predicate adjective* after *esse*, agreeing with *Catō.*

[5] *Quam* after *mālō* may be rendered *rather than.*

[6] See 59, 362.

quam servitūtem perferre mālēbant. Reliquīs cīvitātibus persuāsērunt ut in lībertāte permanēre quam servitūtem perferre māllent. 17. Jūdicem sententiam rogābunt. 18. Cotīdiē Caesar Aeduōs frūmentum flāgitābat. 19. Helvētiī trēs cōpiārum partēs flūmen Ararim[1] trānsduxerant. 20. Rhodanus inter fīnēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum fluit. 21. Allobrogibus sēsē persuāsūrōs esse exīstimābant utī, oppidīs suīs vīcīsque exūstīs,[2] ūnā cum iīs proficiscerentur.

276. *Translate into Latin.*

1. You were unwilling to ask us our opinion.[8] 2. I do not understand why you wish to ask this man his opinion.[8] Will you tell me why you wish to ask this man his opinion? 3. How large an army is the general willing to lead across the river?[4] 4. He prefers to remain in camp rather than to lead his soldiers across this river,[4] although a bridge has been built[5] over it.

5. If the Aedui had not told Caesar that they would assist him, he would not have demanded grain of them.[8] 6. Are you not willing to do that which I demand of you?[8] 7. You preferred to ask his opinion,[6] in order that he might believe you to be his friend. 8. If you should persuade us to remain, what should you wish us to do? 9. Do not wish[7] that which cannot be done. 10. Those who are willing to try the fortune of war must not fear danger. 11. All of us[8] ought to be willing to defend our country.

---

[1] A few compounds of *trāns*, *circum*, and *ad*, admit two Accusatives, dependent, the one upon the verb, the other upon the preposition.

[2] See Suggestion XXIII., (3).

[8] See 273, 374.

[4] See 275, sentence 19.

[5] Use the Ablative Absolute.

[6] To ask his opinion = to ask him his opinion. 273, 374.

[7] See 275, sentence 2.

[8] In Latin, *nōs omnēs*, 'we all,' or simply *omnēs*, agreeing with the subject implied in the ending of the verb.

LESSON XCIV.

IRREGULAR VERBS. — *Fĭŏ* AND *Eŏ.* — RULES X.
AND XXI.

277. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

294. Fĭŏ,   fĭerī,   factus sum,   *to become, be made.*

INDICATIVE.

SINGULAR.   PLURAL.
Pres. fīŏ, fīs, fīt;   fīmus, fītis, fīunt.
Imp. fīēbam;[1]   fīēbāmus.
Fut. fīam;   fīēmus.
Perf. factus sum;   factī sumus.
Plup. factus eram;   factī erāmus.
F. P. factus erō;   factī erimus.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres. fīam;   fīāmus.
Imp. fierem;   fierēmus.
Perf. factus sim;   factī sīmus.
Plup. factus essem;   factī essēmus.

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. fī;   fīte.

INFINITIVE.   PARTICIPLE.
Pres. fierī.
Perf. factus esse.   *Perf.* factus.
Fut. factum irī.   *Ger.* faciendus.

295. Eŏ,   īre,   īvī,   itum,   *to go.*

INDICATIVE.

Pres. eŏ, īs, ĭt;   īmus, ītis, eunt.
Imp. ībam;[1]   ībāmus.
Fut. ībŏ;   ībimus.
Perf. īvī;   īvimus.
Plup. īveram;   īverāmus.
F. P. īverŏ;   īverĭmus.

---

[1] Inflect the several tenses in full.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres. eam;	eāmus.
Imp. īrem;	īrēmus.
Perf. īverim;	īverīmus.
Plup. īvissem;	īvissēmus.

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. ī;	īte.
Fut. ītō,	ītōte,
ītō;	euntō.

INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
Pres. īre.	*Pres.* iēns, *Gen.* euntis.
Perf. īvisse.	
Fut. itūrus esse.	*Fut.* itūrus.

GERUND.	SUPINE.
Gen. eundī,	
Dat. eundō,	
Acc. eundum,	*Acc.* itum,
Abl. eundō.	*Abl.* itū.

RULE X. — Accusative of Limit.

380. The PLACE TO WHICH is designated by the Accusative:[1]

I. Generally with a preposition — **ad** or **in**:

Legiōnēs *ad urbem* addūcit, *he is leading the legions* TO or TOWARD THE CITY. Cic. *In Asiam* redit, *he returns* INTO ASIA. Nep.

II. In names of towns without a preposition:

Nūntius *Rōmam* redit, *the messenger returns* TO ROME. Liv. Fūgit *Tarquiniōs, he fled* TO TARQUINII. Cic.

NOTE. — Verbs meaning *to collect, to come together,* etc., — conveniō, cōgō, convocō, etc. — are usually treated as verbs of *motion*, and thus take the Accusative, generally with a preposition; but verbs meaning *to place* — locō, collocō, pōnō, etc., — are usually treated as verbs of *rest*, and thus take the Ablative (185, 425), generally with a preposition:

---

[1] Originally the *place to which* was uniformly designated by the Accusative *without* a preposition. Names of towns have retained the original construction, while most other names of places have assumed a preposition.

Ūnum *in locum* convenīre, *to meet* IN *one* PLACE. Caes. *In* alterīus *manū* vītam pōnere, *to place one's life* IN THE HAND *of another.* Cic.

1. In the NAMES OF TOWNS the *Accusative* with ad occurs — (1) to denote *to, toward, in the direction of, into the vicinity of,* and (2) in contrast with *ā* or *ab :*

Ad Zamam pervēnit, *he came* TO THE VICINITY OF ZAMA. Sall. A Diāniō *ad* Sinōpēn, *from Dianium* TO SINOPE. Cic.

2. Like NAMES OF TOWNS are used —

1) The Accusatives domum, domōs, rūs :

Domum reductus est, *He was conducted* HOME. Cic. *Domōs* abductī, *led* TO THEIR HOMES. Liv. *Rūs* ēvolāre, *to hasten* INTO THE COUNTRY. Cic.

RULE XXI. — Place from which.

412. The PLACE FROM WHICH is denoted by the Ablative :

I. Generally *with a preposition* — **ā, ab, dē,** or **ex :**

Ab urbe proficīscitur, *he sets out* FROM THE CITY. Caes. Dē forō, *from the forum.* Cic. Ex Africā, *from* (out of) *Africa.* Liv.

II. In NAMES OF TOWNS *without a preposition :*[1]

Platōnem *Athēnīs* arcessīvit, *he summoned Plato* FROM ATHENS. Nep. Fūgit Corinthō, *he fled from Corinth.* Cic.

1. Many names of *islands,* and the Ablatives, *domō* and *rūre,* are used like names of towns:

Domō profūgit, *he fled* FROM HOME. Cic. *Dēlō* proficīscitur, *he proceeds* FROM DELOS. Cic.

LESSON XCV.

IRREGULAR VERBS. — *Fiō* AND *Eō.* — RULES X. AND XXI. — EXERCISES.

278. *Vocabulary.*

Caedēs, is, *f.*	*slaughter.*
Cibāria, ōrum, *n. pl.*	*food, provisions.*
Combūrō, ere, būssī, būstum,	*to burn up, burn.*
Efferō, ferre, extulī, ēlātum,	*to carry forth.*

[1] This was the original construction for all places alike.

Ēgredĭor, ī, grĕssus sum,	*to go out, go forth, depart.*
Eō, īre, īvī *or* iī, ĭtum,	*to go.*
Equester, tris, tre,	*equestrian;* equestre proelium, *a cavalry engagement.*
Exeō, īre, iī, ĭtum,[1]	*to go out, go forth, depart.*
Fīŏ, fĭerī, factus sum,	*to be made; to happen.*
Lutetia, ae, *f.*	*Lutetia,* a city in Gaul, now *Paris.*
Melodūnum, ī, *n.*	*Melodunum,* a town of the Senones.
Narbŏ, ōnis, *m.*	*Narbo,* a town in southern Gaul.
Nihilum, ī, *n.*	*nothing.*
Patior, ī, passus sum,	*to suffer, permit.*
Pedĭtātus, ūs, *m.*	*infantry.*
Plānĭtĭēs, ēī, *f.*	*plain.*
Praeterquam, *adv.*	*except.*
Tolōsa, ae, *f.*	*Tolosa,* a town in southern Gaul.
Trānseō, īre, iī,[1] ĭtum,	*to go over, cross.*
Vigilia, ae, *f.*	*watch.*[2]

279. *Translate into English.*

1. Helvĕtiī ē fīnĭbus suīs exībant. Ē fīnĭbus suīs exīre cōnābantur. Post Orgetorĭgis mortem nihilō[3] minus ē fīnĭbus suīs exīre cōnābantur. 2. Id quod cōnstĭtuērunt facere cōnantur, ut ē fīnĭbus suīs exeant. 3. Haec omnia contrā lēgem facta sunt. 4. Illud quod faciendum prīmum fuit factum est. 5. Id quod vultis nūllō modō fĭerī potest. 6. Nōlīte id velle, quod fĭerī nōn potest. 7. Caesar suum equĭtātum contrā hostem īre jubet. 8. Omnēs legĭōnēs contrā hostem ībant. 9. Fit equestre proelium in plānĭtĭē; Caesar legĭōnēs prō castrīs cōnstĭtuit, nē qua irruptĭō ab hostium pedĭtātū fĭat; hostēs fugae sēsē mandant; fit māgna caedēs; nōnnūllī fossam trānsīre cōnantur.

10. Divitiacus auxiliī rogandī causā Rōmam[4] ad senātum profectus est. 11. Labĭēnus cum quattuor legĭōnĭbus Lu-

---

[1] The compounds of *eō* take the contracted form *iī* in the perfect.

[2] Among the Romans, the night, from sunset to sunrise, was divided into four *watches* of equal length.

[3] Ablative of Difference: *less by nothing.* Render, *none the less.*

[4] See 277, 380.

tetiam proficiscitur.   12. Ē castrīs tertiā vigiliā ēgrēssus
Melodūnum vēnit.   13. Gallī per suōs fīnēs nōs īre pa-
tientur.   14. Imperātōrem dē hīs rēbus certiōrem faciāmus.
15. Ubī dē hīs rēbus certiōrēs factī sunt, prīvāta aedificia
incendērunt.   16. Lēgātōs, nōbilissimōs cīvitātis, ad rēgem
mīsērunt.   17. Frūmentum omne, praeterquam¹ quod sēcum
portātūrī erant, combūssērunt.   18. Suēbī, quī ad rīpās Rhēnī
vēnerant, domum revertērunt.   19. Dux Rōmānus multōs
virōs fortēs Tolōsā et Narbōne² ēvocāvit.   20. Helvētiī
trium mēnsium cibāria sibī quemque domō³ efferre jūssērunt.

280. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Orgetorix persuaded the Helvetii to go forth from their
territory.   2. We shall be informed what they carried from
home with them.   3. We shall go to Rome, and remain there
the whole winter.   4. We shall send you letters often, that
you may be informed in what direction we are going.³
We have heard that you say that you have not been informed
by us in what direction we are going.   Do you know in
what direction we have gone?

5. Caesar was intending to go from Italy to Geneva with
five legions.   6. Having accomplished⁴ this, Caesar orders
the Helvetii to return to their homes.   7. Do you prefer to
go home rather than to remain at Rome?⁵   8. The Helvetii
thought that they should persuade the Sequani to suffer
them to go through their territory.   9. Caesar thought that
peace should not be made with the Helvetii, unless they re-
turned home.   10. What did the Helvetii attempt to do
after the death of Orgetorix?   They attempted to persuade
their neighbors to burn all their towns.

---

¹ The construction with *praeterquam* is elliptical; we may supply after
it *id frūmentum nōn combūssērunt.* Of course the ellipsis need not be
supplied in translation.   ² See **277, 412.**
   ³ What mood must be used in an Indirect Question ?
   ⁴ Use the Ablative Absolute.
   ⁵ See **185, 425.**

LESSON XCVI.

**IMPERSONAL VERBS. — REVIEW OF RULE XLIII. —
RULE XIII.**

281. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

298. Impersonal Verbs correspond to the English Impersonal with *it : licet*, it is lawful; *oportet*, it behooves.[1] They are conjugated like other verbs, but are used only in the third person singular of the Indicative and Subjunctive, and in the Present and Perfect Infinitive :

Decet, decuit, *it becomes.*	Oportet, oportuit, *it behooves.*
Miseret, miseritum est, *it excites pity.*[2]	Paenitet, paenituit, *it causes regret.*[2]

300. Generally Impersonal are several verbs which designate the changes of the weather, or the operations of nature :

Fulminat, it lightens; *grandinat,* it hails; *lūcēscit,* it grows light; *pluit,* it rains; *rōrat,* dew falls; *tonat,* it thunders.

301. Many other verbs are often used impersonally :

Accidit, it happens; *appāret,* it appears; *cōnstat,* it is evident; *contigit,* it happens; *dēlectat,* it delights; *dolet,* it grieves; *interest,* it concerns; *juvat,* it delights; *patet,* it is plain; *placet,* it pleases; *praestat,* it is better; *rēfert,* it concerns.

1. In the PASSIVE VOICE intransitive verbs can be used only impersonally. The participle is then neuter:

Mihī crēditur, it is credited to me, I am believed ; *tibī crēditur,* you are believed; *crēditum est,* it was believed; *certātur,* it is contended; *curritur,* there is running, people run; *pūgnātur,* it is fought, they, we, etc., fight; *vīvitur,* we, you, they live.

2. The PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION (266, 234) is often used impersonally. The participle is then neuter:

Mihī scrībendum est, I must write; *tibī scrībendum est,* you must write; *illī scrībendum est,* he must write.

---

[1] The subject is generally an infinitive or clause, but may be a noun or pronoun denoting a *thing*, but not a *person: hōc fierī oportet*, that this should be done is necessary.

[2] *Mē miseret,* I pity; *mē paenitet,* I repent.

RULE XIII.—Two Datives—To which and For which.

390. Two Datives — the OBJECT TO WHICH and the
OBJECT or END FOR WHICH — occur with a few verbs:

I. With INTRANSITIVE and PASSIVE verbs:

Malō est homĭnibus avārĭtia, avarice is AN EVIL TO MEN *(literally
is* TO MEN FOR AN EVIL*). Cic. Est mihĭ cūrae, it is* A CARE TO ME.
Cic. Domus dēdecŏrī domĭnō fit, the house becomes A DISGRACE TO
ITS OWNER. *Cic. Vēnit Attĭcĭs auxĭliō, he came to the assistance of
the Athenians. Nep. Hŏc illī tribuēbātur ignāviae, this was imputed
to him as cowardice (for cowardice). Cic. Eīs subsidiō missus est,
he was sent to them as aid. Nep.*

II. With TRANSITIVE verbs in connection with the ACCUSATIVE:

Quīnque cohortēs castrīs praesidiō relĭquit, he left five cohorts FOR
THE DEFENCE OF THE CAMP *(literally* TO THE CAMP FOR A DEFENCE*).
Caes. Perĭclēs agrōs suōs dōnō rēī pūblĭcae dedit, Pericles gave his
lands to the republic as a present (literally, for a present). Just.*

282.　*Vocabulary.*

Accĭdō, ere, ī,	*to fall to, befall ;* accidit, *it happens,*
Athēnae, ārum, *f. pl.*	*Athens.*　　　　　[*comes to pass.*
Athēniēnsis, is, *m. and f.*	*an Athenian.*
Attĭcus, ī, *m.*	*Atticus,* a Roman name.
Cōĭciō,[1] ere, cōjēcī, jectum,	*to cast, hurl, throw.*
Difficĭlis, e,	*difficult.*
Impedīmentum, ī, *n.*	*hinderance, embarrassment;* impedī-
	menta, *pl., hinderances ; baggage*
	(*of an army*).　　　　[*against.*
Īnferō, ferre, intulī, illātum,	*to bear · into,· bear against, wage*
Īnstō, āre, stitī,	*to be near, be at hand.*
Lūna, ae, *f.*	*moon.*
Mētior, īrī, mēnsus sum,	*to measure, allot.*
Multō,[2] *adv.*	*much, far.*
Novissĭmus, a, um, *sup. of*	
ŋovus,	*newest;* novissimum agmen, *the rear.*
Oportet, ēre, uit,	*it behooves, is proper ; one ought.*

---

[1] Pronounced as if spelled *cŏjiciō*.

[2] Originally an Ablative of Difference; literally, *by much.*

Ōrnāmentum, ī, *n.*   *ornament, honor.*
Plēnus, a, um,   *full.*
Subsidium, iī, *n.*   *aid, support, reënforcement.*
Tēlum, ī, *n.*   *dart; weapon.*
Titus, ī, *m.*   *Titus,* a Roman name.

283. *Translate into English.*

1. Caesarī nūntiātum est, equitēs Ariovistī lapidēs tēlaque in nostrōs cōicere. 2. Helvētiīs est in animō per agrum Aeduōrum iter facere. Caesarī nūntiātur, Helvētiīs esse in animō per agrum Aeduōrum iter facere. 3. Germānōs trāns Rhēnum incolere dictum est. 4. Eā nocte accidit ut esset lūna plēna. 5. Helvētiī undique locī nātūrā continēbantur. Hāc rē fīēbat ut minus facile fīnitimīs bellum īnferre pōssent. 6. Frūmentum mīlitibus mētīrī oportet. Diēs īnstat, quō diē[1] frūmentum mīlitibus mētīrī oportēbit. 7. Ea rēs Gallīs[2] māgnō ad pūgnam erat impedīmentō.[2] 8. Legiōnēs duae in novissimō agmine praesidiō[2] impedīmentīs[2] erant.

9. Erant itinera duo, quibus Helvētiī domō exīre pōssent; ūnum[3] angustum et difficile; mōns autem altissimus impendēbat; alterum,[3] multō facilius. 10. Atticus Athēnīs ita vīxit, ut Athēniēnsibus esset cārissimus. 11. Amīcitia populī Rōmānī mihī[2] ōrnāmentō[2] est. 12. Amīcitiam populī Rōmānī mihī[2] ōrnāmentō[2] et praesidiō[2] esse oportet. 13. Ariovistus dīxit amīcitiam populī Rōmānī sibī[2] ōrnāmentō[2] et praesidiō[2] esse oportēre. 14. Lēgātīs respondeāmus nōs diem ad dēlīberandum sūmptūrōs esse. 15. Titus Labiēnus decimam legiōnem subsidiō[2] nostrīs[2] mīsit. 16. Gallī oppidum Noviodūnum, nē cui[4] esset ūsuī[2] Rōmānīs,[2] incendērunt.

[1] *Quō* is here an adjective agreeing with *diē.* The antecedent is usually expressed but once; here *diē* may be omitted in rendering.
[2] See 281, 390.
[3] Supply *erat.*
[4] *Cui* is here the indefinite pronoun, agreeing with *ūsuī.*

284. *Translate into Latin.*

1. In the towns of the Gauls were many things which were of great use to the Romans.[1]   2. The friendship of the general ought to be a safeguard to us.[1]   3. We should all live in such a way, as not to be a grief to our friends.[1]   4. It often happens, that what ought to be done is not easy to do.   5. It is our intention to go to Geneva and to Rome[2] this summer.

6. The friendship of the good is always an honor to us.[1]   7. It was announced to Caesar that the Helvetii had set out from their territory, and that they were attempting to march through the province.   8. It is stated by Caesar that the Helvetii were the bravest of the Gauls.   9. It was the intention of Orgetorix to obtain possession of the sovereignty[3] of all Gaul.   10. Let soldiers remain, to be a garrison to the city.   11. The horsemen of Ariovistus hurled stones and darts upon the Romans.   12. Your friendship ought to be a safeguard to me.[1]

LESSON XCVII.

IMPERSONAL VERBS. — RULE XX.

285. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

RULE XX. — Accusative and Genitive.

409. The ACCUSATIVE of the PERSON and the GENITIVE of the THING are used with a few transitive verbs:

I. With verbs of *reminding, admonishing :*

Tē *amicitiae* commonefacit, *he reminds you* OF FRIENDSHIP. Cic. Mīlitēs necessitātis monet, *he reminds the soldiers of the necessity.* Ter.

II. With verbs of *accusing, convicting, acquitting :*

Virōs *sceleris* arguis, *you accuse men* OF CRIME. Cic.   Levitātis eum convincere, *to convict him of levity.* Cic.   Absolvere injūriae eum, *to acquit him of injustice.* Cic.

---

[1] See 281, 390.   [2] See 277, 380.   [3] See 258, 421.

III. With *miseret, paenitet, pudet, taedet,* and *piget :*

Eōrum nōs miseret, *we pity* THEM (it moves our pity OF THEM). Cic. Cōnsilīī mē paenitet, *I repent of my purpose.* Cic. Mē stultitiae meae pudet, *I am ashamed of my folly.* Cic.

NOTE 1.—The *Genitive of the Thing* designates, with verbs of *reminding,* etc., that to which the attention is called; with verbs of *accusing,* etc., the crime, charge; and with *miseret, paenitet,* etc., the object which produces the feeling; see examples.

NOTE 2. — The personal verbs included under this rule retain the *Genitive* in the *Passive :*

Accūsātus est *prōditiōnis, he was accused* OF TREASON. Nep.

286. *Vocabulary.*

Ācriter, *adv.*	*sharply, severely.*
Anceps, cipitis,	*double, twofold ; undecided.*
Beneficium, iī, *n.*	*benefit, favor.*
Celeritās, ātis, *f.*	*celerity, speed.*
Commūnis, e,	*common;* commūnis rēs, *the common interest.*
Incrēdibilis, e,	*incredible.* [*mon interest.*
Ineō, īre, iī, itum,	*to go into, enter upon, begin, under- to*
Īnsimulō, āre, āvī, ātum,	*to accuse.* [*take.*
Lēnitās, ātis, *f.*	*smoothness, gentleness.*
Licet, ēre, uit,	*it is lawful, is permitted; one may.*
Necesse,[1]	*necessary.*
Paenitet, ēre, uit,	*it causes regret;* mē paenitet, *I*
Petō, ere, īvī *or* iī, ītum,	*to seek, request, ask.* [*repent.*
Prōditiō, ōnis, *f.*	*treason.*
Prōsequor, ī, secūtus sum,	*to follow up, pursue.*
Prōspiciō, ere, spēxī, spēctum,	*to look forward ; to look out for.* (In the latter sense followed by the Dative.)

287. *Translate into English.*

1. Ancipitī proeliō diū pūgnātum est.[2] Ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum fortiter pūgnātum est. Ad multam noctem etiam

---

[1] *Necesse* is an adjective used only in the Nominative and Accusative Neuter Singular.

[2] Observe in this sentence and the others in this Lesson, that an impersonal verb can not be rendered literally. Thus, *diū pūgnātum est* would become in English, *a long battle was fought, the fighting went on for a long time.*

ad impedīmenta pūgnātum est. 2. Proeliō equestrī inter duās aciēs contendēbātur. 3. Caesar Titum Labiēnum cum legiōnibus tribus hostēs prōsequī jūssit : ad novissimum agmen ventum est. Eī ad quōs ventum erat fortiter impe- tum Rōmānōrum sustinuērunt. 4. Rĕī frūmentāriae prō- spiciendum est. 5. Caesar rĕī frūmentāriae prōspiciendum esse exīstimābat. 6. Dē commūnī rē in colloquiō dīcendum est. 7. Vercingetorix prōditiōnis īnsimulātus est. 8. "Haec," dixit Vercingetorix, "ā mē beneficia habētis, quem prōdi- tiōnis īnsimulātis."

9. Flūmen est Arar, quod in Rhodanum īnfluit incrēdibilī lēnitāte, ita ut oculīs in utram partem fluat jūdicārī nōn pos- sit. Caesar per explōrātōrēs certior factus est, trēs jam cōpiārum partēs Helvētiōs id flūmen trānsduxisse. 10. Gallōs hūjus cōnsiliī paenitēbat. 11. Gallī saepe cōnsilia ineunt quōrum eōs paenitet. 12. Saepe cōnsilia inīmus quō- rum nōs paenitēre necesse est. 13. Nōbīs concilium in diem certam [1] indīcere licet. 14. Vōbīs concilium in diem certam indīcere liceat. 15. Gallī petiērunt utī sibī concilium totīus Galliae in diem certam indīcere licēret. 16. Mīlitēs eā [2] celeritāte iērunt ut hostēs impetum legiōnum sustinēre nōn pōssent.

288. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The town was reached [3] by us an hour before sunset. 2. A long and severe battle took place [3] near the camp. 3. I have to speak [3] of things which you ought to wish to hear. 4. It should be stated [3] that the Gauls already repented of their plan. 5. Caesar told the Gauls that they might [3] ap- point a council.

6. You cannot bring the war to an end, but you may [3] repent of your plans. 7. It cannot be ascertained what the enemy intend to do. 8. It was necessary to provide [3] for

---

[1] Diēs, usually *masculine*, is *feminine* when it signifies a day *fixed* or *appointed*. [2] Literally, *that;* render, SUCH.
[3] In all these cases express the thought impersonally in Latin.

the protection of the camp. 9. Orgetorix (when) accused of treason, was compelled to plead his cause in chains. 10. Crimes should be repented of. 11. The rear of the enemy was reached, and a severe battle took place. 12. Fighting will go on from midday to sunset. 13. As so many have been slain, we may judge how severe a battle has been fought.

LESSON XCVIII.

REVIEW OF RULES LIII., LIV., AND LV. — EXERCISE IN READING AT SIGHT.

289. *Read at Sight, examine carefully, and translate into English.*

Post Orgetorigis mortem nihilō minus Helvētiī id quod cōnstituerant facere cōnābantur, ut ē fīnibus suīs[1] exīrent. Ubī sē[1] ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia, vīcōs, prīvāta aedificia incendērunt; frūmentum omne, praeterquam quod sēcum portātūrī erant, combūssērunt, ut parātiōrēs ad omnia perīcula essent; trium mēnsium cibāria sibī quemque domō efferre jūssērunt. Persuāsērunt fīnitimīs utī, oppidīs suīs vīcīsque exūstīs, ūnā cum iīs proficiscerentur.

Erant itinera duo, quibus ē fīnibus suīs exīre pōssent: ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, inter montem Jūram et flūmen Rhodanum, mōns autem altissimus impendēbat; alterum per prōvinciam nostram, multō facilius. Allobrogibus sēsē persuāsūrōs esse exīstimābant, ut per suōs fīnēs eōs īre paterentur. Ob eās causās per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnātī sunt.

Caesar, hīs rēbus audītīs, mātūrāvit ab urbe proficiscī et māximīs itineribus in Galliam contendit. Ubī dē ējus ad-

---

[1] The pupil should exercise especial care in this Exercise to determine the *antecedents* of the pronouns which occur in it, particularly of *suus* and *sui*.

ventū Helvētiī certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mīsērunt, quī dīcerent, sibī esse in animō iter per prōvinciam facere. Caesar lēgātīs respondit, diem sē ad dēlīberandum sūmptūrum.

290. *Translate into Latin.*

1. I shall take time for deliberation. 2. I wish to inform you of my arrival. 3. I send you a messenger to inform you of my arrival. 4. We intend to march through your country without (doing) any harm. 5. I intend to march through the province, because I have no other route. 6. Ambassadors were sent to Caesar to say what the Helvetii intended to do.

7. After hearing the words[1] of our friends, we shall set out from this city, and hasten home. 8. We attempted to set out before. 9. I wish you to try to tell me what you intend to do.[2] 10. Do you think that you will persuade me to tell you what I intended to do?[2] 11. Burn your towns and villages, and set out together with us. 12. You will never persuade us to set fire to our towns. 13. Let us always be prepared for danger. 14. We have burned all our grain, except what we carried with us. 15. Let each one take with him from home provisions for six months. 16. How many routes are there by which we can go?

LESSON XCIX.

GERUNDS, GERUNDIVES, AND PARTICIPLES. — REVIEW OF RULES LIX., LX., AND XXXII.

291. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

I. GERUNDS.

541. The GERUND is a verbal noun which shares so largely the character of a verb that it governs oblique cases, and takes adverbial modifiers:

---

[1] Use the Ablative Absolute.
[2] Observe that this is an Indirect Question.

Jūs vocandī[1] senātum, *the right of summoning the senate.* Liv. Beātē vīvendī[1] cupiditās, *the desire of living happily.* Cic.

542. The GERUND has four cases — the *Genitive, Dative, Accusative,* and *Ablative* — used in general like the same cases of nouns. Thus —

I. The GENITIVE OF THE GERUND is used with nouns and adjectives:

Ars vīvendī, *the art of living.* Cic. Studiōsus erat audiendī, *he was desirous of hearing.* Nep. Cupidus tē audiendī, *desirous of hearing you.* Cic. Artem vēra āc falsa dījūdicandī, *the art of distinguishing true things from false.* Cic.

II. The DATIVE OF THE GERUND is used with a few verbs and adjectives which regularly govern the Dative:

Cum solvendō nōn essent, *since they were not able to pay.* Cic. Aqua ūtilis est bibendō, *water is useful for drinking.* Plin.

III. The ACCUSATIVE OF THE GERUND is used after a few prepositions:[2]

Ad discendum prōpēnsī sumus, *we are inclined to learn* (to learning). Cic. Inter lūdendum, *in* or *during play.* Quint.

IV. The ABLATIVE OF THE GERUND is used (1) as *Ablative of Means,* and (2) with *prepositions:*

Mēns discendō alitur, *the mind is nourished by learning.* Cic. Salūtem hominibus dandō, *by giving safety to men.* Cic. Virtūtēs cernuntur in agendō, *virtues are seen in action.* Cic. Dēterrēre ā scribendo, *to deter from writing.* Cic.

II. GERUNDIVES.

543. The GERUNDIVE, like other participles, agrees with nouns and pronouns:

Inita sunt cōnsilia urbis dēlendae, *plans have been formed for destroying the city* (of the city to be destroyed). Cic. Numa sacerdōtibus creandīs animum adjēcit, *Numa gave his attention to the appointment of priests.* Liv.

---

[1] *Vocandī* as a Genitive is governed by *jūs,* and yet it governs the Accusative *senātum; vivendī* is governed by *cupiditās,* and yet it takes the adverbial modifier *beātē.*

[2] Most frequently after *ad;* sometimes after *inter* and *ob;* very rarely after *ante, circā,* and *in.*

544. The GERUNDIVE CONSTRUCTION may be used —

1. In place of a *Gerund with a direct object.* It then takes the case of the Gerund whose place it supplies:

Libīdŏ ējus videndī (= libīdŏ eum videndī), *the desire of seeing him* (literally, *of him to be seen*). Cic. Platōnis audiendī (= Platōnem audiendī) studiōsus, *fond of hearing Plato.* Cic. Legendīs ōrātōribus (= legendō ōrātōrēs), *by reading the orators.* Cic.

2. In the *Dative* and in the *Ablative with a preposition:*

Locum oppidō condendō cēpērunt, *they selected a place for founding a city.* Liv. Tempora dēmetendīs frūctibus accommodāta, *seasons suitable for gathering fruits.* Cic. Brūtus in līberandā patriā est interfectus, *Brutus was slain in liberating his country.* Cic.

III. PARTICIPLES.

548. The PARTICIPLE is a verbal adjective which governs the same cases as the verb:

Animus sē nōn vidēns alia cernit, *the mind, though it does not see itself* (literally, *not seeing itself*), *discerns other things.* Cic.

549. PARTICIPLES are often used —

1. To denote, TIME, CAUSE, MANNER, MEANS:

Platŏ scrībēns mortuus est, *Plato died while writing.* Cic. Itūrī in proelium canunt, *they sing when about to go into battle.* Tac. Sōl oriēns diem cōnficit, *the sun by its rising causes the day.* Cic. Mīlitēs renūntiant sē perfidiam veritōs revertisse, *the soldiers report that they returned because they feared perfidy* (having feared). Caes.

2. To denote CONDITION or CONCESSION:

Mendācī hominī nē vērum quidem dīcentī crēdere nōn solēmus, *we are not wont to believe a liar, even if he speaks the truth.* Cic. Scrīpta tua jam diū exspēctāns, nōn audeō tamen flāgitāre, *though I have been long expecting your work, yet I do not dare to ask for it.* Cic.

3. To denote PURPOSE:

Perseus rediit, bellī cāsum tentātūrus, *Perseus returned to try* (about to try) *the fortune of war.* Liv. Attribuit nōs trucīdandōs Cethēgō, *he assigned us to Cethegus to slaughter.* Cic.

4. To supply the place of RELATIVE CLAUSES:

Omnēs aliud agentēs aliud simulantēs, improbī sunt, *all who do one thing and pretend another are dishonest.* Cic.

5. To supply the place of PRINCIPAL CLAUSES:

Clāssem dēvictam cēpit, *he conquered and took the fleet* (took the fleet conquered). Nep.

550. The TENSES OF THE PARTICIPLE — *Present, Perfect,* and *Future* — denote only *relative* time. They accordingly represent the time respectively as *present, past,* and *future* relatively to that of the principal verb:

Oculus sē nōn vidēns alia cernit, *the eye, though it does not see itself* (not seeing itself), *discerns other things.* Cic. Platŏ scrībēns mortuus est, *Plato died while writing.* Cic. Ūva mātūrāta dulcescit, *the grape, when it has ripened* (having ripened), *becomes sweet.* Cic. Sapiēns bona semper placitūra laudat, *the wise man praises blessings which will always please* (being about to please). Sen.

LESSON C.

GERUNDS, GERUNDIVES, AND PARTICIPLES. — REVIEW OF RULES LIX., LX., XXXII. — EXERCISES.

292. *Vocabulary.*

Accipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptum,	*to receive.*
Aggredior, ī, grēssus sum,	*to attack.*
Ārdeō, ēre, ārsī, ārsum,	*to burn, to be ardent, be eager.*
Concidō, ere, ī,	*to fall.*
Concīdō, ere, cīdī, cīsum,	*to cut down, destroy, slay.*
Cōnsīdō, ere, sēdī, sēssum,	*to settle, post one's self, encamp.*
Crūdēliter, *adv.*	*cruelly.*
Dēpopulor, ārī, ātus sum,	*to ravage, lay waste.*
Excruciō, āre, āvī, ātum,	*to torture.*
Frūmentātiō, ōnis, *f.*	*foraging, provisioning.*
Grātulor, ārī, ātus sum,	*to congratulate; to thank.* (Followed by the Dative.)
Initium, iī, *n.*	*beginning.*
Īnsequor, ī, secūtus sum,	*to pursue, follow.*
Moror, ārī, ātus sum,	*to delay, tarry.*
Perfacilis, e,	*very easy.*
Perveniō, īre, vēnī, ventum,	*to arrive, come.*
Sepultūra, ae, *f.*	*burial, interment.*

Subveniō, īre, vēnī, ventum,   *to come to the help of, succor, aid.*
                                      (Followed by the Dative.)
Trīduum, ī, n.   *space of three days, three days.*
Ulcīscor, ī, ultus sum,   *to avenge one's self on, punish ; to*
                                  take vengeance.

293. *Translate into English.*

1. Dīvitiacus auxiliī petendī causā Rōmam ad senātum profectus est. 2. Animī Rōmānōrum ad ulcīscendum ārdēbant. 3. Titūrius in illō locō hiemandī causā cōnsēderat. 4. Reperiēbat in quaerendō Caesar initium fugae factum esse ā Dumnorige. 5. Caesar equitātum ad eam regiōnem dēpopulandam mittit. 6. Fīnitimī lēgātōs ad Aeduōs mittunt subsidium rogātum. 7. Prīncipēs Aeduōrum ad Caesarem veniunt ōrātum ut cīvitātī subveniat. 8. Tōtīus ferē Galliae lēgātī,[1] prīncipēs cīvitātum, ad Caesarem grātulātum[2] convēnērunt.

9. Caesar ē castrīs profectus ad eam partem pervēnit, quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat. 10. Caesar Helvētiōs aggrēssus[3] māgnam eōrum partem concīdit. 11. Gallī dīcunt perfacile esse factū frūmentātiōnibus Rōmānōs prohibēre. 12. Centuriō, multīs vulneribus acceptīs,[4] pūgnāns[5] concidit. 13. Legiō decima Gallōs īnsequentēs[6] tardāvit. 14. Cīvēs Rōmānōs crūdēliter excruciātōs[3] interfēcērunt. 15. Caesar, hōc proeliō factō, pontem in Arare faciendum cūrat. 16. Rōmānī, propter sepultūram occīsōrum trīduum morātī, hostēs sequī nōn potuerant.

294. *Translate into Latin.*

1. One legion of Caesar's army retarded for three hours the enemy (who were) pursuing. 2. After a beginning of

---

[1] Literally, 'ambassadors *of* Gaul'; render, 'FROM Gaul.'

[2] Supply in English the object, *him.*

[3] See Suggestion XX., 5.   [4] See Suggestion XXIII., (2).

[5] In English the present participle in such a connection is usually accompanied by *while.*   [6] See Suggestion XX., 2.

flight had been made[1] by one division of the enemy, the rest were easily conquered.   3. The Romans defeated the enemy (who were) not informed of their approach.   4. Let us send to our friends, to ask aid against those who have come for the purpose of ravaging our lands.   5. To conquer the brave and the free is not an easy thing to do.

6. For the sake of crossing the river more easily, Caesar had a bridge built over the Rhine.   7. Our soldiers ought to be prepared for setting out from camp, and for fighting with the enemy.   8. In asking aid, the Aedui said that they were eager to take vengeance.[2]   9. For defending the bridge which had been made, Caesar stationed soldiers on each bank of the river.   10. The Gallic chieftains said to Caesar: "We have been sent to you by our states to congratulate you."[3]

LESSON CI.

AGREEMENT OF NOUNS. — NOMINATIVE AND VOCATIVE. — REVIEW OF RULES I., II., III., AND IV.

295. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

1. Rule I.   See **59**, 362.   3. Rule III.   See **20**, 368.

2. Rule II.   See **31**, 363.   4. Rule IV.   See **190**, 369.

296. *Vocabulary.*

Adficĭō, ere, fēcī, fectum,	to affect, visit. [Gaul.
Aduātucī, ōrum, m. pl.	the Aduatuci, a tribe of northern
Aeduus, ī, m.	an Aeduan, one of the Aedui.
Bibracte, is,[4] n.	Bibracte, the chief town of the Aedui.
Cassius, iī, m.	Cassius, a Roman name.
Crassus, ī, m.	Crassus, a Roman name.
Gnaeus, ī, m.	Gnaeus, a Roman name.

---

[1] Use the Ablative Absolute.
[2] Render, 'for (*ad*) taking vengeance.'
[3] See **54**, 384.
[4] Names of towns in *e* have *e* in the Ablative Singular.

11

Inimīcus, ī, *m.*	*enemy.*[1]
Intereō, īre, iī, itum,	*to perish.*
Īrācundus, a, um,	*passionate, violent.*
Lacrimō, āre, āvī, ātum,	*to weep.*
Litavīcus, ī, *m.*	*Litavicus,* an Aeduan chieftain.
Lūcius, iī, *m.*	*Lucius,* a Roman name.
Octōdecim,[2] *indeclinable,*	*eighteen.*
Passus, ūs, *m.*	*pace;* mīlle passūs, *a thousand paces, a* (Roman) *mile;* duo mīlia passuum, *two miles;* see **247,** foot-note.
Pompēius, iī, *m.*	*Pompey,* a celebrated Roman general and statesman.
Quō, *adv.*	*whither, to what place?*
Subitō, *adv.*	*suddenly.*
Supplicium, iī, *n.*	*punishment.*
Victōria, ae, *f.*	*Victoria.*

297. *Translate into English.*

1. Ariovistus, rēx Germānōrum, quī tertiam partem agrī Sēquanī occupāvit, homō est barbarus, īrācundus, temerārius. 2. Vesontiō est oppidum māximum Sēquanōrum. Ariovistus cum suīs omnibus cōpiīs ad occupandum Vesontiōnem contendēbat. 3. Litavicus Aeduus, convocātīs subitō mīlitibus, lacrimāns dīxit: "Quō proficiscimur, mīlitēs? Omnis noster equitātus interiit; prīncipēs cīvitātis interfectī sunt." 4. Is pāgus, quī appellābātur Tigurīnus, Lūcium Cassium cōnsulem interfēcerat, et ējus exercitum sub jugum mīserat. 5. Caesar prīncipum līberōs obsidēs[3] ad sē addūcī jūssit.

6. Gnaeō Pompēiō et Mārcō Crassō cōnsulibus[4] Germānī Rhēnum trānsiērunt. 7. Helvētiī timōre perterritī sunt nē suppliciō adficerentur. 8. Dīvitiacus, Dumnorigis frāter, addūcī nōn potuit ut līberōs suōs obsidēs daret. 9. Caesar ā Bibracte, oppidō Aeduōrum, mīlibus passuum octōdecim

---

[1] *Inimīcus* is a *personal foe,* while *hostis* is a *public enemy.*

[2] *Octōdecim* is less common than *duodēvigintī.*

[3] *Obsidēs* is a predicate noun after *addūcī;* render, *as hostages.*

[4] When two nouns are in the Ablative Absolute, one is a predicate noun. Here the predicate noun *cōnsulibus* is plural, because it is connected with *two* singular nouns. Render, *in the consulship of,* etc.

aberat. 10. Eō cōnsiliō domōs suās Helvētiī relīquerant, ut
Galliae bellum īnferrent. 11. Caesar Aeduōs, frātrēs[1] ab
senātū appellātōs, in servitūte vidēbat tenērī. 12. Aduātucī,
dē quibus suprā scrīpsimus, sua omnia in ūnum oppidum
ēgregiē nātūrā mūnītum contulērunt.

298. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The wall of the town was high, and the moat very wide
and very deep. 2. Alesia was a town excellently fortified
by art. 3. Victoria, a woman of great virtue and wisdom,
has been for many years queen of Britain. 4. Who was
king of those Germans who dwelt in Gaul at the arrival of
Caesar? 5. Of which tribe of the Gauls was the chief
magistrate called Vergobretus? 6. It was a great honor to a
nation,[2] to be called friends or brothers by the Roman senate.

7. Caesar had demanded hostages with this purpose, — to
deter[3] their friends from conspiring[4] against the Romans.
8. We are told[5] by Caesar, that Pompey and Crassus were
consuls at that time. 9. Magistrates and judges ought never
to be rash and passionate. 10. To determine whether men
are our friends or our enemies, is not always an easy thing to
do. 11. Do you know who was[6] the bravest general in the
last war?

LESSON CII.

ACCUSATIVE. — REVIEW OF RULES V., VI., VII., IX.,
AND X. — RULES VIII. AND XI.

299. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

1. Rule V. See **25**, 371.   3. Rule VII. See **273**, 374.
2. Rule VI. See **153**, 373.   4. Rule IX. See **98**, 379.
        5. Rule X. See **277**, 380.

---

[1] *Frātrēs* is a predicate noun after *appellātōs*, agreeing with *Aeduōs*.
[2] See **281**, 390.   [3] See **297**, sentence 10.
[4] Use *nē* with *the Subjunctive.*   [5] Render, *it is told to us.*
[6] What mood will you use? See **127**, 529.

RULE VIII.—Accusative of Specification.

378. A verb or an adjective may take an Accusative to define its application :

Capita vēlāmur, *we have* OUR HEADS *veiled* (are veiled as to OUR HEADS, *or* have veiled OUR HEADS). Verg. Nūbe *umerōs* amictus, *with* HIS SHOULDERS *enveloped in a cloud.* Hor. Mīles frāctus *membra* labōre, *the soldier with* LIMBS *shattered with labor* (broken as to his limbs). Hor. Aenēās *ōs* deō similis, *Aeneas like a god in* APPEARANCE. Verg.

1. In a strict sense, the *Accusative of Specification* generally specifies the part to which the action or quality particularly belongs.

2. In a freer sense, this Accusative includes the adverbial use of *partem, nihil, rēs,* and of many neuter pronouns and adjectives — *hŏc, illud, id, quid, multum, summum, cētera, reliqua,* etc.

Māximam *partem* lacte vīvunt, *they live mostly* (as to the largest PART) *upon milk.* Caes. Aliās *rēs* est improbus, IN *other* THINGS (as to the rest) *he is unprincipled.* Plaut. Quaerit, *quid* possint, *he inquires* HOW *powerful they are.* Caes.

RULE XI.—Accusative in Exclamations.

381. The Accusative, either with or without an interjection, may be used in exclamations :

Heu mē miserum, AH ME *unhappy !* Cic. *Mē* miserum, ME *miserable!* Cic. *Ō* fallācem *spem,* O *deceptive* HOPE! Cic. *Mē* caecum, *blind that I am !* Cic.

300. *Vocabulary.*

Adeō, īre, iī, ĭtum,	*to go to, arrive at, reach.*
Aeduus, a, um,	*Aeduan, pertaining to the Aedui.*
Cēnsus, ūs, *m.*	*census, enumeration.*
Cōnsimilis, e,	*similar, like.*
Cōnsultum, ī, *n.*	*decree.*
Doceō, ēre, uī, dŏctum,	*to teach, inform.*
Explōrātor, ōris, *m.*	*scout.*
Explōrō, āre, āvī, ātum,	*to explore.*
Redeō, īre, iī, ĭtum,	*to go back, return.*
Spatium, iī, *n.*	*space, interval, distance.*
Verbĭgĕnus, ī, *m.*	*Verbigenus,* the name of one of the four cantons of the Helvetii.

301. *Translate into English.*

1. Ubĭ per explōrātōrēs Caesar certior factus est Helvē-
tiōs flūmen Ararim trānsīre,[1] legiōnēs trēs ē castrīs ēduxit.
2. Hostēs vīcōs Rēmōrum omnēs quōs adīre poterant incen-
dērunt. 3. Belgae Bibrax, oppidum Rēmōrum, oppūgnāvē-
runt; sed fīnem oppūgnandī nox fēcit. 4. Nihil Sēquanī
respondērunt.[2] 5. Nervii equitātū nihil[3] poterant. 6. Cae-
sar suōs ā proeliō continēbat, āc satis habēbat in praesentiā
hostem rapīnīs prohibēre. 7. Divitiacus Rōmam ad senātum[4]
vēnit auxilium postulātum. 8. Caesar paucōs diēs ad Veson-
tiōnem morātur. 9. Caesarem diem ex diē dūcēbant[5] Aeduī.
10. Helvētiōrum quī domum rediērunt cēnsus habitus est.
11. Helvētiī hunc pāgum Verbigēnum appellant. 12. Haec
omnia nōs docuistis. 13. Caesar Ariovistum docēbat, quae
senātūs cōnsulta in Aeduōs facta essent.[6] 14. Hostēs fēcē-
runt ut cōnsimilis fugae profectiō vidērētur. 15. Germānī
Caesarem nōn prō amīcō, sed prō hoste habuisse dīcuntur.
16. Hostēs cōnstituērunt optimum esse domum suam quemque
revertī. 17. Ariovistus multōs mēnsēs castrīs sē tenuit. 18.
Prīma legiō in castra vēnerat, reliquaeque legiōnēs māgnum
spatium aberant.

302. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Ariovistus, through his ambassadors, demanded that
Caesar should not lead an army into his part of[7] Gaul. 2.
Caesar sent a lieutenant to explore those harbors of Britain
which he could reach. 3. What demand did the Aeduan

---

[1] As *certiōrem facere*, 'to inform,' has the force of a single verb, it
admits an infinitive depending upon it. See 171, 534.

[2] *Answered nothing*; render, *made no reply*.

[3] See 299, 378, 2; render with *poterant*, 'were not strong.'

[4] Why is the preposition used with *senātum*, but not with *Rōmam*?
See 277, 380.

[5] *Diem ex diē*, 'day after day'; *dūcēbant*, 'led on' = 'put off.'

[6] Why Subjunctive? See 127, 529.

[7] *His part of*, render, *his*.

chieftain make?[1] 4. During the whole winter the Roman legions kept themselves within their winter quarters. 5. Caesar hastened into Gaul with forced marches, and went to Geneva. At this town there was a bridge over the river Rhone. Caesar remained one month in the vicinity of Geneva.

6. Caesar, after defeating the Helvetii, ordered them[2] to return to their homes. 7. The river which the Helvetii were crossing was called the Arar. 8. Experience teaches us many things. 9. Experience teaches soldiers what it is best to do[3] in battle. 10. Caesar made the Helvetii return[4] to their own territory. 11. To regard all men as friends is not an easy thing to do.[5]

LESSON CIII.

DATIVE. — REVIEW OF RULES XII., XIII., AND XIV. — RULE XV.

303. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

1. Rule XII. See **54,** 384.   2. Rule XIII. See **281,** 390.
3. Rule XIV. See **141,** 391.

RULE XV.—Dative with Nouns and Adverbs.

392. The Dative is used with a few special nouns and adverbs:

I. With a few nouns from verbs which take the Dative:

Jūstitia est obtemperātiŏ[5] *lēgibus, justice is obedience* TO LAWS. Cic. Sĭbĭ respōnsiŏ, *a reply* TO HIMSELF. Cic. Opulentŏ hominĭ servitūs dūra est, *serving* (servitude to) *a rich man is hard.* Plaut.

---

[1] Observe that *to make a demand* = *to demand.*
[2] *After . . . them,* render, *ordered the defeated Helvetii.*
[3] Use the Supine.
[4] *Made . . . return;* render, *made that the Helvetii should return.*
[5] From *obtemperō,* which takes the Dative.

II. With a few adverbs from adjectives which take the Dative :

Congruenter[1] nātūrae vīvere, *to live in accordance* WITH NATURE.
Cic. *Sibi* convenienter dīcere, *to speak consistently* WITH HIMSELF.
Cic. Prōximē hostium castrīs, *next to the camp of the enemy.* Caes.

304. *Vocabulary.*

Adulēscēns, entis, *m. and f.*	*youth, young man, young woman.*
Arcessō, ere, īvī *or* iī, ītum,	*to summon, invite.*
Calamitās, ātis, *f.*	*calamity, disaster.*
Commius, iī, *m.*	*Commius,* a chieftain of the Atrebātes
Cūra, ae, *f.*	*care.* [in Gaul.
Facile, *adv.*	*easily.*
Fidēlis, e,	*faithful.*
Gallicus, a, um,	*Gallic.*
Idōneus, a, um,	*suitable, fit, proper.*
Ingrātus, a, um,	*ungrateful, unpleasant, disagreeable.*
Īnsīgnis, e,	*remarkable, signal.*
Persolvō, ere, ī, solūtum,	*to pay.*
Praeficiō, ere, fēcī, fectum,	*to place over, place in command of.*
Praesum, esse, fuī,	*to be in charge of, be in command of, to superintend.* (Followed by the Dative.)
Senonēs, um, *m. pl.*	*the Senones,* a tribe of central Gaul.
Similis, e,	*similar, like.*
Strepitus, ūs, *m.*	*din, noise.*

305. *Translate into English.*

1. Hīc pāgus, quī appellātur Tigurīnus, īnsīgnem calamitā-
tem populō Rōmānō intulit. 2. Quae cīvitās calamitātem
populō Rōmānō intulit, ea prīnceps poenās persolvet.[2] 3. In
omnī Galliā Druidēs rēbus dīvīnīs praesunt. 4. Caesar lēgā-
tum in Trēverōs, quī prōximī flūminī Rhēnō sunt, cum
equitātū mittit. 5. Labiēnō mandat, ut Rēmōs reliquōsque
Belgās adeat. 6. Haec omnia ad bellum māgnō ūsuī erant.

---

[1] From *congruēns,* which takes the Dative.
[2] *Quae cīvitās . . . ea,* render as if it were *ea cīvitās quae; prīnceps
. . . persolvet,* 'shall be the first to pay.'

7. Imperātor duās legiōnēs urbī praesidiō relīquit.　8. Germānī auxiliō ā Belgīs arcessītī sunt.　9. Caesar Brūtum adulēscentem classī Gallicīsque nāvibus praefēcit.

10. Quid illī simile bellō fuit?　11. Germānī dixērunt sē posse Rōmānīs ūtilēs esse.　12. Caesar Commium sibī fidēlem arbitrābātur.　13. Senonēs fīnitimī Belgīs erant.　14. Fuit haec ōrātiō nōn ingrāta Gallīs.　15. Caesar castrīs idōneum locum dēligit.　16. Locus ad aciem īnstruendam idōneus erat.　17. Belgae, māgnō cum strepitū castrīs ēgrēssī, fēcērunt ut cōnsimilis fugae profectiō vidērētur.[1]　18. Ariovistus dixit nūnquam ante illud tempus exercitum populī Rōmānī prōvinciae fīnēs[2] ēgrēssum esse.

306. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The Belgae are next to the Germans, who dwell beyond the Rhine.　2. The Helvetii were so surrounded by natural boundaries,[3] that they could not easily wage war against their neighbors.　3. Geneva is the town of the Allobroges nearest the territory of the Helvetii.　4. Caesar placed Labienus in command of the fortification that he had made near Geneva.　5. Caesar saw that it was perilous to the Roman people for the Germans to cross[4] the Rhine and come into Gaul.

6. The Romans found that the Helvetii were not a match for them.　7. The general of a large army always has many things to care for.[5]　8. Ariovistus told Caesar, that he thought

---

[1] *Fēcērunt ut ... vidērētur*, literally, *made that their departure seemed;* render, *made their departure seem.*

[2] Many verbs are sometimes *transitive* and sometimes *intransitive.* Thus, *ēgredior* in this sentence as a *transitive* verb, *to pass beyond,* is followed by the Direct Object, *fīnēs,* while in the previous sentence, as an *intransitive* verb, *to depart,* it is followed by the Ablative of Separation, *finibus.*

[3] *Natural boundaries;* render, *the nature of the place.*

[4] *For the Germans to cross;* English subject clauses of this form are generally expressed in Latin, as here, by the Infinitive with subject Accusative.

[5] Render, 'many things are *for a care to the general.*'　281, 390.

that the friendship of the Roman people ought to be a safe-guard to him.[1] 9. He knew that the death of Caesar would be acceptable to many Romans. 10. Two brothers were in command of one hundred cantons of the Suebi. 11. Caesar left a large number of soldiers for a garrison to the camp.[1]

LESSON CIV.

GENITIVE. — REVIEW OF RULES XVI. AND XX. — RULES XVII., XVIII., AND XIX.

307. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

1. Rule XVI. See **31**, 395.   2. Rule XX. See **285**, 409.

RULE XVII. — Genitive with Adjectives.

899. Many adjectives take a Genitive to complete their meaning:

Avidus *laudis, desirous* OF PRAISE. Cic.   Ōtiī cupidus, *desirous* OF LEISURE. Liv. Cōnscius conjūrātiōnis, *cognizant of the conspiracy.* Sall. Amāns suī virtūs, *virtue fond of itself.* Cic. Efficiēns volup-tātis, *productive of pleasure.* Cic. Glōriae memor, *mindful of glory.* Liv.

I. The Genitive is used with adjectives denoting —

1. DESIRE or AVERSION:

Contentiōnis cupidus, *desirous of contention.* Cic.   Sapientiae studiōsus, *studious of* (student of) *wisdom.* Cic.

2. **KNOWLEDGE, SKILL, RECOLLECTION,** with their contraries:

Rēī gnārus, *acquainted with the thing.* Cic.   Prūdēns rēī mīlitāris, *skilled in military science.* Nep. Perītus bellī, *skilled in war.* Nep. Īnsuētus labōris, *unaccustomed to labor.* Caes. Glōriae memor, *mindful of glory.* Liv.

3. **PARTICIPATION, GUILT, FULNESS, MASTERY,** with their contraries:

Adfīnis culpae, *sharing the fault.* Cic. Ratiōnis expers, *destitute of reason.* Cic. Vīta metūs plēna, *a life full of fear.* Cic.

II. The Genitive is used with VERBALS in **āx**, and with PRESENT PARTICIPLES used adjectively:

Virtūtum ferāx, *productive of virtues.* Liv.   Tenāx prōpositī, *tenacious* (steadfast) *of purpose.* Hor.   Amāns patriae, *fond of his country.* Cic.   Fugiēns labōris, *shunning labor.* Caes.

RULE XVIII.— Predicate Genitive.

401. A noun predicated of another noun denoting a different person or thing, is put in the Genitive:

Omnia *hostium* erant, *all things belonged* TO THE ENEMY.[1] Liv. Senātus *Hannibalis* erat, *the senate was* HANNIBAL'S (i.e. in his interest). Liv.   *Jūdicis* est vērum sequī, *to follow the truth is the duty* OF A JUDGE.[2] Cic.   Parvī pretiī est, *it is of small value.* Cic. Tyrus mare suae diciōnis[3] fēcit, *Tyre brought the sea under* (literally, made the sea OF) *her sway.* Curt.

RULE XIX.— Genitive with Special Verbs.

406. The Genitive is used —

I. With **misereor** and **miserēscō**:

Miserēre labōrum, *pity the labors.* Verg.   Miserēscite rēgis, *pity the king.* Verg.

II. With **recordor, meminī, reminīscor,** and **oblīviscor**:

Meminit praeteritōrum, *he remembers the past.* Cic.   Oblītus sum meī, *I have forgotten myself.* Ter.   Flāgitiōrum recordārī, *to recollect base deeds.* Cic.   Reminīscī virtūtis, *to remember virtue.* Caes.

III. With **rēfert** and **interest**:

Illōrum rēfert, *it concerns them.* Sall.   Interest omnium, *it is the interest of all.* Cic.

308. *Vocabulary.*

Antīquus, a, um,	*ancient, old, former.*
Clāmitō, āre, āvī, ātum,	*to exclaim, cry out.*
Cohortātiō, ōnis, *f.*	*exhortation, encouragement.*
Cōnscius, a, um,	*conscious, aware.*

---

[1] Literally, *were* OF THE ENEMY, or *were* THE ENEMY'S.

[2] Literally, *is* OF A JUDGE.

[3] Here *diciōnis,* denoting a different thing from *mare,* of which it is predicated, is put in the Genitive.

Cōnstantia, ae, *f.*	*constancy, steadfastness.*
Cōnsuētūdŏ, inis, *f.*	*custom, usage.*
Cupidus, a, um,	*desirous.*
Dēminuō, ere, uī, ūtum,	*to diminish, lessen.*
Distineō, ēre, uī, tentum,	*to keep apart, separate.*
Honor, ōris, *m.*	*honor.*
Incommodum, ī, *n.*	*misfortune, disaster, defeat.*
Injūria, ae, *f.*	*injury, wrong.*
Interest, esse, fuit, *impersonal,*	*it interests, concerns.*
Ōdī,[1] isse,	*to hate, detest.*
Potentia, ae, *f.*	*power, influence.*
Prīncipātus, ūs, *m.*	*sovereignty, dominion.*
Reminiscor, ī,	*to remember.*
Restituō, ere, uī, ūtum,	*to restore.*
Suspicor, ārī, ātus sum,	*to suspect.*
Vetus, eris,	*old, ancient.*

309. *Translate into English.*

1. Caesar ab decimae legiōnis cohortātiōne[2] ad aliam partem profectus est. 2. Aliquid novī cōnsiliī[3] ā barbarīs initum est. Caesar suspicātus est aliquid novī ā barbarīs initum esse cōnsiliī. 3. Dumnorix Aeduus, dē quŏ ante ab nōbīs dictum est, homŏ erat cupidus rērum novārum, cupidus imperiī, māgnī animī, māgnae inter Gallōs auctōritātis. 4. Jūdicārī potest quantum habeat in sē[4] bonī[3] cōnstantia. 5. Caesar Allobrogibus imperāvit ut Helvētiīs frūmentī cōpiam facerent.[5] 6. Hominēs barbarī nostrae cōnsuētūdinis imperītī sunt. 7. Vercingetorix, summae potentiae adulēscēns, cūjus pater prīncipātum Galliae tōtīus obtinuerat, prōditiōnis accūsātus est.

---

[1] This verb wants the present system. *Ōdī* is Present in sense: hence in the Pluperfect and Future Perfect it has the sense of the Imperfect and Future.

[2] Literally, *from the exhortation of;* render, *from exhorting,* or *encouraging.*

[3] Literally, 'something of . . . plan'; render, 'some . . . plan.' So *quantum bonī*, 'how much advantage.'

[4] Literally, *has in itself;* render *possesses.*

[5] *Cōpiam facere*, ' to furnish a supply.'

8. Divicŏ, lēgātiōnis prīnceps, Caesarem monuit ut remi-
niscerētur et veteris incommodī populī Rōmānī et prīstinae
virtūtis Helvētiōrum.   9. Haec ā mē beneficia habētis, quem
prōditiōnis īnsimulātis. 10. Dumnorix clāmitābat līberum
sē līberaeque esse cīvitātis.   11. Populus Rōmānus nūllīus
injūriae sibī cōnscius fuit.   12. Gallī cōnsilia ineunt quōrum
eōs paenitēre necesse est.   13. Rěī pūblicae commūnisque
salūtis interest manūs hostium distinērī.   14. Dumnorix
Rōmānōs ōdit, quod eōrum adventū potentia sua dēminūta et
Divitiacus frāter in antīquum locum honōris est restitūtus.

310. *Translate into Latin.*

1. How much space[1] did the line of battle occupy?   2.
The enemy led a part of their forces over the river.   3. Cae-
sar found that the Nervii were men of great valor.   4. The
rampart was twelve feet[2] in height.[3]   5. The tribune of the
soldiers, a man of great wisdom and courage, hastened to
Galba, and told him what hope there was of safety.   6. Of
all those regions of Gaul, the state of the Veneti has by far
the greatest reputation.

7. The Gauls were not unskilled in military affairs.   8.
Caesar was waiting to see[4] what plan[1] the enemy would
adopt.   9. The nation of the Suebi is by far the largest and
the most warlike of all the Germans.   10. It is for the inter-
est of all to obey the laws.   11. Has the traveller told you
any news?[1]   12. All men by nature are desirous of free-
dom.   13. Those who were accused of treason were not
put to death.   14. Let us ever[5] remember the valor of our
fathers.

---

[1] Render, *how much of place, what of plan, anything of new.*
[2] Use the Predicate Genitive.
[3] Latin idiom, INTO, i.e. *in the direction of.*
[4] To wait to see, *exspēctō.*
[5] Observe that the English word *ever* sometimes means *at any time,*
Latin *ūnquam,* and sometimes *always,* Latin *semper.* Which meaning
has it here?

LESSON CV.

ABLATIVE PROPER. — REVIEW OF RULES XXI., XXII.,
AND XXIII. — EXERCISE IN READING AT SIGHT.

311. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

1. Rule XXI. See **277, 412.** 2. Rule XXII. See **158, 413.**
3. Rule XXIII. See **88, 417.**

312. *Read at Sight, examine carefully, and translate into
English.*

Flūmen est Arar, quod per fīnēs Aeduōrum et Sēquanō-
rum in Rhodanum īnfluit incrēdibilī lēnitāte, ita ut oculīs, in
utram partem fluat, jūdicārī nōn possit. Id Helvētiī trānsī-
bant. Ubǐ per explōrātōrēs Caesar certior factus est, cum
legiōnibus tribus ē castrīs profectus ad eam partem pervēnit,
quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat. Eōs aggressus māgnam
eōrum partem concīdit; reliquī fugae sēsē mandārunt. Is
pāgus appellābātur Tigurīnus; nam omnis cīvitās Helvētia
in quattuor pāgōs dīvīsa est. Hǐc pāgus Lūcium Cassium
cōnsulem interfēcerat, et ējus exercitum sub jugum mīserat.
Ita, quae pars cīvitātis Helvētiae īnsīgnem calamitātem
populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea prīnceps poenās persolvit.

313. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Caesar says that one canton of the Helvetii was called
Tigurinus, and that this one canton had inflicted a signal
calamity upon the Roman people. By this canton, Cassius,
the consul, had been slain, and his army had been sent under
the yoke.

2. When the Helvetii were crossing the river Arar, scouts
informed Caesar that one division had not yet crossed.
Caesar led forth three legions from camp, and attacked this
division of the Helvetii. The Romans found that this divi-
sion was that canton of the Helvetii, which was called

Tigurinus. They already knew that the Helvetian state was divided into four cantons.

3. Who dwell at this time where the Helvetii formerly (*before*) dwelt? 4. Is the nation that dwells there divided into cantons? 5. In what part of the territory of the Helvetii did the canton which was called Tigurinus dwell?

LESSON CVI.

INSTRUMENTAL ABLATIVE. — REVIEW OF RULES XXV., XXVI., XXVIII. AND XXIX. — RULES XXIV. AND XXVII.

314. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

1. Rule XXV.   See **78**, 420.
2. Rule XXVI.   See **258**, 421.
3. Rule XXVIII. See **236**, 423.
4. Rule XXIX.   See **231**, 424.

RULE XXIV. — Ablative of Accompaniment.

419. The Ablative is used —

I. To denote ACCOMPANIMENT.   It then takes the preposition **cum**:

Vivit *cum Balbō, he lives* WITH BALBUS. Cic. Cum gladiis stant, *they stand with swords* (i. e. armed WITH swords). Cic.

II. To denote CHARACTERISTIC or QUALITY.   It is then modified by an adjective or by a Genitive:

Summā virtūte adulēscēns, *a youth* OF THE HIGHEST VIRTUE. Caes. Quīdam māgnō capite, ōre rubicundō, māgnīs pedibus, *a certain one with a large head, with a red face, and with large feet.* Plaut.

III. To denote MANNER.[1]   It then takes the preposition **cum,** or is modified by an adjective or by a Genitive:

---

[1] Note the close connection between these three uses of the Ablative— the first designating an *attendant* person or thing — *with Balbus, with swords;* the second, an *attendant* quality — a youth *with* (attended by) *the*

Cum virtūte vīxit, *he lived* VIRTUOUSLY. Cic. *Summā vī* proelium commisērunt, *they joined battle* WITH THE GREATEST VIOLENCE. Nep. Duōbus modīs fit, *it is done in two ways.* Cic.

RULE XXVII. — Ablative of Price.

422. PRICE is generally denoted by the Ablative:

Vēndidit *aurō* patriam, *he sold his country* FOR GOLD. Verg. Conduxit *magnō* domum, *he hired a house* AT A HIGH PRICE. Cic. Multō sanguine Poenīs victōria stetit, *the victory cost the Carthaginians* (stood to the Carthaginians at) *much blood.* Liv.

315. *Vocabulary.*

Adfīnitās, ātis, *f.*	connection, relationship.
Audācia, ae, *f.*	audacity, boldness.
Biturigēs, um, *m. pl.*	the Bituriges, a tribe of central
Capillus, ī, *m.*	hair. [Gaul.
Carō, carnis, *f.*	flesh.
Commoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtum,	to move, disturb, alarm.
Ēiciō,[1] ere, ējēcī, jectum,	to cast out, drive out, expel.
Faveō, ēre, fāvī, fautum,	to favor. (Followed by the
Incendium, iī, *n.*	fire, burning. [Dative.)
Īnficiō, ere, fēcī, fectum,	to stain, color, dye.
Līberālitās, ātis, *f.*	liberality.
Portōrium, iī, *n.*	tax, toll, duty.
Praestō, āre, stitī, stitum *or* stātum,	to surpass. (Followed by the
Pretium, iī, *n.*	price. [Dative.)
Prōmissus, a, um,	hanging down, long.
Redimō, ere, ēmī, ēmptum,	to buy up, buy, purchase.
Repetō, ere, īvī *or* iī, ītum,	to seek, exact.
Robur, oris, *n.*	oak.
Uxor, ōris, *f.*	wife.
Vitrum, ī, *n.*	woad, a plant used for dyeing blue.
Vīvō, ere, vīxī, vīctum,	to live.

316. *Translate into English.*

1. Populus Rōmānus ab Helvētiīs poenās bellō repetiit.
2. Nāvēs Venetōrum tōtae factae ex robore erant.   3. Ger-

---

highest *virtue;* the third, an *attendant* circumstance — to live *with virtue,*
virtuously. Compare *cum Balbō vivere* and *cum virtūte vivere.*

[1] Pronounced as if spelled *ējiciō.*

mānī dixērunt sē vēnisse ējectōs[1] domō. 4. Caesar honōris Divitiacī causā[2] sēsē Bellovacōs in fidem receptūrum[3] dixit. 5. Allobrogēs nōndum bonō animō in populum Rōmānum vidēbantur. 6. Biturigēs incendia urbium suārum māgnō cum dolōre ferēbant. 7. Omnēs sē Britannī vitrō īnficiunt capillōque sunt prōmissō. 8. Hominēs barbarī carne vīvunt pellibusque sunt vēstītī. 9. Clāssis Rōmāna celeritāte praestābat.

10. Dumnorix est homō summā audāciā, māgnā apud plēbem propter līberālitātem grātiā. 11. Helvētiī, Caesaris adventū commōtī, lēgātōs ad eum mīsērunt. 12. Pūgnātum ab hostibus ācriter est. 13. Tempestātibus sub pellibus[4] mīlitēs continērī nōn poterant. 14. Dumnorix ex[5] Helvētiīs uxōrem habet; favet Helvētiīs propter eam adfīnitātem. 15. Gallī jūmenta importāta māgnō parant pretiō. Jūmentīs importātīs māximē dēlectantur. Germānī jūmentīs importātīs nōn ūtuntur. 16. Complūrēs annōs portōria nostra parvō pretiō redēmpta habētis.[6]

317. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The Germans were led across the Rhine not far from the sea. 2. The Suebi were men of great height. 3. The Usipetes, during a large part of the winter, lived upon the supplies of the Menapii. 4. Caesar had ascertained that the cavalry of the Germans had been sent across the river a few days before. 5. The Germans, terrified by the approach of the Romans, sought safety in flight. 6. The Britons

---

[1] See Suggestion XX., 3, 2).

[2] Honōris causā, *for the sake of honoring, out of respect for.*

[3] In fidem recipere, *to receive under one's protection.*

[4] Sub pellibus, *under skins,* i. e. *in tents,* as the tents were made of skins.

[5] Ex, *from;* render, *from among.*

[6] The public revenues were not collected by the state, but the right of collecting them was sold for a definite sum to the highest bidder. Compare the expression, redēmpta habētis, with the English Perfect Active, *you have purchased.*

thought that it was best to keep the Romans from grain and supplies.

7. Caesar was daily carrying grain from the fields into the camp. 8. For[1] several successive days storms kept the Romans in camp, and prevented the enemy from attack. 9. A forest of great width reaches from the river Rhine through the midst of[2] the territory of the Treveri. 10. The chieftain of the Treveri was not of friendly disposition towards the Romans. 11. The general decided to unite the town with the camp by a fortification. 12. In knowledge of military affairs the Romans surpassed the Gauls.

LESSON CVII.

LOCATIVE ABLATIVE. — CASES WITH PREPOSITIONS. — AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES, PRONOUNS, AND VERBS. — REVIEW OF RULES XXX. TO XXXVI.

318. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

1. Rule XXX.   See **185**, 425.
2. Rule XXXI.   See **93**, 429.
3. Rule XXXII.   See **240**, 431.
4. Rule XXXIII.   See **65**, 432.
5. Rule XXXIV.   See **43**, 438.
6. Rule XXXV.   See **107**, 445.
7. Rule XXXVI.   See **20**, 460.

319. *Vocabulary.*

Audeō, ēre, ausus sum,[3]	*to dare.*
Augeō, ēre, auxī, auctum,	*to augment, increase.*
Bellō, āre, āvī, ātum,	*to war, wage war, carry on war.*
Cōnsequor, ī, secūtus sum,	*to follow, pursue, overtake.*

[1] Do not translate the preposition. Use the Accusative of Duration of Time.

[2] Remember the Latin idiom for *the midst of.*

[3] A *semi-deponent* verb. The forms belonging to the Present System are in the Active Voice, all others in the Passive.

Contrā, *adv.*	*against, in opposition.*
Dives, itis, *comp.* dīvitior *or*	
dītior, *sup.* dīvitissimus *or*	
dītissimus,	*rich, wealthy.* [*means, wealth.*
Facultās, ātis, *f.*	*ability ;* facultātēs, *pl., resources,*
Familiāris, e,	*domestic, private ;* rēs familiāris,
Frētus, a, um,	*relying on.* [*private property.*
Incolumis, e,	*unharmed, safe.*
Largior, īrī, ītus sum,	*to bestow, make gifts.*
Liceor, ērī, licitus sum,	*to bid.*
Moveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtum,	*to move.*
Post, *adv.*	*afterward.*
Rūrsus, *adv.*	*again.*
Vectīgal, ālis, *n.*	*tax, revenue.*
Vicis, *gen.,*[1] *f.*	*turn ;* in vicem, *in turn.*

320. *Translate into English.*

1. Hōc proeliō factō, Caesar reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut cōnsequī pōsset, pontem in Arare faciendum cūrāvit,[2] atque ita exercitum trānsdūxit.　2. Caesar in Rēmōrum fīnibus castra posuit.　3. Suēbī centum mīlia armātōrum bellandī causā ex fīnibus ēdūcunt; reliquī, quī domī mānsērunt, sē atque illōs alunt; hī rūrsus in vicem annō post in armīs sunt, illī domī remanent.　4. Helvētiī diem dīcunt, quā diē[3] ad rīpam Rhodanī omnēs conveniant.　5. Vectīgālia nostra parvō pretiō redēmpta habent, proptereā quod, illīs licentibus,[4] contrā[5] licērī audet nēmō.

6. Orgetorix, apud Helvētiōs nōbilissimus et dītissimus, suam rem familiārem auxerat, et facultātēs ad largiendum māgnās comparāverat.　7. Paene ūnō tempore et in flūmine et jam in manibus nostrīs[6] hostēs vīsī sunt.　8. Multō diē[7] per explōrātōrēs Caesar cōgnōvit, et montem ā suīs tenērī, et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse.　9. Hostēs, superiōribus vīctōriīs[8]

---

[1] Not used in the Nominative.　　　[2] See Vocabulary under *cūrō.*
[3] Omit *diē* in rendering.　　　[4] See Suggestion **XXXIII.**, (1).
[5] *Against, in opposition ;* render, *against them.*
[6] In manibus nostrīs, *close at hand.*　　[7] Multō diē, *late in the day.*
[8] See 185, 425, 1.

frētī, in suā virtūte tōtīus Galliae salūtem positam putābant.
10. Prōnūntiātur mīlitēs prīmā lūce itūrōs esse.   11. Prīncipēs habēbant quāsdam rēs quās ab eō petere volēbant.   12.
Rōmānī ad ūnum[1] omnēs incolumēs sē in castra recēpērunt.

321. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Of[2] all the Britons, those who inhabit Kent are by far
the most civilized.   2. The cavalry of the Britons attack the
Romans on the march.   3. The soldiers were occupied with
the fortification of the camp.   4. The enemy made an attack
upon those who were stationed in front of the camp.   5. The
cavalry saw that the legions were behind them.   6. Caesar
saw that a large force of the enemy was drawn up on[3] the
other bank of the river.

7. A chieftain of the Britons had come to Caesar in Gaul.[4]
8. Caesar ascertained from the ambassador, that a town protected by forests was not far from that place.   This town he
hastened to attack on two sides.[5]   9. It has been stated
above that Kent is on[3] the sea.   10. The soldiers of Tīturius
placed all hope of safety in their valor.   11. Sabinus ordered
the tribunes and the centurions whom he had about him to
follow him.

LESSON CVIII.

USE OF THE INDICATIVE. — SUBJUNCTIVE AND IMPER
ATIVE IN PRINCIPAL CLAUSES. — REVIEW OF RULES
XXXVII., XXXVIII. AND XL. — RULE XXXIX.

322. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

1. Rule XXXVII.   See **112,** 474.
2. Rule XXXVIII.   See **114,** 483.
3. Rule XL.   See **114,** 487.

---

[1] Ad ūnum, *to a man.*
[2] In such a connection as this, *ex* with the Ablative is often used instead
of the Partitive Genitive.   [3] Use *ad.*
[4] Latin idiom, INTO *Gaul.*   [5] Latin idiom, FROM *two sides.*

RULE XXXIX.— Potential Subjunctive.

485. The Subjunctive is used to represent the action
NOT AS REAL but AS POSSIBLE :

Hīc *quaerat* quīspiam, *here some one* MAY INQUIRE. Cic.　Ita
laudem *inveniās, thus you* WILL (or MAY) OBTAIN *praise.* Ter.　Ita
amīcōs *parēs, thus* YOU WILL MAKE *friends.* Ter.　Vix dīcere *ausim,*
I SHOULD *scarcely* DARE *to say.* Liv.　Crēderēs victōs, *vanquished
you would have thought them.* Liv.　Forsitan quaerātis, *perhaps you
may inquire.* Cic.　Hōc nēmō dixerit, *no one would say this.* Cic.
Quis dubitet (= nēmō dubitat), *who would doubt* (or *who doubts* = no
one doubts)? Cic.　Hōc quis ferre possit, *who would be able to endure
this ?* Cic.

323.　*Vocabulary.*

Abeō, īre, iī, ĭtum,	*to depart, go away.*
Ascendō, ere, ī, scēnsum,	*to ascend.*　　　　　[or.
Aut, *conj.*	*or; either;* aut . . . aut, *either . . .*
Capiō, ere, cēpī, captum,	*to take;* cōnsilium capere, *to take counsel, form a plan.*
Dissentiō, ōnis, *f.*	*disagreement, dissension.*
Exspoliō, āre, āvī, ātum,	*to rob, deprive.*
Forsitan, *adv.*	*perhaps.*
Inīquus, a, um,	*unfavorable, disadvantageous.*
Īnsuētus, a, um,	*unaccustomed.*
Māter, tris, *f.*	*mother.*
Neglegō, ere, lēxī, lēctum,	*to neglect, disregard.*
Nūbō, ere, nūpsī, nūptum,	*to veil; to marry* (to assume the [bridal veil for).
Praestō, āre, stitī, stitum *or* stātum,	*to manifest, show, put forth.*[1]
Prōpōnō, ere, posuī, positum,	*to set forth.*
Sentiō, īre, sēnsī, sēnsum,	*to think.*
Subiciō,[2] ere, jēcī, jectum,	*to cast under, subject.*

324.　*Translate into English.*

1. Prīnceps māgnum numerum equitātūs suō sūmptū alē-
bat.　2. Dē[3] quartā vigiliā lēgātus summum jugum montis

---

[1] Observe that with this meaning *praestō* is a *transitive* verb, while
with the meaning given in 315, it is *intransitive.*

[2] Pronounced as if spelled *subjĭciō.*

[3] Dē, *from;* render, *in the course of.*

ascendat. 3. Vōs, mīlitēs, datā facultāte,[1] vōbīs cōnsulite; abīte, dum est[2] facultās, vōsque ad legiōnem recipite. 4. Ad lēgātōs mittendōs nōbīs triduī spatium dētur. 5. Īnsuē-tus nāvigandī mare timēbis. 6. In Galliā relinquāmur. 7. Eōdem itinere quō hostēs iērunt ad eōs contendēmus. 8. Prīnceps mātrem hominī nōbilissimō nūptum[3] collocābit. 9. Forsitan equitātum ante sē mittat. 10. Quae ipsī intelle-gāmus, prōpōnāmus. 11. Montem occupēmus proeliōque abstineāmus.

12. Ad tempus omnēs rēs administrentur. 13. Nōlīte dissentiōne rem in summum perīculum dēdūcere; ūnum atque idem sentiāmus āc probēmus. 14. Habētis, mīlitēs, quam petīstis, facultātem; hostem inīquō locō[4] tenētis; praestāte eandem virtūtem, quam saepe praestitīstis. 15. In cōnsiliō capiendō omnem Galliam respiciāmus; nōlīte hōs vestrō auxiliō exspoliāre, quī vestrae salūtis causā suum perī-culum neglēxērunt, nec[5] Galliam perpetuae servitūtī sub-icere. 16. Rōmānī alius aliī[6] subsidium tulērunt.

325. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Send ambassadors to the general: you will obtain your request. 2. Let this day decide with reference to the cour-age of these two soldiers. 3. Come to me speedily. 4. Conduct the legion into the territory of the enemy. 5. Let us not wait for the rest of the army. 6. Let not our plans be ascertained by the enemy. 7. Retain your ancient valor.

---

[1] See Suggestion XXIII., (1).

[2] Supply with *est* the Dative *vōbīs, there is to you*; render, *you have.*

[3] *Nūptum* is a Supine used after the verb of motion *collocābit* (**166,** **546**); *will place to be veiled* or *to marry*; render, *will give in marriage.*

[4] For case, see **185, 425, 2.**

[5] Render, *or.*

[6] *Alius aliī, another to another.* In this Latin idiom there is regularly an ellipsis which must be supplied in English, as here (*one to one*), *an-other to another.* In this case we may render *to one another. Alius* is in opposition with *Rōmānī.*

8. May we contend in battle before the camp.   9. Fortify the camp with a higher rampart.

10. Let not the Germans cross the Rhine and try the fortune of war.   11. Let all the soldiers assail the leader of the enemy, and let them either wound him or put him to death.   12. Let us await the aid of our friends.   13. Consider, soldiers, that you are fighting in the sight of your general.   14. Let the Ubii send scouts among the Suebi, and let them ascertain what is done among them.   15. Let every man consult not for himself alone, but for his country and his friends.   16. Let us not be regarded as enemies.

LESSON CIX.

SEQUENCE OF TENSES. — SUBJUNCTIVE OF PURPOSE AND OF RESULT. — REVIEW OF RULES XLI., XLII., AND XLIII.

326. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

1. Rule XLI.   See **119**, 491.   2. Rule XLII.   See **119**, 497.
3. Rule XLIII.   See **123**, 500.

327. *Vocabulary.*

Adigō, ere, ēgī, āctum,	*to drive, impel, throw.*
Et, *conj.*	*and; et . . . et, both . . . and.*
Fingō, ere, finxī, fictum,	*to form, fashion;* vultum fingere, *to control the countenance.*
Hortor, ārī, ātus sum,	*to exhort, urge.*
Lacrima, ae, *f.*	*tear.*
Litus, oris, *n.*	*shore.*
Obsidiō, ōnis, *f.*	*siege, blockade.*
Opera, ae, *f.*	*work;* operam dare, *to take pains,*
Ōrō, āre, āvī, ātum,	*to ask, beg, plead.* [*endeavor.*
Persequor, ī, secūtus sum,	*to follow up, avenge.*
Praecipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptum,	*to enjoin upon, direct.*
Quīn, *conj.*	*that not, but, that.*

Quō,[1] *conj.*	*that;* quō minus, *that not, so that*
Ratiŏ, ōnis, *f.*	*method, way.* [*not.*[2]
Spīritus, ūs, *m.*	*breath; pl., haughtiness, airs.*
Ventus, ī, *m.*	*wind.*
Vultus, ūs, *m.*	*countenance, face.*

328. *Translate into English.*

1. Orgetorix sibǐ lēgātiōnem ad cīvitātēs suscēpit;[3] in eŏ itinere persuāsit Casticŏ Sēquanŏ, cūjus pater rēgnum in Sēquanǐs multōs annōs obtinuerat, ut rēgnum in cīvitāte suā occupāret, quod[4] pater ante habuerat; itemque Dumnorigǐ Aeduŏ ut idem cōnārētur persuāsit. 2. Litavicus Aeduōs hortātur ut similī ratiōne, atque ipse fēcerit,[5] suās injūriās persequantur. 3. Caesar dabat operam ut in officiō Dumnorigem continēret. 4. Locī haec erat nātūra, atque ita montibus angustǐs mare continēbātur, ut ex locǐs superiōribus in lītus tēlum adigī pŏsset. 5. Erat lēgātō praeceptum ab ‾imperātōre, ut sub montem cōnsīderet mīlia passuum ab urbe octo. 6. Lēgātus equō admissō[6] ad Caesarem accurrisse dīcitur.

7. Tantus timor eōs occupāvit, ut vultum fingere nōn pŏssent. 8. Ariovistus tantōs sibǐ spīritūs, tantam arrogantiam sūmpserat, ut ferendus[7] nōn vīdērētur. 9. Prīncipēs nōn dubitābant quǐn Ariovistus dē obsidibus supplicium sūmeret.[8]

---

[1] Originally the Ablative of the pronoun, *by which;* quō minus, *by which the less.*

[2] See Suggestion XXVI., 6.

[3] Sibǐ suscēpit, *took upon himself, undertook.*

[4] *Quod* is here a pronoun.

[5] Atque . . . fēcerit, *as he himself has done;* after words of *likeness* and *unlikeness,* *atque* is an adverb with the force of *as.* Observe the idiomatic force of *fēcerit* here, *has done,* i. e. *has acted.*

[6] Equō admissō, *his horse having been let go;* render, *with his horse at full speed.*

[7] The Gerundive of *ferō, to be endured;* render, *endurable.*

[8] In Latin, punishment is regarded as satisfaction exacted by one party, and paid by the other; hence *supplicium sūmere* is *to inflict* (to take) *punishment, supplicium dare, to suffer* (to give) *punishment.*

10. Octōdecim nāvēs ventō tenēbantur, quō minus in portum pervenīre possent. 11. Tantus timor occupāvit eōs quī nōn māgnum in rē mīlitārī ūsum habēbant, ut lacrimās tenēre nōn possent. 12. Caesar Rhēnum[1] trānsdūcere exercitum[1] cōnstituit, ut Ubiōs obsidiōne līberāret. 13. Ubiī lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt ; ōrant ut sibī parcat.

329. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Two German tribes sent ambassadors to Caesar, to beg that he would not regard them as enemies. 2. No one is so brave, as not to be disturbed by dangers that are[2] both new and great. 3. The Germans crossed the Rhine, to lay waste the territory of the Gauls. 4. The Bituriges asked aid, that they might more easily withstand the forces of the enemy. 5. Caesar sent messengers to the Aedui, to inform them that he was willing to spare them.

6. The Gauls burned a town which they judged they could not hold, that it might not be of use to the Romans.[3] 7. The lieutenant was seized with such fear, that he hastened to the general, to ask[4] him to withdraw the soldiers into camp. 8. Orgetorix did not doubt, that he should persuade Casticus to seize regal power in his state. 9. We were detained by our friends, so that we could not return home. 10. Let us urge our friends not to avenge their wrongs.

LESSON CX.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES. — CONCESSIVE CLAUSES. — REVIEW OF RULES XLIV. AND XLVI. — RULE XLV.

330. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

1. Rule XLIV. See **250**, 507. 2. Rule XLVI. See **254**, 515.

---

[1] See **275**, sentence 19.   [2] Omit *that are* in rendering.

[3] *Of use to the Romans,* see **281**, 390.

[4] As it would not be desirable to have three successive clauses with *ut,* *to ask* may here be rendered by the Supine of *rogō.*

RULE XLV.— Conditional Clauses with dum, modo, ăc sĭ, ut sĭ, etc.

513. Conditional clauses take the Subjunctive —

I. With **dum, modo, dummodo,**[1] 'if only,' 'provided that'; **dum nĕ, modo nĕ, dummodo nĕ,** 'if only not,' 'provided that not':

Manent ingenia, modo permaneat industria, *mental powers remain, if only industry remains.* Cic. Dum rēs maneant, verba fingant, *let them make words, if only the facts remain.* Cic. Dummodo repellat periculum, *provided he may avert danger.* Cic.

II. With **ăc sĭ, ut sĭ, quam sĭ, quasi, tanquam sĭ, velut, velut sĭ,** 'as if,' 'than if,' involving an ellipsis of the real conclusion:

Perinde habēbō, ăc sĭ scrīpsissēs, *I shall regard it just as if* (i.e. as I should if) *you had written.* Cic. Jacent, tanquam omnīnō sine animō sint, *they lie as if* (i.e. as they would lie if) *they were entirely without mind.* Cic. Quam sī vīxerit tēcum, *as if he had lived with you.* Cic. Crūdēlitātem, velut sī adesset, horrēbant, *they shuddered at his cruelty as* (they would) *if he were present.* Caes.

331. *Vocabulary.*

Alcēs, is, *f.*	*elk.*
Contrahō, ere, traxī, tractum,	*to contract.*
Decrētum, ī, *n.*	*decree, decision.*
Ērigō, ere, rēxī, rēctum,	*to erect, raise up; sē ērigere, to lift one's self; to rise.*
Gravis, e,	*heavy, severe.*
Interdīcō, ere, dixī, dictum,	*to forbid, prohibit, exclude.*
Latrō, ōnis, *m.*	*robber, brigand.*
Peritus, a, um,	*skilful, skilled.*
Praemium, iī, *n.*	*reward.*
Privătus, ī, *m.*	*private citizen.*
Sacrificium, iī, *n.*	*sacrifice.*
Stō, āre, stetī, stătum,	*to stand.*
Sulla, ae, *m.*	*Sulla, a celebrated Roman general and statesman.*
Tametsī, *conj.*	*although.*

---

[1] When not used in conditions, these conjunctions often admit the Indicative: Dum lēgēs vigēbant, *while the laws were in force.* Cic.

12

332. *Translate into English.*

1. In Galliā sī caedēs est facta, Druidēs dēcernunt; sī dē
fīnibus contrōversia est, iīdem dēcernunt; praemia poenāsque
cōnstituunt; sī quī, aut prīvātus aut populus, eōrum dē-
crētō[1] nōn stetit, sacrificiīs[2] interdīcunt. Haec poena apud
eōs est gravissima. 2. Sī pācem Rōmānī nōbīscum faciant,
obsidēs iīs dabimus. 3. Sī Lingonēs Helvētiōs jūvissent,
Caesar eōs eōdem locō quō Helvētiōs habuisset. 4. Sī ab
armīs discēdere vultis, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittite.   5.
Tametsī populus Rōmānus ab Helvētiīs prō veteribus injū-
riīs poenās repetiit, tamen ea rēs nōn minus ex ūsū[3] terrae
Galliae quam populī Rōmānī accidit.

6. Pūblius Cōnsidius reī mīlitāris perītissimus fuisse dīci-
tur. 7. Cicerō lēgātus castra, etsī erat exigua per sē, tamen
quam māximē contraxit. 8. Hī mīlitēs, sī per tē, Cotta,
liceat,[4] cum prōximīs hībernīs conjunctī commūnem cum
reliquīs bellī cāsum sustineant. 9. Hīc lēgātus, quī in exer-
citū Lūciī Sullae et posteā in Mārcī Crassī fuit, cum explō-
rātōribus praemittētur. 10. Alcēs, sī concidērunt, ērigere
sēsē nōn possunt.[5] 11. Sī quid in nōbīs animī est, hōs latrō-
nēs interficiāmus. 12. Sī Labiēnus ex hībernīs fugae simi-
lem profectiōnem fēcisset, hostium impetum sustinēre nōn
potuisset.

333. *Translate into Latin.*

1. If you cannot withstand the attack of the enemy, with-
draw the soldiers into the camp. 2. If hostages should be
given us, we should make peace. 3. If they wish to make

---

[1] The Locative Ablative; see 185, 425; *to stand* in, i.e. *to abide* BY.
[2] See 54, 384; a Dative rendered *from* is thus used with a few verbs of
repelling, taking away, etc.
[3] *Out of,* i.e. *in accordance with, the interest.* Render *to the advant-
age of.*
[4] *Per tē liceat* denotes simply the absence of opposition or refusal.
[5] One of the fabulous stories current in Caesar's time in respect to the
wild beasts of the German forests.

peace, they will give hostages. 4. If they are giving hostages, they are willing to make peace. 5. Had they been willing to make peace they would have given hostages. 6. If these things shall be reported[1] to Ariovistus, he will inflict punishment upon the hostages.

7. If war should be waged against us, why should we be terrified? 8. If we seek[2] we shall find. 9. If we had sought, we should already have found. 10. If we possessed[3] any spirit, we should be marching into the territory of the enemy. 11. If you had aided our enemies, we should not regard[4] you as friends. 12. If you were our friends, you would not have waged[4] war against us. 13. Were you to aid our enemies, we should know whether you are friends or foes.

LESSON CXI.

CAUSAL CLAUSES. — RULES XLVII. AND XLVIII. — EXERCISE IN READING AT SIGHT.

334. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

RULE XLVII. — Moods with quod, quia, quoniam, quandō.

516. Causal clauses with **quod, quia, quoniam, quandō**, generally take —

I. The INDICATIVE to assign a reason *positively, on one's own authority :*

Quoniam supplicātiō dēcrēta est, celebrātōte illōs diēs, *since a thanksgiving has been decreed, celebrate those days.* Cic.   Gaudē quod spectant tē, *rejoice that* (because) *they behold you.* Hor.

---

[1] Use the Future Perfect.
[2] Latin idiom, *if we shall seek.*
[3] See **332**, sentence 11.
[4] Remember that the Imperfect must be used for *present* time, the Pluperfect for *past* time, and that the Condition and the Conclusion are of course not necessarily in the same tense.

II. The SUBJUNCTIVE to assign a reason *doubtfully*, or *on another's authority :*

Sŏcrătēs accūsātus est, quod corrumperet juventūtem, *Socrates was accused, because* (on the alleged ground that) *he corrupted the youth.* Quint. Aristīdēs nōnne expulsus est patriā, quod jūstus esset, *was not Aristides banished because* (on the alleged ground that) *he was just ?* Cic.

RULE XLVIII.—Causal Clauses with cum and qui.

517. Causal clauses with *cum* and *quī* generally take the Subjunctive, in writers of the best period :

Necesse est, cum sint diī, animantēs esse, *since there are gods, it is necessary that there should be living beings.* Cic. Cum vīta metūs plēna sit, *since life is full of fear.* Cic. Quae cum ita sint, perge, *since these things are so, proceed.* Cic. Ō vīs vēritātis, quae (*cum ea*) sē dēfendat, *O the force of truth, since it defends itself.* Cic.

2. Clauses with either *cum* or *quī* admit the Indicative in all writers, when the statement is viewed as a *fact :*

Habeō senectūtī grātiam, quae mihī sermōnis avidītātem auxit, *I cherish gratitude to old age, which has increased my love of conversation.* Cic. Grātulor tibī, cum tantum valēs, *I congratulate you that* (in view of the fact that) *you have so great influence.* Cic.

335. *Read at Sight, examine carefully, and translate into English.*

Dumnorix Aeduus, Dīvĭtiacī frāter, est homŏ summā audā-ciā, māgnā apud plēbem propter līberālĭtātem grātiā, cupi-dus rērum novārum ; complūrēs annōs portōria reliquaque omnia Aeduōrum vectīgālia parvŏ pretiō redēmpta habet, proptereā quod, illō licente, contrā licērī audet nēmŏ. Hīs rēbus et suam rem familiārem auxit, et facultātēs ad largien-dum māgnās comparāvit. Māgnum numerum equitātūs suŏ sūmptū semper alit et circum sē habet ; nōn sōlum domī, sed etiam apud fīnitimās cīvitātēs largiter potest. Hūjus poten-tiae causā mātrem in Biturĭgibus hominī nōbilissimŏ nūptum collocāvit ; ipse ex Helvētiīs uxōrem habet. Favet Helvē-tiīs propter eam adfīnitātem ; ōdit Caesarem et Rōmānōs,

quod eōrum adventū potentia sua dēminūta et Divitiacus frāter in antīquum locum honōris est restitūtus.

Caesar Dumnorigem ad sē vocat; quae ipse intellegat, prōpōnit; monet ut in reliquum tempus omnēs suspīciōnēs vītet.

336. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Among the Aedui, the man in greatest favor with the populace was Dumnorix. The state [1] revenues were bought up by him at a price smaller than that which others were willing to give, because when he bid,[2] the rest did not dare to bid against him. The horsemen, supported at his expense and always kept around him, were distinguished (*availed*) by their number and their audacity. He was summoned to Caesar, who had ascertained that this Aeduan chieftain desired a revolution in his own state, detested the Romans, and favored the Helvetii.

2. Divitiacus, the brother of Dumnorix, was friendly to the Romans. He had been chief magistrate of the Aedui, and by the arrival of Caesar his ancient place of honor had been restored to him. This arrival of Caesar had diminished the power of Dumnorix. 3. Dumnorix was warned by Caesar to avoid suspicion.

LESSON CXII.

TEMPORAL CLAUSES. — RULES XLIX. AND L.

337. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

RULE XLIX. — Temporal Clauses with postquam, etc.

518. In temporal clauses with *postquam, posteāquam,*[3] *ubĭ, ut, simul, simul atque,* etc., 'after,' 'when,' 'as soon as,' the Indicative is used:

---

[1] *The state revenues = the revenues of the state.*

[2] Use the Ablative Absolute.

[3] Or *post quam* and *posteā quam.*

Postquam vidit, etc., castra posuit, *he pitched his camp, after he saw*, etc. Caes. Ubĭ certiōrēs factī sunt, *when they were informed.* Caes. Id ut audīvit, *as he heard this.* Nep. Postquam vident, *after they saw.* Sall. Postquam nox aderat, *when night was at hand.* Sall.

RULE L. — Temporal Clauses with dum, etc.

519. I. Temporal clauses with *dum, dōnec*, and *quoad*, in the sense of WHILE, AS LONG AS, take the *Indicative :*

Haec fēcī, dum licuit, *I did this while it was allowed.* Cic. Quoad vīxit, *as long as he lived.* Nep. Dum lēgēs vigēbant, *as long as the laws were in force.* Cic. Dōnec eris fēlix, *as long as you shall be prosperous.* Ov.

II. Temporal clauses with *dum, dōnec*, and *quoad*, in the sense of UNTIL, take —

1. The *Indicative*, when the action is viewed as an ACTUAL FACT:

Dēlīberā hōc, dum ego redeō, *consider this until I return.* Ter. Dōnec rediit, *until he returned.* Liv. Quoad renūntiātum est, *until it was* (actually) *announced.* Nep.

2. The *Subjunctive*, when the action is viewed as something DESIRED, PROPOSED, or CONCEIVED:

Differant, dum dēfervēscat īra, *let them defer it till their anger cools* (i. e. that it may cool). Cic. Exspēctās dum dīcat, *you are waiting till he speaks* (i.e. that he may speak). Cic.

338. *Vocabulary.*

Adjungō, ere, junxī, junctum,	*to join, add, unite.*
Agō, ere, ēgī, āctum,	*to drive, lead; to do, act, perform; to treat, plead;* grātiās agere, *to return thanks, thank.*
Ancora, ae, f.	*anchor.*
Cōnstō, āre, stitī, stātum,	*to stand firm; to be established, evident, plain, manifest.*
Cum, conj.	*when, while; since; although.*
Dum, conj.	*while; until.*
Equus, ī, m.	*horse.*
Occīdō, ere, cīdī, cīsum,	*to kill, slay.*

Pīlum, ī, *n.*	*spear, javelin.*
Posteāquam,[1] *conj.*	*after.*
Postquam,[1] *conj.*	*after.*
Praeceps, ipitis,	*precipitate, headlong.*
Prōficiō, ere, fēcī, fectum,	*to accomplish, effect.*
Prope, *adv.*, *comp.* propius, *sup.* prōximē,	*near.*
Prōvideō, ēre, vīdī, vīsum,	*to look out for, provide.*
Queror, ī, questus sum,	*to complain.*
Quoad, *conj.*	*until.*
Simul, simul atque, *conj.*	*as soon as.*
Tergum, ī, *n.*	*back;* terga vertere, *to turn the back; to retreat, flee.*
Trānsiciō,[2] ere, jēcī, jectum,	*to pierce, transfix.*
Ubĭ, *conj.*	*where; when.*
Vertō, ere, tī, sum,	*to turn.*

339. *Translate into English.*

1. Quod omnibus cōnstābat hiemārī in Galliā oportēre,[8] frūmentum in Britanniā prōvīsum nōn erat. 2. Caesar questus est, quod Britannī bellum sine causā intulissent. 3. Decima legiō Caesarī grātiās ēgit, quod dē sē optimum jūdicium fēcisset. 4. Sēquanī, cum per sē minus valērent, Germānōs sibī adjunxērunt. 5. Posteāquam equitātus noster in cōnspēctum vēnit, hostēs terga vertērunt, māgnusque eōrum numerus est occīsus. 6. Dum longius ab mūnītiōne aberant Gallī, plūs multitūdine tēlōrum prōficiēbant; posteāquam propius successērunt, trānsjectī pīlīs interībant.

7. Rōmānī fīnem sequendī nōn fēcērunt, quoad praecipitēs hostēs ēgērunt. 8. Caesar, dum reliquae nāvēs eō convenīrent, ad hōram nōnam in ancorīs exspēctāvit. 9. Cingetorix, simul atque dē Caesaris adventū cōgnitum est,[4] ad eum vēnit.

---

[1] Also written *posteā quam*, *post quam*.

[2] Pronounced as if spelled *trānsjiciō*.

[8] *Hiemārī* used impersonally is the subject of *oportēre*; literally, *that it behooved that the winter be passed*; render, *that they must winter*, or *that the winter must be passed*. *Oportēre* is the subject of *cōnstābat*.

[4] *Dē . . . cōgnitum est*, literally, *it was ascertained concerning*; render, *Caesar's approach was ascertained*.

10. Dum haec geruntur,[1] nostrīs omnibus occupātīs, hostēs discēssērunt.   11. Caesar, ubī ex captīvīs cōgnōvit, quō in locō hostium cōpiae cōnsēdissent, dē tertiā vigiliā ad hostēs contendit.   12. Caesar, postquam in Trēverōs vēnit, Rhēnum trānsīre cōnstituit.

340. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Of all the inhabitants of Gaul,[2] the Belgae are the fiercest, because they are farthest distant from the civilization of the Roman province.   2. Since the Helvetii surpassed all the other Gauls in valor, they tried to seize the sovereignty of all Gaul.   3. When[3] the Helvetii were ready to set out,[4] they burned all their towns.   They intended to march through the Roman province, because they had no other route.[5]   They attempted to march through the province, and told the Romans they had no other route.

4. Caesar did not answer the ambassador, until his soldiers had assembled.   5. After Caesar found that the Helvetii were following his line of march,[6] he withdrew his forces to the nearest hill.   6. As soon as the enemy approached, Caesar removed all the horses out of sight.   7. We shall remain in this place, until a supply of grain has been provided.   8. The general censured the Aedui, because he had not been aided by them.[7]   9. After Caesar ascertains in what place the enemy have encamped, he will lead out his forces and hasten towards that place.

---

[1] With *dum, while,* the Present is generally used, whether the action is present, past, or future.   When used, as here, of a past action, it is best rendered by a past tense in English.

[2] *Inhabitant of Gaul,* is quī Galliam incolit.

[3] Use ubī.

[4] *To set out;* either the infinitive, or *ad* with the gerund, or with the noun meaning *departure* may be used.

[5] Regard this as the reason of the Helvetii.

[6] Render *line of march* by a single word.

[7] *Because . . . them.*   What difference in meaning in this instance between *quod* with the *indicative* and *quod* with the *subjunctive?*

LESSON CXIII.

341. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

RULE LI. — Temporal Clauses with antequam and priusquam.

520. In temporal clauses with *antequam* and *prius-quam*[1]—

I. Any tense except the Imperfect and the Pluperfect is put —

1. In the *Indicative*, when the action is viewed as an ACTUAL FACT :

Priusquam lūcet, adsunt, *they are present before it is light.* Cic. Antequam in Siciliam vēnī, *before I came into Sicily.* Cic. Nec prius respēxī quam vēnimus, *nor did I look back until we arrived.* Verg.

2. In the *Subjunctive*, when the action is viewed as SOMETHING DESIRED, PROPOSED, or CONCEIVED :

Antequam dē rē pūblicā dīcam, expōnam cōnsilium, *I will set forth my plan before I* (can) *speak of the republic* (i.e. preparatory to speaking of the republic).[2] Cic. Nōn prius ducēs dīmittunt, quam[1] sit concēssum, *they did not dismiss the leaders till it was granted.* Caes. Priusquam incipiās, cōnsultō opus est, *before you begin there is need of deliberation* (i. e. as preparatory to beginning). Sall. Tempestās minātur, antequam surgat, *the tempest threatens, before it rises.* Sen.

II. The Imperfect and the Pluperfect are put in the *Subjunctive :*

Nōn prius ēgrēssus est quam rēx eum in fidem reciperet, *he did not withdraw until the king took him under his protection.* Nep. Prius-

---

[1] Often written *ante quam* and *prius quam*, sometimes with intervening words between *ante* or *prius* and *quam*.

[2] Here the temporal clause involves *purpose* as well as *time. Antequam dīcam* is nearly equivalent to *ut posteā dīcam :* 'I will set forth my views, that I may afterward speak of the republic.'

quam peteret cōnsulātum, īnsānit, *he was insane before he sought the consulship.* Liv.   Antequam urbem caperent, *before they took the city.* Liv.

RULE LII. — Temporal Clauses with cum.

521. In temporal clauses with *cum* —

I. Any tense except the Imperfect and the Pluperfect is put in the *Indicative :*

Cum verba faciunt, majōrēs suōs extollunt, *when they speak, they extol their ancestors.* Sall. Cum quiescunt, probant, *while they are silent they approve.* Cic. Librōs, cum est ōtium, legere soleō, *when there is leisure, I am wont to read books.* Cic.

II. The Imperfect and the Pluperfect are put —

1. In the *Indicative*, when the temporal clause AS-SERTS AN HISTORICAL FACT:

Pāruit cum necesse erat, *he obeyed when it was necessary.* Cic. Nōndum profectus erat, cum haec gerēbantur, *he had not yet started when these things took place.* Liv. Cum quaepiam cohors impetum fēcerat, hostēs refugiēbant, *whenever any cohort made* (had made) *an attack, the enemy retreated.* Caes.

2. In the *Subjunctive*, when the temporal clause simply DEFINES THE TIME of the principal action :

Cum epistulam complicārem, tabellāriī vēnērunt, *while I was folding the letter* (i.e. during the act), *the postmen came.* Cic. Cum ex Aegyptō reverterētur, dēcēssit, *he died while he was returning* (during his return) *from Egypt.* Nep. Cūm triduī viam perfēcisset, nūntiātum est, etc., *when he had accomplished a journey of three days, it was announced,* etc. Caes. Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset, mātūrat ab urbe proficiscī, *when this was* (had been) *announced to Caesar, he hastened to set out from the city.* Caes.

342. *Vocabulary.*

Accūsātiō, ōnis, *f.*	*accusation.*
Accūsātor, ōris, *m.*	*accuser.*
Antequam, *conj.*	*before.*
Cohors, ortis, *f.*	*cohort,* the tenth part of a legion.
Colōnia, ae, *f.*	*colony.* [*suddenly, unexpectedly.*
Imprōvīsus, a, um,	*unforeseen, unexpected ;* dē imprōvīsō,[1]

[1] *Imprōvīsō* is the neuter of the adjective used substantively.

Multum, *adv., comp.*
   plūs, *sup.* plūrimē,   *much.*
Priusquam, *conj.*   *before.*
Profugiō, ere, fūgī,   *to flee away, flee, escape.*
Refugiō, ere, fūgī,   *to flee back, flee.*

343. *Translate into English.*

1. Cum summus mōns ā Titō Labiēnō tenērētur, Pūblius Cōnsīdius, quī rēī mīlitāris perītissimus habēbātur, ad Caesarem accurrit. 2. Cum cohors impetum fēcerat, hostēs refugiēbant. 3. Oppidum Britannī vocant, cum silvās impedītās vallō atque fōssā mūniērunt. 4. Fuit [1] tempus, cum Gallī prō patriā fortiter pūgnābant. 5. Fuit anteā tempus, cum Germānōs Gallī virtūte superārent, bella īnferrent, propter hominum multitūdinem agrīque inopiam trāns Rhēnum colōniās mitterent. [2]

6. Caesar hunc montem ā Titō Labiēnō lēgātō occupārī voluit. 7. Explōrātōrēs oppidum ab hostibus tenērī dīcunt; id sē ā Gallicīs armīs cōgnōvisse. 8. Multum, cum in omnibus rēbus, tum [3] in rē mīlitārī, potest fortūna. 9. Multīs rēbus celeriter administrātīs, cum prīmum per annī tempus potuit, ad exercitum contendit. 10. Antequam dē accūsātiōne ipsā dīcō, dē accūsātōribus pauca dīcam. 11. Caesar dē imprōvīsō in fīnēs Nerviōrum contendit, et priusquam illī profugere possent, [4] māgnō hominum numerō captō atque vastātīs agrīs, in dēditiōnem venīre coēgit.

344. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Caesar ordered Divitiacus to be summoned, before Dumnorix should attempt anything. 2. When the top of the

---

[1] When *est, erat,* etc. stand at the beginning of a sentence, they often correspond to the English *there is, there was,* etc.

[2] Observe the force of the moods with *cum* in this sentence and the preceding.

[3] Cum . . . tum, *while . . . at the same time, not only . . . but also, not only . . . but especially.*

[4] Observe the force of the moods with *antequam* and *priusquam* in this sentence and the preceding.

mountain was held[1] by Labienus, Caesar was not far from the camp of the enemy. 3. When the ambassadors had come, they said that they were ready to give hostages. 4. When our army has conquered[2] the enemy, it will return home. 5. When you ask us for aid, we always assist you.

6. When the enemy have sent ambassadors to seek peace, the general regards them as friends. 7. Ariovistus had been called friend by the Roman senate, before Caesar came into Gaul. 8. The Aedui had held the sovereignty of all Gaul, even before they had sought the friendship of the Romans. 9. The king of the Germans said that he had not waged war against the Gauls before they waged war against him. 10. When you are[3] ready to return home, send me a letter.

LESSON CXIV.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE. — REVIEW OF RULES LIII. AND LIV.

345. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

1. Rule LIII.   See **262**, 523.   2. Rule LIV.   See **262**, 524.

346. *Vocabulary.*

Cīvitās, ātis, *f.*	*citizenship; state.*
Dētrīmentum, ī, *n.*	*loss, disadvantage.*
Flaccus, ī, *m.*	*Flaccus, a Roman name.*
Imperātum, ī, *n.*	*order, bidding;* imperāta facere, *to do one's bidding, execute one's*
Nisi, *conj.*	*unless.* [*orders.*

---

[1] When, as in this sentence, the imperfect or the pluperfect must be used with *cum*, decide as follows whether to use the indicative or the subjunctive: if the meaning is, *the top of the mountain was held*, etc., *and at this time Caesar*, etc., use the indicative; but if the meaning is, *Caesar was not far*, etc., *at the time when*, etc., use the subjunctive.

[2] Use the Future Perfect.

[3] Use the Future.

Nunc, *adv.*	*now, at this time.*
Pendō, ere, pependī, pēnsum,	*to pay.*
Procillus, ī, *m.*	*Procillus,* a prominent Gaul.
Prōgredior, ī, grĕssus sum,	*to advance.*
Signum, ī, *n.*	*standard ;* sīgna ferre, *to carry the standards ; to advance.*
Stīpendium, iī, *n.*	*tax, tribute.*

347. *Translate into English.*

1. Amīcitia populī Rōmānī vōbīs ōrnāmentō et praesidiō, nōn dētrimentō est. 2. Omnēs dīcunt amīcitiam populī Rōmānī vōbīs ōrnāmentō et praesidiō, nōn dētrimentō esse. 3. Ariovistus dixit amīcitiam populī Rōmānī sibī ōrnāmentō et praesidiō, nōn dētrimentō, esse oportēre. 4. Mīlitēs propter timōrem sīgna nōn ferent. 5. Nōnnūllī Caesarī renūntiābant mīlitēs propter timōrem sīgna nōn lātūrōs esse. 6. Nōbīs est in animō sine ūllō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere, proptereā quod aliud iter habēmus nūllum ; rogāmus ut id nōbīs facere liceat. 7. Ubī dē Caesaris adventū Helvētiī certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mīsērunt quī dīcerent, sibī esse[1] in animō sine ūllō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere, proptereā quod aliud iter habērent[1] nūllum ; rogāre[1] ut id sibī facere licēret.

8. Cōnsīdius equō admissō ad Caesarem accurrit, dīcit montem quem ā Labiēnō occupārī voluerit,[2] ab hostibus tenērī ;[2] id sē ā Gallicīs armīs cōgnōvisse.[2] Caesar suās cōpiās in prōximum collem subdūcit, aciem īnstruit. 9. Caesar dixit sibī nūllam cum Germānīs amīcitiam esse pōsse, sī in Galliā remanērent.[3] 10. Caesar respondet, cum ea ita sint, tamen, sī obsidēs sibī dentur, sēsē cum Helvētiīs pācem esse factūrum. 11. Ariovistus respondit sē Aeduīs bellum

---

[1] To what in the previous sentence do *esse, habērent,* and *rogāre* correspond ? What is the subject of *rogāre* ? Account for the changes in mood and tense.

[2] What would *voluerit, tenērī,* and *cōgnōvisse* be in Direct Discourse ?

[3] In this sentence and in those following, change the indirect Discourse to direct.

nōn illātūrum esse, sī stīpendium penderent.   12. Rēmī ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīsērunt quī dīcerent sē contrā populum Rōmānum nōn conjūrāsse, parātōsque esse[1] imperāta facere.

348. *Translate into Latin.*

1. I did not make war upon the Gauls, but the Gauls made war upon me; all their forces were conquered by me in a single battle.   I came into Gaul before you came.   Why do you come into my territory? Unless you withdraw your army from my lands, I shall regard you not as a friend but as an enemy.   Therefore return home and lead off your soldiers.[2]

2. Caesar said that Gaul ought to be free.[3] 3. It was announced to Caesar that the horsemen of Ariovistus were riding towards our soldiers.   4. Caesar said that he should send as an ambassador Procillus, whose father had been presented with citizenship by Flaccus.   5. Caesar says that when he understood that Ariovistus was remaining in camp, he drew up a triple line of battle,[4] and advanced toward the Germans.

LESSON CXV.

INDIRECT CLAUSES. — INFINITIVE. — SUPINE. — AD-VERBS. — REVIEW OF RULES LV. TO LXI.

349. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

1. Rule LV.   See **127**, 529.   4. Rule LVIII. See **171**, 536.
2. Rule LVI.   See **132**, 533.   5. Rule LIX.   See **166**, 546.
3. Rule LVII. See **171**, 534.   6. Rule LX.   See **246**, 547.
7. Rule LXI.   See **70**, 551.

---

[1] For the construction of *facere*, see **340**, sentence 3.

[2] After rendering this into Latin, change your Latin into indirect Discourse, depending upon *dicō*, 'I say;' *dicit*, 'he says;' *dixi*, 'I said;' *dixit*, 'he said.'

[3] In this sentence and those following, after rendering into Latin, give the direct Discourse corresponding to your indirect Discourse.

[4] Use the Ablative Absolute and omit the conjunction *and.*

350. *Vocabulary.*

Conclāmō, āre, āvī, ātum,	to shout, call out.
Fertilitās, ātis, *f.*	fertility. [be annoyed.
Molestē, *adv.*	with trouble; molestē ferre, to be vexed,
Negōtium, iī, *n.*	business, occupation; negōtium dare,
	to entrust a task, entrust an en-
Ostendō, ere, ī, tēnsum *or*	[terprise.
tentum,	to show, make known, declare.
Praesēns, entis,	present.
Sānus, a, um,	sound, sane.
Ut, *adv.*	as.
Versor, ārī, ātus sum,	to be busied, be occupied, be engaged.

351. *Translate into English.*

1. Caesar ad exercitum venit; dat negōtium Senonibus reliquīsque Gallīs quī fīnitimī Belgīs sunt, ut ea quae apud eōs gerantur[1] cōgnōscant,[2] sēque dē hīs rēbus certiōrem faciant.   2. Caesar nihil Dumnorigem, sē absente, prō sānō[3] factūrum arbitrātus est, quī praesentis[4] imperium neglēxisset.   3. Prīncipēs Aeduōrum ad Caesarem veniunt ōrātum, ut cīvitātī subveniat; summō esse in perīculō rem, quod duo magistrātum gerant, et sē uterque eōrum lēgibus creātum esse dīcat; cīvitātem esse omnem in armīs, dīvīsum senātum, dīvīsum populum.   Caesar, nē tanta cīvitās, quam ipse semper aluisset, ad arma dēscenderet,[5] in Aeduōs proficiscī statuit.

4. Caesar sī Helvētiī vim facere[6] cōnentur, sē prohibitūrum esse ostendit.   5. Gallī conclāmāvērunt habēre sēsē, quae[7] dē rē commūnī dīcere vellent.   6. Hostēs ad castra nostra oppūgnātum vēnērunt.   7. Caesar, quoad hīberna

---

1 For Mood, see **262, 524.**

2 Subjunctive of *Purpose*, depending upon *dat negōtium.*

3 *Prō sānō*, literally, *for sane;* render, *as a sane man.*

4 *Praesentis*, i.e. *Caesaris.*

5 *Dēscenderet*, 'descend;' render, *proceed or resort to.*

6 *Vim facere*, 'to use violence.'

7 *Quae* is here a relative pronoun; what is its antecedent?

mūnīta esse cōgnōvisset, in Galliā morārī cōnstituit. 8. Hostēs parātōs esse ad dīmicandum exīstimāvit. 9. Prīncipēs Britanniae optimum factū esse duxērunt commeātū Rōmānōs prohibēre. 10. Ex oppidō lēgātī ad Caesarem vēnērunt ōrātum, ut sibī īgnōsceret. 11. Gallī, ut Germānōs diūtius in Galliā versārī nōluerant, ita populī Rōmānī exercitum hiemāre in Galliā mōlestē ferēbant.

352. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Caesar ordered the first line and the second to remain in position,[1] the third to fortify the camp. 2. Caesar, as he had previously determined, ordered two lines to drive back the enemy, the third to fortify the camp with a rampart and a moat. 3. Caesar inquired of the captives why Ariovistus remained in camp. 4. Caesar was informed by letter, that all the Belgae were conspiring against the Roman people and exchanging hostages.

5. It was said that the Belgae conspired, because they feared[2] that the Roman army was marching against them. 6. Caesar found that the Belgae had settled in Gaul on account of the fertility of the land, and that they had driven out the Gauls who had formerly dwelt there. 7. The enemy sent ambassadors to beg[3] that the Romans would make peace with them. 8. To conquer the brave and free is never an easy thing to do.

LESSON CXVI.

EXERCISE IN READING AT SIGHT.

353. *Read at Sight, examine carefully, and translate into English.*

Caesar ab explōrātōribus certior factus est hostēs sub monte cōnsēdisse mīlia passuum ab ipsīus castrīs octo. Dē tertiā

---

[1] 'Position,' *locus;* see 185, 425, 2.
[2] What mood will you use, and why?   [3] Use the Supine.

vigiliā Titum Labiēnum lēgātum cum duābus legiōnibus summum jugum montis ascendere jūssit. Ipse dē quartā vigiliā eōdem itinere quō hostēs ierant, ad eōs contendit equitātumque omnem ante sē mīsit. Pūblius Cōnsīdius, quī rēī mīlitāris perītissimus habēbātur, et in exercitū Lūciī Sullae et posteā in Mārcī Crassī fuerat, cum explōrātōribus praemissus est.

Prīmā lūce, cum summus mōns ā Titō Labiēnō tenērētur, Cōnsīdius equō admissō ad Caesarem accurrit, et dixit montem quem ā Labiēnō occupārī voluisset, ab hostibus tenērī; id sē, ā Gallicīs armīs cōgnōvisse. Caesar suās cōpiās in prōximum collem subduxit, aciem īnstrūxit. Labiēnus, monte occupātō, nostrōs exspectābat proeliōque abstinēbat. Multō diē per explōrātōrēs Caesar cōgnōvit, et montem ā suīs tenērī et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse.

354. *Translate into Latin.*

Caesar sent scouts to ascertain how far the enemy were from the Roman camp. When it was ascertained that they were about eight miles distant, two legions, under the command of Labienus,[1] were ordered to ascend the mountain, and to hold it for the present. Sending the cavalry ahead,[1] Caesar set out a little before daylight, and led the foot-soldiers by the route by which he had found that the Helvetii themselves had gone. A lieutenant, whom Caesar had always regarded as very skilful in military affairs, was sent forward with scouts, to ascertain what the enemy were doing; but at daybreak, stricken with fear, he hastened to Caesar on the march, and said that the mountain, which Labienus at that very time was holding, had been seized by the enemy.

---

[1] Use the Ablative Absolute.

NARRATIVES FROM CAESAR.

THE EMIGRATION OF THE HELVETII, THEIR DEFEAT BY THE ROMANS, AND THEIR RETURN TO THEIR COUNTRY.[1]

The Inhabitants of Gaul. The Valor of the Helvetii.

I. Gallia est dīvīsa in partēs trēs, quārum[2] ūnam[3] incolunt Belgae, aliam[3] Aquītānī,[4] tertiam[3] Gallī.[4] Helvetiī reliquōs Gallōs virtūte[5] praecēdunt, quod ferē cotīdiānīs proeliīs[6] cum Germānīs contendunt.

Orgetorix and His Project of Emigration.

II. Apud Helvētiōs nōbilissimus et dītissimus fuit Orgetorix. Is,[7] Messāllā et Pīsōne cōnsulibus,[8] cīvitātī[9] persuāsit ut dē fīnibus suīs exīrent.[10] Helvētiī continentur ūnā ex parte[11] flūmine Rhēnō, lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānīs dīvidit; alterā ex parte monte Jūrā

---

[1] From Caesar's "Commentaries on the Gallic War," I., 1–29. For Suggestions on Exercises in Latin Composition, see page 300.

[2] Partitive Genitive. 31, 397. [3] Supply *partem* as object of *incolunt*.

[4] Subject of *incolunt*. Observe that the term *Galli* is used in two senses. It properly denotes the inhabitants of all Gaul, but it is often used, as in this instance, to designate the inhabitants of the third division of the country, i.e. of Celtic Gaul. [5] 231, 424. [6] 78, 420.

[7] *Is* would not be expressed unless it were emphatic, as in English, 'it was *he* who,' etc., i.e. it was Orgetorix who originated the project of emigration. [8] 240, 431. This was in the year 61 B. C.

[9] 54, 384. *Cīvitātī* is here used as a collective noun: 'the citizens;' observe that this is shown by the number of *exīrent*.

[10] 119, 497; 491.   [11] 'On one side.'

quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā[1] lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō quī prōvinciam ab Helvētiīs dīvidit. Hīs rēbus[2] fīēbat ut minus facile fīnitimīs[3] bellum īnferre possent.[4] Prō[5] multitūdine autem hominum et prō glōriā fortitūdinis angustōs sē fīnēs habēre arbitrābantur.

The Helvetii Prepare to Leave their Country.

III. Hīs rēbus adductī et auctōritāte[6] Orgetorigis[7] permōtī, cōnstituērunt ea quae ad proficīscendum pertinērent[8] comparāre. Ubī jam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt,[9] oppida sua omnia, vīcōs, reliquaque prīvāta aedificia incendērunt; frūmentum omne, praeterquam[10] quod sēcum portātūrī erant, combūssērunt, ut domum reditiōnis spē sublātā parātiōrēs ad omnia perīcula subeunda[11] essent.[12]

The Route Selected and the Day Appointed.

IV. Erant omnīnō itinera duo quibus[6] domō[13] exīre possent; ūnum[14] per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, alterum per prōvinciam, multō facilius, quod inter fīnēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum Rhodanus fluit, isque nōnnūllīs locīs[15] vadō[6] trānsītur.[16] Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est proximum-

---

[1] Supply *ex parte*.   [2] 158, 413.   [3] 54, 384.
[4] 123, 500.   [5] *Prō*, 'in proportion to.'   [6] 78, 420.
[7] The secret purpose of Orgetorix was to possess himself of sovereign power among the Helvetii, and then to use this valiant and warlike nation, with the aid of a few other tribes, whose chieftains he had won to his purposes, in bringing the whole of Gaul under his control. His treasonable plot was detected; but just before the time appointed for his trial by the Helvetian authorities, he suddenly died, as it was suspected, by his own hand. The Helvetians did not, however, give up their project of emigration.
[8] *Quae ... pertinērent*, 'which would be requisite for their departure.' 123, 503.
[9] 337, 518.   [10] See 279, sentence 17.   [11] 291, 544.   [12] 119, 497.
[13] 277, 412.   [14] *Ūnum*, in apposition with *itinera*. 31, 363.
[15] 185, 425, 2.
[16] *Vadō trānsītur*, 'is crossed by means of a ford,' i.e. 'is fordable.'

que Helvētiōrum fīnibus¹ Genāva. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad
Helvētiōs pertinet.² Allobrogibus sēsē vel persuāsūrōs³ ex-
īstimābant vel vī coāctūrōs,³ ut per suōs fīnēs eōs īre pate-
rentur.⁴ Omnibus rēbus⁵ ad profectiōnem comparātīs, diem
dīxērunt quā diē⁶ ad rīpam Rhodanī omnēs convenīrent.⁷
Is diēs erat ante diem quīntum Kalendās Aprīlēs,⁸ Pīsōne,
Gabīniō⁵ cōnsulibus.

Caesar Hastens into Gaul, and Receives an Embassy from the Helvetii.

V. Caesarī cum nūntiātum esset⁹ eōs per prōvinciam iter
facere cōnārī,¹⁰ mātūrāvit ab urbe ¹¹ proficīscī, et ad Genā-
vam ¹² pervēnit.   Ubī dē ējus adventū Helvētiī certiōrēs
factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mīsērunt quī dīcerent,¹³ sibī esse
in animō iter per prōvinciam facere, proptereā quod aliud
iter habērent nūllum; rogāre, ut ējus voluntāte id sibī
facere licēret.¹⁴ Caesar, quod memoriā tenēbat ¹⁵ Lūcium

---

1 141, 391.   2 *Ad . . . pertinet,* 'leads over to the Helvetii.'
3 171, 534.   4 119, 498.   5 Ablative Absolute.
6 93, 429.   7 123, 500.
8 *Ante . . . Aprīlēs;* this whole expression may be regarded as an in-
declinable noun, in this instance a *predicate nominative* after *erat;* 59,
362. It means 'the fifth day before the Calends (*the first*) of April,' which
according to the Roman reckoning was not the 27th but the 28th day of
March. This was in the year 58 B. C.   9 341, 521; 119, 491.
10 *Eōs . . . cōnārī:* subject of *nūntiātum esset.*
11 *Ab urbe,* i.e. from Rome.
12 *Ad Genāvam,* 'into the vicinity of Geneva;' 'to Geneva' would be
simply *Genāvam;* 277, 380.   13 *Quī dīcerent, to say;* 119, 497.
14 *Sibī . . . licēret,* Indirect Discourse. In Direct Discourse, thus:
*Nōbīs est in . . . facere, proptereā . . . habēmus nūllum; rogāmus ut tuā
voluntāte id nōbīs facere liceat.* Explain the changes of Mood, etc. 262,
523, 524. Observe that *esse* and *rogāre* are the leading verbs in the prin-
cipal clauses, and that the subject of *esse* is the clause *iter . . . facere.*—
Rogāre, 'that they asked;' the subject, if expressed, would be *sē.* — *Ut
. . . licēret;* 119, 498. *Licēret* has *id facere* as its subject, and *sibī* as its
indirect object; 54, 384.—*Ējus voluntāte,* 'with his (Caesar's) consent,'
158, 413.
15 *Memoriā tenēbat: retained in* (by means of) *memory.*

Cassium cōnsulem occīsum, exercitumque ējus ab Helvētiīs pulsum et sub jugum missum,[1] concēdendum [2] nōn putābat. Tamen, ut spatium intercēdere pōsset, dum mīlitēs, quōs imperāverat, convenīrent,[3] lēgātīs respondit, diem [4] sē ad dēlīberandum sūmptūrum; sī quid vellent, ad Īdūs Aprīlēs [5] reverterentur.[6]

Caesar takes Measures to prevent the March of the Helvetii.

VI. Intereā eā legiōne,[7] quam sēcum habēbat, mīlitibusque,[7] quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant, ā lacū Lemannō ad montem Jūram, quī fīnēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiīs dīvidit, mīlia [8] passuum decem novem mūrum fōssamque perdūxit. Ubī ea diēs, quam cōnstituerat cum lēgātīs, vēnit, et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negāvit sē pōsse iter ūllī per prōvinciam dare,[9] et, sī vim facere cōnārentur,[10] prohibitūrum [11] ostendit. Helvētiī perrumpere cōnātī, operis mūnītiōne et mīlitum tēlīs repulsī, hōc cōnātū [12] dēstitērunt.

The Helvetii decide to March by a different Route.

VII. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via,[13] quā, Sēquanīs invītīs, propter angustiās īre nōn poterant. Hīs cum suā

---

[1] This defeat of the Roman army under Cassius occurred near the Lake of Geneva, 107 B. C.   [2] *Concēdendum*, i.e. the request of the Helvetii.

[3] **337, 519.**   [4] *Diem*, render *time*.

[5] *Ad Īdūs Aprīlēs, on the Ides of April*, i.e. on the 13th of April.

[6] *Sī ... reverterentur:* in Direct Discourse, *sī quid vultis ... revertimini*, **262, 523, 524.**   [7] Ablative of Means with *perdūxit.*

[8] *Mīlia*, **98, 397.** These defences extended along the southern side of the Rhone, from the Lake of Geneva to Mount Jura, and commanded all the fords of the Rhone by which the Helvetii could enter the Roman province.

[9] *Negāvit ... dare: said that he could not grant;* literally, *denied that he was able to give.*   [10] **262, 524.**

[11] *Prohibitūrum*, i.e. *sē prohibitūrum esse.*   [12] **158, 413.**

[13] *Ūna ... via: only the way through the Sequani*, i.e. the narrow pass along the north bank of the Rhone, between the mountains and the river.

spǒnte[1] persuādēre nōn pǒssent,[2] lēgātōs ad Dumnorigem Aeduum mīsērunt, ut eō dēprecātōre[3] ā Sēquanīs impetrārent.[4]   Dumnorix apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat,[5] et Helvētiīs erat amīcus, quod ex eā cīvitāte Orgetorigis filiam in mātrimōnium duxerat.[6]   Itaque rem suscēpit[7] et ā Sēquanīs impetrāvit, ut per fīnēs suōs Helvētiōs īre paterentur.

Caesar Marches Five Legions of Roman Soldiers into Gaul.

VIII. Caesarī renūntiātum est, Helvētiīs esse in animō per agrum Sēquanōrum et Aeduōrum iter in Santonum fīnēs facere.[8]   Id sī fieret, intellegēbat māgnō cum perīculō prōvinciae futūrum.[9]   Ob eās causās ēī mūnītiōnī, quam fēcerat, Titum Labiēnum lēgātum praefēcit; ipse in Italiam contendit duāsque ibī legiōnēs cōnscrīpsit, et trēs, quae circum Aquilēiam hiemābant, ex hībernīs ēduxit, et in ulteriōrem Galliam cum hīs quīnque legiōnibus īre contendit.

Caesar Surprises and Routs One Canton of the Helvetii at the River Arar.

IX. Helvētiī jam per angustiās[10] et fīnēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trānsduxerant, et in Aeduōrum fīnēs pervēnerant.[11] Flūmen est Arar, quod[12] per fīnēs Aeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum īnfluit.   Id Helvētiī trānsībant.[13]   Ubī Caesar certior factus est, trēs jam cōpiārum partēs[14] Helvētiōs id flūmen[14] trānsduxisse, quartam vērō partem citrā flūmen[15]

---

[1] *Suā sponte, of themselves.*   [2] **334, 517.**
[3] *Eō dēprecātōre, by his intercession; literally, he being an intercessor.*
[4] **119, 497.**   [5] *Plūrimum poterat: had very great influence.*
[6] *In mātrimōnium duxerat: had married.*
[7] *Rem suscēpit: he undertook the service.*
[8] *Facere:* subject of *esse.*   [9] Supply *esse.*
[10] The *narrow pass* between the Jura and the Rhone.
[11] 'Had come,' i. e. during Caesar's absence.
[12] The antecedent is *flūmen.*
[13] Observe the force of the tense: 'were crossing.'
[14] See **275**, sentence 19.
[15] *Citrā flūmen: on this side of the river,* i.e. on the east side.

Ararim reliquam esse, cum legiōnibus tribus ē castrīs profec-
tus, ad eam partem pervēnit, quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat.
Eōs aggressus māgnam eōrum partem concīdit; reliquī fugae
sēsē mandārunt.   Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurīnus; nam
omnis cīvitās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs dīvīsa est. Hīc
pāgus ūnus, patrum nostrōrum memoriā,[1] Lūcium Cassium
cōnsulem interfēcerat, et ējus exercitum sub jugum mīserat.
Ita quae pars cīvitātis Helvētiae īnsīgnem calamitātem pop-
ulō Rōmānō intulerat, ea[2] prīnceps poenās persolvit.[3]

Caesar Crosses the Arar, and Receives a Second Embassy from the Helvetii.

X. Hōc proeliō factō, reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut cōn-
sequī possset, pontem in Arare faciendum cūrāvit, atque ita
exercitum trānsdūxit.   Helvētiī ējus adventū commōtī, lēgā-
tōs ad eum mīsērunt, cūjus lēgātiōnis Dīvicō prīnceps fuit.
Is ita cum Caesare ēgit:[4] Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum
Helvētiīs faceret, in eam partem itūrōs atque ibī futūrōs[5]
Helvētiōs, ubī eōs Caesar esse voluisset; sīn bellō persequī[6]
persevērāret,[7] reminīscerētur et veteris incommodī[8] populī
Rōmānī et prīstinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Caesar respondit:
Sī[9] obsidēs ab iīs sibī darentur, utī ea,[10] quae pollicērentur,
factūrōs intellegeret, sēsē cum iīs pācem esse factūrum. Dīvicō

---

[1] *Patrum . . . memoriā: within the memory of our fathers;* 93, 429.
[2] Render as if it read, *ea pars cīvitātis Helvētiae quae . . . intulerat.*
[3] *Prīnceps persolvit: was the first to pay.*
[4] *Ita ēgit: discoursed as follows.* The words following, *Sī . . . Helvē-
tiōrum,* are in Indirect Discourse. The Direct Discourse would be: *Sī . . .
faciet, . . . ībunt . . . erunt Helvētiī, ubī eōs esse voluerīs; sīn . . . per-
sevērābis, reminīscere,* etc.   Explain the changes; 262, 523, 524.
[5] *Ibī futūrōs: would remain there.* Supply *esse.*
[6] *Persequī;* supply *eōs.*   [7] The subject is Caesar.
[8] *Incommodī :* 307, 406. This refers to the defeat of Cassius.
[9] *Sī . . . factūrum* is in Indirect Discourse. The Direct Discourse
would be: *Sī . . . mihī dabuntur . . . polliceantur, . . . intellegam,
(ego) . . . faciam;* 262, 523, 524.
[10] *Ea:* object of *factūrōs (esse),* the subject of which is (*eōs*), referring
to the Helvetii.

respondit: Helvētiōs ā mājōribus suīs īnstitūtōs esse, utī
obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōnsuēssent;¹ ējus rēī populum
Rōmānum esse testem.² Hōc respōnsō ³ datō discēssit.

*The Helvetii proceed on their March, followed by the Roman
Army. A Cavalry Skirmish, in which the Helvetii are
Successful.*

XI. Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movērunt.⁴ Idem fēcit
Caesar, equitātumque omnem praemīsit, quī vidērent,⁵ quās
in partēs hostēs iter facerent.⁶ Quī cupidius ⁷ novissimum
agmen īnsecūtī, aliēnō locō ⁸ cum equitātū Helvētiōrum
proelium commīsērunt, et paucī dē nostrīs ⁹ cecidērunt.
Quō proeliō ¹⁰ sublātī Helvētiī, quod quīngentīs equitibus ¹⁰
tantam multitūdinem equitum prōpulerant,¹¹ audācius sub-
sistere, nōnnunquam ex novissimō agmine proeliō nostrōs
lacessere coepērunt. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat, āc
satis habēbat ¹² in praesentiā hostem rapīnīs,¹³ pābulātiōnibus,
populātiōnibusque prohibēre. Ita diēs ¹⁴ circiter quīndecim
iter fēcērunt, utī inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum
prīmum ¹⁵ nōn amplius ¹⁶ quīnīs aut sēnīs mīlibus ¹⁷ passuum
interesset.¹⁸

---

¹ *Cōnsuēssent*, contracted from *cōnsuēvissent*. In this verb the Perfect
has the sense of a Present, and therefore the Pluperfect of an Imperfect.

² *Ējus . . . testem: that the Roman people were witnesses of this*, al-
luding to the hostages given by the survivors after the defeat and death
of Cassius.

³ Ablative Absolute.   ⁴ The subject is *Helvētiī* to be supplied.
⁵ 119, 497.   ⁶ 127, 529.   ⁷ See 275, sentence 3.
⁸ 185, 425, 2.
⁹ *Paucī dē nostrīs: a few of our men;* see 125, sentence 8.
¹⁰ 78, 420.
¹¹ Is this the reason of Caesar, or of the Helvetii? See 334, 516.
¹² The object is the clause *hostem . . . prohibēre.*   ¹³ 158, 413.
¹⁴ 98, 379.   ¹⁵ *Prīmum:* supply *agmen, our van.*
¹⁶ *Amplius:* subject of *interesset.*
¹⁷ *Quīnīs mīlibus;* 88, 417. The Distributive implies that the state-
ment is true for each of the fifteen days; 97, 172.
¹⁸ 123, 500.

Caesar Plans an Attack upon the Camp of the Helvetii.

XII. Caesar ab explōrātōribus certior factus, hostēs sub monte cōnsēdisse[1] mīlia[2] passuum ab ipsīus castrīs octo, dē tertiā vigiliā Titum Labiēnum, lēgātum, cum duābus legiōnibus summum jugum montis ascendere jūssit. Ipse dē quartā vigiliā eōdem itinere, quō hostēs ierant, ad eōs contendit. Pūblius Cōnsīdius, quī rēī mīlitāris[3] perītissimus habēbātur, cum explōrātōribus praemissus est.

Caesar's Plan Defeated by the Mistake of Considius.

XIII. Prīmā lūce,[4] cum summus mōns ā Titō Labiēnō tenērētur, ipse ab hostium castrīs nōn longius mīlle et quīngentīs passibus abesset,[5] neque aut ipsīus adventus aut Labiēnī cōgnitus esset,[5] Cōnsīdius equō admissō ad eum accurrit, dixit montem, quem ā Labiēnō occupārī voluisset,[6] ab hostibus tenērī; id sē ā Gallicīs armīs cōgnōvisse. Caesar suās cōpiās in prōximum collem subduxit, aciem īnstrūxit. Labiēnus, ut erat ēī praeceptum[7] ā Caesare, nē proelium committeret, nisi ipsīus cōpiae[8] prope hostium castra vīsae essent,[6] ut undique ūnō tempore in hostēs impetus fieret, monte occupātō nostrōs exspēctābat proeliōque abstinēbat. Multō dēnique diē[9] per explōrātōrēs Caesar cōgnōvit, et montem ā suīs tenērī, et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse, et Cōnsīdium timōre perterritum, quod nōn vīdisset, prō vīsō sibī renūntiāsse.[10] Eō diē, quō cōnsuērat intervallō,[11] hos-

---

[1] See 301, sentence 1.   [2] 98, 379.   [3] 307, 399.   [4] 93, 429.

[5] *Abesset* and *cōgnitus esset*, as well as *tenērētur*, depend upon *cum*; 341, 521.   [6] 127, 529, II.

[7] The subject of *erat praeceptum* is the clause *nē ... committeret*, which also expresses *purpose*; 119, 497.

[8] *Ipsīus cōpiae: his own* (Caesar's) *forces.*

[9] *Multō diē: late in the day*, though only relatively to *prīmā lūce.*

[10] *Quod ... renūntiāsse: had reported to him what he had not seen, as if seen*, literally, *for seen.* The antecedent of *quod* is the omitted object of *renūntiāsse.*

[11] *Quō ... intervallō = intervallō quō cōnsuērat: at the usual distance.* See above, XI., last line.

tēs secūtus est, et mīlia passuum tria ab eōrum castrīs castra sua posuit.

To secure Supplies, Caesar turns aside from the Pursuit of the Helvetii. The Helvetii change their Route and follow the Roman Army.

XIV. Postrīdiē, quod ā Bibracte, oppidō Aeduōrum cōpi-ōsissimō, nōn amplius mīlibus passuum octōdecim aberat, rēi frūmentāriae prōspiciendum exīstimāvit,[1] iter ab Hel-vētiīs āvertit, āc Bibracte[2] īre contendit.[3] Ea rēs per fugitīvōs hostibus nūntiāta̅m est. Helvētiī, seu[4] quod timōre perterritōs Rōmānōs discēdere ā sē exīstimārent, sīve quod rē[5] frūmentāriā interclūdī pōsse[6] cōnfīderent, itinere con-versō, nostrōs[7] ā novissimō agmine[8] īnsequī āc lacessere coepērunt.

Caesar Prepares for a General Engagement.

XV. Postquam id animadvertit, cōpiās suās Caesar in prōximum collem subdūxit, equitātumque, quī sustinēret[9] hostium impetum, mīsit. Ipse interim in colle mediō[10] tripli-cem aciem īnstrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterānārum ; sed in summō jugō duās legiōnēs, quās in Galliā citeriōre cōn-scrīpserat, et omnia auxilia collocārī jūssit. Helvētiī, cum omnibus suīs carrīs secūtī, impedīmenta in ūnum locum con-tulērunt ; ipsī cōnfertissimā aciē, rejectō nostrō equitātū, phalange factā, sub prīmam nostram aciem successērunt.

---

[1] *Rēi . . . exīstimāvit: he thought that he ought to provide supplies.* With *prōspiciendum* supply *esse* ; 281, 301 ; 54, 384.

[2] 277, 380.

[3] *Āvertit āc contendit: no conjunction is expressed, connecting these verbs with *exīstimāvit ;* we may supply *and accordingly.*

[4] *Seu . . . cōnfīderent: either because they thought,* etc., *or because they trusted,* etc.; 334, 516.

[5] 158, 413.

[6] *Pōsse :* supply *eōs,* referring to the Romans.

[7] See 125, sentence 8.   [8] *Ā . . . agmine : on the rear.*

[9] 119, 497.   [10] *In . . . mediō : midway up the hill.*

*In a fierce Battle the Helvetii are totally Defeated and put
to Flight.*

XVI. Caesar cohortātus suōs proelium commīsit. Mīlitēs,
ē locō superiōre pīlīs missīs, facile hostium phalangem per-
frēgērunt. Eā[1] disjectā, gladiīs dēstrictīs in eōs[2] impetum
fēcērunt. Diū atque ācriter pūgnātum est.[3] Nam hōc tōtō
proeliō,[4] cum[5] ab hōrā septimā[6] ad vesperum pūgnātum
esset, āversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit. Ad multam
noctem[7] etiam ad impedīmenta pūgnātum est, proptereā
quod prō vallō carrōs objēcerant, et ē locō superiōre in nos-
trōs venientēs[8] tēla cōiciēbant, et nōnnūllī inter carrōs
rotāsque matarās āc trāgulās subiciēbant, nostrōsque vulnerā-
bant. Diū cum esset pūgnātum,[9] impedīmentīs[10] castrīsque
nostrī potītī sunt. Ex eō proeliō circiter mīlia hominum
centum et trīgintā superfuērunt, eāque tōtā nocte continenter
iērunt; nūllam partem[11] noctis itinere intermissō, in fīnēs
Lingonum diē quartō pervēnērunt, cum, et propter vulnera
mīlitum et propter sepultūram occīsōrum nostrī trīduum[11]
morātī, eōs sequī nōn potuissent.[12] Caesar ad Lingonēs
litterās nūntiōsque mīsit, nē eōs frūmentō nēve aliā rē juvā-
rent; quī sī jūvissent,[13] sē eōdem locō, quō Helvētiōs, hab-
itūrum.[14] Ipse, trīduō intermissō, cum omnibus cōpiīs eōs
sequī coepit.

---

[1] *Ea* refers to *phalangem.*   [2] *Eōs* refers to *hostium.*

[3] *Pūgnātum est: they fought*, 281, 301.

[4] 185, 421, 1.   [5] 254, 515.

[6] As the Romans divided the day from sunrise to sunset into twelve
hours, the *seventh hour* would be about one o'clock.

[7] *Ad . . . noctem: far into the night.*

[8] *In . . . venientēs: against our men who were advancing.*

[9] 341, 521.   [10] 258, 421.

[11] 98, 379.   [12] 334, 517.

[13] *Qui si jūvissent: if they should aid;* 127, 529, II.

[14] *Sē . . . habitūrum:* 'that he should regard them as in the same situ-
ation as the Helvetii.' *Sē habitūrum (esse)* depends upon the verb im-
plied in *litterās . . . mīsit.* Supply, as the object of *habitūrum, eōs,*
referring to *Lingonēs. Helvētiōs* is the object of *habēret,* to be supplied.

*The Helvetii submit to Caesar's Terms, and return to their
  Country.   One Canton unsuccessfully Attempts to take
  Refuge in Germany.*

XVII. Helvētiī, omnium rērum inopiā adductī, lēgātōs dē
dēditiōne ad eum mīsērunt. Caesar obsidēs, arma, servōs,
quī ad eōs perfūgissent,[1] poposcit. Dum ea[2] conquīruntur[3]
et cōnferuntur, nocte intermissā, circiter[4] hominum mīlia
sex ējus pāgī, quī Verbigěnus appellātur, sīve timōre perter-
ritī,[5] nē armīs trāditīs suppliciō adficerentur,[6] sīve spē salū-
tis inductī, prīmā nocte[7] ex castrīs Helvētiōrum ēgrěssī,
ad Rhēnum fīnēsque Germānōrum contendērunt.   Quod
ubī Caesar resciit,[8] quōrum[9] per fīnēs ierant, hīs[10] utī
conquīrerent et redūcerent imperāvit; reductōs in hos-
tium numerō habuit;[11] reliquōs omnēs, obsidibus, armīs, per-
fugīs trāditīs, in dēditiōnem accēpit. Helvētiōs in fīnēs suōs,
unde erant profectī, revertī jūssit, et Allobrogibus imperāvit,
ut iīs frūmentī cōpiam facerent;[12] ipsōs[13] oppida vīcōsque,
quōs incenderant, restituere jūssit.   Id eā māximē ratiōne[14]
fēcit, quod nōluit eum locum, unde Helvētiī discěsserant,
vacāre, nē propter bonitātem agrōrum Germānī, quī trāns
Rhēnum incolunt, ē suīs fīnibus in Helvētiōrum fīnēs trāns-
īrent, et fīnitimī Galliae prōvinciae essent.

---

[1] 123, 503.   [2] *Ea : these,* — literally, *these things.*
[3] See 389, sentence 10.   [4] *Circiter :* an adverb, modifying *sex.*
[5] *Perterritī* agrees with *mīlia* by a construction *according to sense.*
[6] *Nē . . . adficerentur* depends upon *timōre.* 'with fear *lest,*' etc.; 119,
497.
[7] See 191, foot-note.   [8] 337, 518.
[9] *Quōrum :* the antecedent is *hīs.*
[10] *Hīs* depends on *imperāvit ;* 54, 384.
[11] *Reductōs . . . habuit : when they were brought back, he treated them
as enemies :* literally, *had them in the number of enemies.* They were
probably sold as slaves.
[12] *Ut . . . facerent : to furnish a supply,* etc.; 119, 498.
[13] *Ipsōs : them,* emphatic, in distinction from *Allobrogibus.*
[14] *Eā . . . ratiōne : principally for this reason,* explained by *quod nōluit,*
etc.

The Numbers of the Helvetii before and after their Disastrous Enterprise.

XVIII. In castrīs Helvētiōrum tabulae repertae sunt quibus ·in tabulīs ratiŏ cōnfecta erat, quī numerus[1] domō[2] exīsset.[3] Summa erat Helvētiōrum mīlia ducenta et sexāgintā tria. Eōrum, quī domum rediērunt, cēnsū habitō, repertus est numerus mīlium centum et decem.

CAESAR'S FIRST INVASION OF BRITAIN, 55 B. C.[4]

Caesar's Reasons for the Expedition.

I. Caesar in Britanniam proficiscī contendit, quod omnibus ferē Gallicīs bellīs[5] hostibus nostrīs inde subministrāta[6] auxilia intellegēbat; et sī tempus annī ad bellum gerendum[7] dēficeret,[8] tamen māgnō sibī ūsuī[9] fore[10] arbitrābātur, sī modo īnsulam adīsset[8] et genus hominum perspēxisset, loca, portūs, aditūs cōgnōvisset; quae omnia ferē Gallīs erant incōgnita. Neque enim temere praeter mercātōrēs illō adit quisquam, neque hīs ipsīs[11] quicquam, praeter ōram maritimam atque eās regiōnēs, quae sunt contrā Galliās, nōtum est. Itaque vocātīs ad sē undique mercātōribus,[12] neque quanta esset[13] īnsulae māgnitūdŏ, neque quae aut quantae nātiōnēs incolerent, neque quem ūsum bellī habērent, neque quī essent ad nāvium multitūdinem idōneī portūs, reperīre poterat.

Preparations for the Expedition.

II. Ad haec cōgnōscenda[7] Gāium Volusēnum cum nāvī longā praemīsit. Huic mandāvit, utī explōrātīs omnibus

---

[1] *Ratiŏ, quī numerus: an account showing what number.*
[2] 212, 412, 1.
[3] *Quī . . . exīsset* is in apposition with *ratiŏ*; 127, 529, I.
[4] From Caesar's "Commentaries on the Gallic War," IV., 20–36.
[5] 93, 429.   [6] Supply *esse.*   [7] 291, 543.   [8] 127, 529, II.
[9] 281, 390.   [10] 140, 204, 2.   [11] *Hīs ipsīs,* i.e. *mercātōribus.*
[12] *Vocātīs . . . mercātōribus,* Ablative Absolute; *although he summoned,* etc.   [13] *Quanta esset:* object of *reperīre*; 127, 529, I.

rēbus[1] ad sē quam prīmum[2] reverterētur.[3]   Ipse cum omnibus cōpiīs in Morinōs profectus est, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam trājectus.   Hūc nāvēs undique ex fīnitimīs regiōnibus et, quam[4] superiōre aestāte effēcerat, classem jūssit convenīre.   Volusēnus, perspēctīs regiōnibus[1] omnibus, quīntō diē ad Caesarem revertit, quaeque ibī perspēxisset[5] renūntiāvit.

Caesar crosses the Channel.

III. Caesar nactus idōneam ad nāvigandum[6] tempestātem, tertiā ferē vigiliā[7] solvit, et hōrā diēī circiter quartā[8] cum prīmīs nāvibus Britanniam attigit, atque ibī in omnibus collibus expositās hostium cōpiās armātās cōnspēxit.   Cūjus locī haec erat nātūra, utī ex locīs superiōribus in lītus tēlum adigī posset.[9] Hunc ad ēgrediendum[6] nēquāquam idōneum locum arbitrātus, circiter mīlia[10] passuum septem ab eō locō prōgrēssus, apertō āc plānō lītore nāvēs cōnstituit.[11]

The Britons Oppose the Landing of the Romans.

IV. At barbarī, praemissō equitātū[1] et essedāriīs, reliquīs cōpiīs subsecūtī, nostrōs nāvibus ēgredī prohibēbant.   Quod ubī Caesar animadvertit, nāvēs longās, quārum speciēs erat barbarīs inūsitātior, paulum removērī ab onerāriīs nāvibus, et rēmīs incitārī, et ad latus apertum[12] hostium cōnstituī, atque inde fundīs,[13] sagittīs, tormentīs, hostēs prōpellī āc submovērī

---

1 Ablative Absolute.   2 *Quam prīmum: as soon as possible.*
3 119, 497.   4 *Quam:* the antecedent is *classem.*
5 127, 529, I.   6 291, 542.   7 93, 429.
8 About ten o'clock in the morning, probably on the 26th of August. See page 291, foot-note 4.
9 123, 500.   10 98, 379.
11 *Apertō . . . cōnstituit: he anchored off an open and level shore;* probably on the coast of Deal; 185, 425, 1.
12 The *exposed flank* was the right flank, as the shield was carried on the left arm.
13 78, 420.

jūssit: quae rēs māgnō ūsuī nostrīs [1] fuit.   Nam et nāvium
figūrā [2] et rēmōrum mōtū et inūsitātō genere tormentōrum
permōtī, barbarī cōnstitērunt āc paulum pedem rettulērunt.
Atque nostrīs mīlitibus [6] cunctantibus, māximē propter alti-
tūdinem maris, quī [4] decimae legiōnis aquilam [5] ferēbat : "Dē-
silīte," inquit, "commīlitōnēs, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus
prōdere : [6] ego certē meum rĕī pūblicae atque imperātōrī offi-
cium praestiterō."   Hŏc cum māgnā vōce dīxisset, [7] sē ex
nāvī prōjēcit atque in hostēs aquilam ferre coepit.   Tum
nostrī ūniversī ex nāvī dēsiluērunt.   Hōs item ex prōximīs
nāvibus cum cōnspēxissent, [7] subsecūtī hostibus appropīn-
quārunt.

The Romans Effect a Landing, and put the Britons to Flight.

V. Pūgnātum est ab utrīsque ācriter.   Nostrī tamen, quod
neque ōrdinēs servāre neque firmiter īnsistere poterant, [8]
māgnō opere perturbābantur.   Hostēs vērō, nōtīs omnibus
vadīs, [8] ubī aliquōs singulārēs ex nāvī ēgredientēs cōnspēxe-
rant, [9] incitātīs equīs, [8] adoriēbantur; plūrēs [10] paucōs circum-
sistēbant; aliī in ūniversōs [11] tēla cōiciēbant.   Quod cum
animadvertisset [7] Caesar, scaphās longārum nāvium mīlitibus
complērī jūssit, et quōs labōrantēs cōnspēxerat, hīs subsidia
submittēbat.   Nostrī simul [9] in āridō cōnstitērunt, in hostēs
impetum fēcērunt atque eōs in fugam dedērunt.

The Britons Sue for Peace.

VI. Hostēs, proeliō [12] superātī, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs
dē pāce mīsērunt.   Caesar obsidēs imperāvit, quōrum illī

---

[1] 281, 390.   [2] 158, 413.   [3] Ablative Absolute.
[4] *Quī, he who.*   [5] The eagle was the standard of the legion.
[6] The loss of the eagle was regarded as a great disgrace.
[7] 341, 521.   [8] Caesar's reason; 334, 516, I.   [9] 337, 518.
[10] *Plūrēs: several,* i.e. of the enemy.
[11] *In ūniversōs: against our assembled forces,* opposed to *aliquōs singu-
lārēs.*   [12] 185, 425, 1.

partem statim dedērunt, partem paucīs diēbus[1] sēsē datūrōs dixērunt.

The Roman Fleet seriously Damaged by a high Tide and a Storm.

VII. Hīs rēbus pāce[2] cōnfirmātā, post diem quartum, quam[3] est in Britanniam ventum,[4] accidit, ut esset lūna plēna,[5] quī diēs[6] maritimōs aestūs māximōs in Ōceanō efficere cōnsuēvit; nostrīsque id[7] erat incōgnitum. Ita ūnō tempore[1] et longās nāvēs, quās Caesar in āridum subduxerat, aestus complēbat, et onerāriās, quae ad ancorās erant dēligātae, tempestās adflictābat.   Complūribus nāvibus[2] frāctīs, māgna tōtīus exercitūs perturbātiō facta est.   Neque enim nāvēs erant aliae, quibus reportārī pōssent,[8] et, quod omnibus cōnstābat hiemārī in Galliā oportēre,[9] frūmentum hīs in locīs in hiemem prōvīsum nōn erat.

The British Chieftains plot a Renewal of Hostilities.

VIII. Quibus rēbus[2] cōgnitīs, prīncipēs[10] Britanniae, cum equitēs et nāvēs et frūmentum Rōmānīs deesse intellegerent,[11] et paucitātem mīlitum ex castrōrum exiguitāte cōgnōscerent, optimum factū[12] esse duxērunt, rebelliōne[2] factā, frūmentō[13] commeātūque nostrōs prohibēre, et rem in hiemem prōdūcere,[14] quod, hīs[2] superātīs aut reditū[13] interclūsīs, nēminem

---

[1] 93, 429.   [2] Ablative Absolute.

[3] *Post . . . quam: on the fourth day after; diem* is in the Accusative with the preposition *post*, and *quam* is here used as a conjunction with the force of *postquam*; literally, *after the fourth day, after*, etc.

[4] 281, 301.   [5] This was on the 30th of August.

[6] *Qui diēs: which period, or a period which.*

[7] *Id: that = this fact,* i.e. the fact expressed in *quī . . . cōnsuēvit.*

[8] 123, 500, I.

[9] *Cōnstābat . . . oportēre: hiemārī,* used impersonally, is the subject of *oportēre;* 281, 301; *oportēre* is the subject of *cōnstābat.*

[10] Subject of *duxērunt.*

[11] 334, 517.   [12] 246, 547.   [13] 158, 413.

[14] *Rem . . . prōdūcere : to protract the war.*

posteā bellī īnferendī[1] causā in Britanniam trānsitūrum [2] cōnfīdēbant.

Caesar Suspects the Plot of the Britons, and Prepares to Meet it.

IX. At Caesar, etsī nōndum eōrum cōnsilia cōgnōverat, tamen fore[3] id, quod accidit, suspicābātur. Itaque ad omnēs cāsūs subsidia comparābat. Nam et frūmentum ex agrīs cotīdiē in castra cōnferēbat, et quae gravissimē adflīctae erant nāvēs, eārum[4] māteriā[5] atque aere ad reliquās reficiendās[1] ūtēbātur, et quae ad eās rēs erant ūsuī,[6] ex continentī comportārī jubēbat. Itaque, duodecim nāvibus āmissīs, reliquīs ut nāvigārī pōsset,[7] effēcit.

The Britons Surprise a Roman Foraging Party. Caesar Hastens to the Rescue.

X. Dum ea geruntur,[8] legiōne ūnā frūmentātum[9] missā, neque ūllā ad id tempus bellī suspīciōne interpositā, iī, quī prō portīs castrōrum in statiōne erant, Caesarī nūntiāvērunt pulverem mājōrem, quam cōnsuētūdō ferret,[10] in eā parte vidērī, quam in partem[11] legiō iter fēcisset. Caesar suspicātus aliquid novī ā barbarīs initum cōnsiliī,[12] cohortēs, quae in statiōnibus erant,[13] sēcum in eam partem proficiscī, ex reliquīs duās in statiōnem cohortēs succēdere,[14] reliquās ar-

---

[1] 291, 543.   [2] Supply *esse*.   [3] See 140, 204, 2.

[4] *Quae nāvēs, eārum = eārum nāvium, quae.*   [5] 258, 421.

[6] 281, 390; one of the two Datives, as here, is often omitted, when it would be some word like *alicui, to any one.*

[7] *Ut . . . pōsset* is the object of *effēcit*, 'he made it possible to sail with the rest'; 123, 501. *Nāvigārī*, used impersonally, is the subject of *pōsset;* 281, 301.   [8] See 339, sentence 10.   [9] 166, 546.

[10] *Quam cōnsuētūdō ferret: than usual;* literally, *than custom bore.*

[11] *Quam in partem;* render as if it were *in quam.*

[12] *Aliquid . . . cōnsiliī; aliquid* is subject of *initum (esse); cōnsiliī* is Partitive Genitive after *aliquid;* 31, 397.

[13] One cohort guarded each of the four gates of a Roman camp.

[14] *Ex . . . succēdere: two of the other* (six) *cohorts to take their place on guard.* He could spare only two, instead of four, to guard the gates.

mārī et cōnfestim sēsē subsequī jūssit.　Cum paulō longius ā castrīs prōcēssisset,[1] suōs[2] ab hostibus premī, atque aegrē sustinēre animadvertit.　Nam quod, omnī ex reliquīs partibus dēmessō frūmentō,[3] pars ūna[4] erat reliqua, suspicātī hostēs hūc nostrōs esse ventūrōs, noctū in silvīs dēlituerant; tum dispersōs,[5] dēpositīs armīs,[3] in metendō[6] occupātōs subitō adortī, paucīs interfectīs, reliquōs perturbāverant; simul equitātū atque essedīs circumdederant.

The Use of War-chariots by the Britons.

XI.　Genus hŏc est[7] ex essedīs pūgnae : prīmō per omnēs partēs perequitant et tēla cōiciunt, atque ipsō terrōre equōrum[8] et strepitū rotārum ōrdinēs plērumque perturbant, et cum sē inter equitum turmās īnsinuāvērunt,[9] ex essedīs dēsiliunt et pedibus proeliantur.　Aurīgae interim paulātim ex proeliō excēdunt, atque ita currūs collocant, ut, sī illī[10] ā multitūdine hostium premantur,[11] expedītum ad suōs[2] receptum habeant.[12]　Ita mōbilitātem equitum, stabilitātem peditum in proeliīs praestant.

Caesar Rescues his Foraging Party.　Storms interfere with Military Operations.

XII.　Quibus rēbus[13] perturbātīs nostrīs[2] tempore[14] opportūnissimō Caesar auxilium tulit; namque ējus adventū[15] nostrī[2] sē ex timōre recēpērunt.　Quō[3] factō, ad committendum

---

[1] 341, 521, II.　　　　[2] See 125, sentence 8.　　　[3] Ablative Absolute.

[4] *Pars ūna : only one part,* i.e. only one place from which grain could be obtained.

[5] *Dispersōs;* this participle, like *occupātōs,* agrees with *nostrōs,* to be supplied as the object of *adortī; while scattered,* etc.

[6] 291, 542.　　　　　　　　　　　[7] *Hŏc est: 'ts as follows.*

[8] *Ipsō . . . equōrum : by the very terror caused by their horses.*

[9] 341, 521, I.

[10] *Illī,* i.e. the warriors, in distinction from the drivers, *aurīgae.*

[11] 127, 529, II.　　　　[12] 123, 500, II.

[13] 78, 420.　　　　　　[14] 93, 429.

[15] 185, 425, 1.

proelium[1] aliēnum esse tempus arbitrātus, brevī tempore[2] intermissō in castra legiōnēs reduxit. Secūtae sunt continuōs complūrēs diēs[3] tempestātēs, quae et nostrōs in castrīs continērent,[4] et hostem ā pūgnā prohibērent.

The Britons Combine, and March upon the Roman Camp, but Suffer a total Defeat.

XIII. Interim barbarī nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmisērunt, paucitātemque nostrōrum mīlitum suīs praedicāvērunt, et quanta in perpetuum suī līberandī[5] facultās darētur,[6] sī Rōmānōs castrīs[7] expulissent,[8] dēmōnstrāvērunt.   Hīs rēbus[9] celeriter māgnā multitūdine[2] peditātūs equitātūsque coāctā, ad castra vēnērunt.   Caesar legiōnēs in aciē prō castrīs cōnstituit.   Commissō proeliō,[2] nostrōrum mīlitum impetum hostēs ferre nōn potuērunt, āc terga vertērunt.   Quōs secūtī, complūrēs ex iīs occīdērunt; deinde omnibus longē lātēque aedificiīs[2] incēnsīs, sē in castra recēpērunt.

The Britons Sue for Peace.   Caesar Returns to the Continent.

XIV. Eōdem diē[10] lēgātī ab hostibus missī ad Caesarem dē pāce vēnērunt.   Hīs[11] Caesar numerum obsidum, quem anteā imperāverat, duplicāvit eōsque in continentem addūcī jūssit.   Ipse idōneam tempestātem nactus nāvēs solvit, quae omnēs incolumēs ad continentem pervēnērunt.

---

[1] 291, 543.   [2] Ablative Absolute.
[3] 98, 379.   [4] 123, 500, I.
[5] *Suī līberandī : of freeing themselves;* literally, *of the freeing of themselves. Suī* is in the Genitive plural after *līberandī,* according to Rule XVI., 31, 395. The Gerund usually governs the same case as the verb, but sometimes, by virtue of its *substantive nature,* it governs the *Genitive,* especially the Genitive of personal pronouns, *meī, nostrī, tuī, vestrī,* and *suī.*
[6] 127, 529, I.   [7] 153, 413.   [8] 127, 529, II.
[9] 78, 420.   [10] 93, 429.   [11] 54, 384, II.

Suggestions on Exercises in Latin Composition.

No exercises for Translation into Latin are given in connection with these passages of connected narrative, but it is not intended that this important subject should be neglected. The pupil may now begin Part II. of the " Introduction to Latin Composition "; but an exercise as often as once a week or once a fortnight is recommended, to be prepared. *by the teacher*, and based upon some passage of the Latin which the pupils have read. At first the pupils may be permitted to make their translation with the aid of the Latin; but the plan should be adopted early, of assigning the passage to be *committed to memory* by the pupil, and then requiring the translation into Latin within the hour assigned for the exercise, with no aid but the pupil's memory and the knowledge that he has acquired of the language. The following exercise, based upon paragraph II., page 282, is given simply as an illustration.

Translate into Latin.

Caesar says that in the consulship of Messala, Orgetorix, a chieftain (*prīnceps*[1]) of very high birth and of great wealth, persuaded the Helvetii to emigrate from their country. The territory of this tribe (*gēns*) was very limited for its population, and it was separated from the adjacent countries (*terra*) by high mountains and deep rivers. The Rhine hemmed them in on one side, Mount Jura on another, and on a third the Lake of Geneva and the Rhone. Thus (*itaque*) the warlike (*bellicōsus*) Helvetii were not able readily to carry on war against their neighbors.

---

[1] Words not occurring in the Latin passage may be furnished to the pupil, but in general he should be expected to give familiar words without aid.

SUGGESTIONS TO THE LEARNER.

I, THE preparation of a Reading Lesson in Latin involves—
1. A knowledge of the Meaning of the Latin words.
2. A knowledge of the Structure of the Latin Sentences.
3. A translation into English.

MEANING OF THE LATIN.

II. Remember that almost every inflected word in a Latin sentence requires the use of both the Dictionary and the Grammar to ascertain its meaning.

The Dictionary gives the meaning of the word without reference to its Grammatical properties of *case, number, mood, tense*, etc., and the Grammar, the meaning of the endings which mark those properties. The Dictionary will give the meaning of *mēnsa*, a table, but not of *mēnsārum*, of tables; the Grammar alone will give the force of the ending *ārum*.

III. Make yourself so familiar with all the endings of inflection, with their exact form and force, whether in declension or conjugation, that you will readily distinguish from one another not only the different parts of speech, but also the different forms of the same word, with their exact and distinctive force.

IV. In taking up a Latin sentence,

1. Notice carefully the endings of the several words, and thus determine which words are *nouns*, which *verbs*, etc.

2. Observe the force of each ending, and thus determine *case, number, voice, mood, tense*, etc.

This will be found to be a very important step toward the mastery of the sentence. By this means you will discover not only the relation of the words to one another, but also an important part of their meaning, that which they derive from their endings.

V. The key to the meaning of any simple sentence (**14, 347**) will be found in the simple subject and predicate, i. e. in the Nominative and its Verb. Hence in looking out the sentence, observe the following order. Take

1. The Subject, or Nominative.

The ending will in most instances enable you to distinguish this from all other words, except the adjectives which agree with it. These may be looked out at the same time with the subject.

Sometimes the subject is not expressed, but only implied in the ending of the verb. It may then be readily supplied, as it is always a pronoun of such person and number as the verb indicates; as, *audiō*, I hear, the ending *iō* showing that the subject is *ego; auditis*, you hear, the ending *itis* showing that the subject is *vōs*.

2. The Verb, with Predicate Noun or Adjective, if any.

This will be readily known by the ending. Now combining this with the Subject, you will have an outline of the sentence. All the other words must now be associated with these two parts.

3. The Modifiers of the Subject, i. e. adjectives agreeing with it, nominatives in apposition with it, genitives dependent upon it, etc.

But perhaps some of these have already been looked out in the attempt to ascertain the subject.

In looking out these words, bear in mind the meaning of the subject to which they belong. This will greatly aid you in selecting from the dictionary the true meaning in the passage before you.

4. The Modifiers of the Verb, i. e. (1) Oblique cases, Accusatives, Datives, etc., dependent upon it, and (2) Adverbs qualifying it.

Bear in mind all the while the force of the case and the meaning of the verb, that you may be able to select for each word the true meaning in the passage before you.

VI. In complex and compound sentences (**14,** 348, 349), discover first the connectives which unite the several mem-

bers, and then proceed with each member as with a simple sentence.

VII. In the use of Dictionary and Vocabulary, remember that you are to look, not for the particular form which occurs in the sentence, but for the Nominative Singular of nouns, adjectives, and pronouns, and for the First Person Singular, Present Indicative Active of Verbs. Therefore,

1. In Pronouns, make yourself so familiar with their declension, that any oblique case will at once suggest the Nominative Singular.

If *vōbīs* occurs, you must remember that the Nominative Singular is *tū.*

2. In Nouns and Adjectives, make yourself so familiar with the case-endings, that you will be able to drop that of the given case, and substitute for it that of the Nominative Singular.

Thus, mēns*ibus:* stem *mēnsi,* Nominative Singular *mēnsis,* which you will find in the Vocabulary. So ducem, *duc, ducs, dux.*

3. In Verbs, change the ending of the given form into that of the First Person Singular of the Present Indicative Active.

Thus, amā*bat:* stem *amā,* First Person Singular Present Indicative Active *amō,* which you will find in the Vocabulary. So amāv*ērunt;* First Person Perfect amāvī, Perfect stem *amāv,* Verb stem *amă; amō.*

To illustrate the steps recommended in the preceding suggestions, we add the following

Model.

VIII. Themistoclēs imperātor servitūte tōtam Graeciam līberāvit.

1. Without knowing the meaning of the words, you will discover from their *forms,*

1) That *Themistoclēs* and *imperātor* are probably nouns in the Nominative Singular,

2) That *servitūte* is a noun in the Ablative Singular,

3) That *tōtam* and *Graeciam* are either nouns or adjectives in the Accusative Singular,

4) That *līberāvit* is a verb in the Active voice, Indicative mood, Perfect tense, Third Person, Singular number.

2. Now, turning to the Vocabulary for the meaning of the words, you will learn,

1) That *Themistoclēs* is the name of an eminent Athenian general: THEMISTOCLES.

2) That *līberō*, for which you must look, not for *līberāvit*, means *to liberate :* LIBERATED.

      Themistocles liberated.

3) That *imperātor* means *commander ;* THE COMMANDER.

      Themistocles, the commander, liberated.

4) That *Graeciam* is the name of a country: GREECE.

      Themistocles the commander liberated Greece.

5) That *tōtus* means *the whole, all :* ALL.

      Themistocles the commander liberated all Greece.

6) That *servitūs* means *servitude :* FROM SERVITUDE.

      Themistocles the commander liberated all Greece from servitude.

STRUCTURE OF THE LATIN SENTENCE.

IX. The structure of a sentence is best shown by *analyzing* it and *parsing* the words which compose it.

Analysis.

X. Tell whether the sentence is simple, complex, or compound.

XI. In analyzing a Simple sentence (**14,** 347), name,

1. The Subject and Predicate, (1) in the simple form, and (2) in the complex form (**14,** 356, 357).

2. The Modifiers of the Subject, (1) in the simple form, and (2) in the complex form.

3. The Modifiers of the Predicate, (1) in the simple form, and (2) in the complex form.

If the Modifiers are complex, the analysis may be continued till all complex elements are explained.

Model.

XII. In hīs castrīs Cluīlius, Albānus rēx, moritur. *Cluīlius, the Alban king, dies in this camp.*

1. This is a simple sentence.

2. *Cluīlius* is the simple subject, and *moritur*, the simple predicate. *Cluīlius, Albānus rēx,* is the complex subject, and *in hīs castrīs moritur* is the complex predicate.

3. *Rēx* is the simple modifier of the subject *Cluīlius,* and *Albānus rēx,* the complex modifier, as *rēx* is modified by *Albānus,* an adjective agreeing with it.

4. *In castrīs* is the simple modifier of the predicate *moritur,* showing *where* he dies, and *in hīs castrīs* is the complex modifier, as *castrīs* is modified by *hīs.*

XIII. In analyzing a Complex sentence (**14,** 348),

1. Name the sentence or clause used as an element in it, with its connective.

2. Analyze the sentence as a whole, like a simple sentence.

3. Analyze the subordinate clause (**14,** 348, note 2).

Model.

XIV. Dōnec eris fēlīx, multōs numerābis amīcōs. *So long as you are prosperous, you will number many friends.*

1. This is a complex sentence.

2. *Dōnec eris fēlīx,* is a clause introduced as a modifier of *numerābis,* showing *when* you will number.

3. *Tū,* implied in *numerābis,* is the subject; *numerābis* is the simple predicate, *dōnec eris fēlīx, multōs numerābis amīcōs* is the complex predicate.

4. *Amīcōs* is the simple object of the predicate *numerābis,* and *multōs amīcōs* the complex object. *Dōnec eris fēlīx* is the adverbial modifier of the predicate.

5. *Dōnec eris fēlīx* is a simple sentence, with the connective *dōnec,* a conjunction connecting *numerābis* and *eris.* *Tū,* implied in *eris,* is the subject, and *eris fēlīx,* the predicate, *eris* being the copula, and *fēlīx* the predicate adjective.

XV. In analyzing a Compound sentence (**14,** 349),

1. Separate it into its members and name the connectives.

2. Analyze each member as a separate sentence.

Model.

XVI. Sōl ruit et montēs umbrantur.   *The sun hastens to its setting, and the mountains are shaded.*

1. This is a compound sentence (**14,** 349).

2. The members are *sōl ruit* and *montēs umbrantur*, connected by the conjunction *et*.

3. The members are simple sentences, and are analyzed accordingly.

Parsing.

XVII. In parsing a word,

1. Name the Part of Speech (Noun, Adjective, etc.) to which it belongs.

2. Inflect [1] it, if capable of inflection.

3. Give its gender, number, case, voice, mood, tense, person, etc. [2]

4. Give its Syntax and the Rule for it. [3]

Model.

XVIII. Rōmānī ab arātrō abduxērunt Cincinnātum, ut dictātor esset.   *The Romans took Cincinnatus from the plough, that he might be dictator.*

1. *Rōmani* is an adjective : *Rōmānus, a, um ;* STEM, *Rōmāno ;* decline. It is in the *Nominative Plural Masculine*, is used substantively, and is the *subject* of *abduxērunt*.   Give Rule III.

2. *Abduxērunt* is an active verb: *ab-dūcō, ab-dūcere, ab-duxī, ab-ductum,* compounded of *ab* and *dūcō ;* STEM, *ab-duc,* PERFECT STEM, *ab-dux.*   Give *synopsis* of the *mood.*   Inflect the *tense,* i. e. the Indicative Perfect Active (**207, 209**).   It is in the *Active* voice, *Indicative* mood, *Perfect* tense, *Third* person, *Plural* number, and agrees with *Rōmānī.*   Give Rule XXXVI.

---

[1] Inflect, i. e. decline, compare, or conjugate.

[2] That is, such of these properties as it possesses.

[3] No special Rule is deemed necessary for Prepositions, Conjunctions, or Interjections.   Prepositions are provided for by the rule for *Cases with Prepositions.*   Conjunctions are mere connectives, and are quite fully explained under *Moods.*   Interjections are only expressions of emotion, or mere marks of address, explained under *Cases.*

3. *Cincinnātum* is a Proper noun (**6**, 39, 1), of the Second Declension; STEM *Cincinnāto*; decline, used only in the singular. It is *Masculine*, in the *Accusative Singular*, and is the *direct object* of *abduxērunt.* Give Rule V.

4. *Ab* is a preposition used with the Ablative *arātrō.*

5. *Arātrō* is a noun of the Second Declension; STEM *arātro*; decline. It is of the *Neuter* Gender, in the *Ablative Singular*, and is used with the Preposition *ab.* Give Rule **XXXIII.**

6. *Ut* is a conjunction of purpose (**119**, 497), connecting *abduxērunt* and *esset.*

7. *Esset* is an intransitive verb: *sum, esse, fui* (**140**, 204). Give *synopsis* of the *mood*, and inflect the *tense*, i. e. Subjunctive Imperfect. It is in the *Subjunctive* mood, *Imperfect* tense, *Third* person, *Singular* number, and agrees with the pronoun *is*, he, implied in the ending. Give Rule **XXXVI.**

8. *Dictātor* is a noun of the Third Declension; STEM *dictātōr*; decline (**58**, 60). It is *Masculine*, in the *Nominative Singular*, and agrees, as Predicate noun, with the omitted subject of *esset.* Give Rule I.

TRANSLATION.

XIX. In translating, render as literally as possible without doing violence to the English.

In many important idioms of the Latin, a literal translation not only would fail to do justice to the original, but also would be a gross perversion of the mother-tongue. The following suggestions are intended to aid the pupil in disposing of such cases; but even in these, it is earnestly recommended that he should first construe literally, in order that he may be made to feel the force of the Latin construction before attempting a translation.

Participles.

XX. These are much more extensively used in Latin than in English; hence the frequent necessity, in translating them, of deviating from the Latin construction. They may generally be rendered in some one of the following ways [1] (**291,** 549).

---

[1] The pupil must early learn to determine from the context the appropriate rendering in each instance.

1. Literally :

Pyrrhus proeliō fūsus ā Tarentō recēssit, *Pyrrhus having been defeated in battle withdrew from Tarentum.*

2. By a Relative Clause :

Omnēs aliud agentēs, aliud simulantēs improbī sunt, *all who do one thing and pretend another are dishonest.*

3. By a Clause with a Conjunction :

1) With a Conjunction of Time, — *while, when, after,* etc.

Ūva mātūrāta dulcescit, *the grape when it has ripened* (having ripened), *becomes sweet.*

2) With a Conjunction of Cause, Reason, Manner, — *as, for, since,* etc.

Mīlitēs perfidiam veritī revertērunt, *the soldiers returned, because they feared perfidy.*

3) With a Conjunction of Condition, — *if.*

Accūsātus damnābitur, *if he is accused he will be condemned.*

4) With a Conjunction of Concession, — *though, although.*

Urbem ācerrimē dēfēnsam cēpit, *he took the city, though it was valiantly defended,* or *though valiantly defended.*

4. By a Verbal Noun :

Ad Rōmam conditam, *to the founding of Rome;* literally, *to Rome founded.* Ab urbe conditā, *from the founding of the city.* Post rēgēs exāctōs, *after the expulsion of the kings.*

5. By a Verb :

Rēx ēī benīgnē receptō fīliam dedit, *the king received him kindly and gave him his daughter;* literally, *gave his daughter to him kindly received.*

XXI. Participles with *nōn* or *nihil* are sometimes best rendered by *Participial* nouns dependent upon *without :*

Nōn rīdēns, *without laughing.*

XXII. Future Participles are sometimes best rendered by *Infinitives,* or by *Participial Nouns* with *for the purpose of :*

Rediit bellī cāsum tentātūrus, *he returned to try* (about to try) *the fortune of war.*

XXIII. The Ablative Absolute is sometimes best rendered (1) by a *Clause with—when, while, after, for, since, if, though,* etc., (2) by a *Noun* with a *Preposition,—in, during, after, by, from, through,* etc., or (3) by an *Active Participle* with its *Object:*

Servio rēgnante, *while Servius reigned,* or *in the reign of Servius* (literally, *Servius reigning*). Duce Fabiō, *under the command of Fabius* (literally, *Fabius being commander*).

Sometimes, as in the last example, a word denoting the *doer* of an action can be best rendered by the word which denotes the *thing done.* Thus, instead of *commander, consul, king,* we have *command, consulship, reign.*

Subjunctive.

XXIV. This may be rendered as follows:

1. With the *Potential* signs, *may, might, would, should* (**322,** 485):

Forsitan quaerātis, *perhaps you may inquire.* Hōc nēmō dixerit, *no one would say this.*

2. By the English Indicative. This is generally the best rendering

1) In clauses denoting Cause or Time (**334,** 517, **341,** 521):

Cum vīta metūs plēna sit, *since life is full of fear.* Cum Rōmam vēnisset, *when he had come to Rome.*

2) In Indirect Questions (**127,** 529, I.):

Quaeritur, cūr dissentiant, *it is asked why they disagree.*

3) In the Subjunctive in Indirect Clauses (**127,** 529, II.):

Vereor, nē, dum minuere velim labōrem, augeam, *I fear I shall increase the labor, while I wish to diminish it.*

4) In the Subordinate Clauses of Indirect Discourse (**262,** 524):

Hippiās glōriātus est ānulum quem habēret sē suā manū cōnfēcisse, *Hippias boasted that he had made with his own hand the ring which he wore* (had).

5) In Relative Clauses defining indefinite antecedents, and sometimes in clauses denoting *result* (**123,** 503, 500, 501):

Sunt quī putent, *there are some who think.* Ita vīxit ut Athē-
niēnsibus esset cārissimus, *he so lived, that he was very dear to the
Athenians.*

6) Sometimes in Conditional and Concessive clauses, and
in clauses with *Quīn* and *Quōminus* (**250**, 560, **254**, 515,
123, 500, II., **119**, 497, II.) :

Dum metuant, *if only* (provided) *they fear.* Sī voluisset, dīmi-
cāsset, *if he had wished, he would have fought.* Ut dēsint vīrēs,
tamen est laudanda voluntās, *though the strength fails, still the will
should be approved.* Adest nēmō, quīn videat, *there is no one present
who does not see.*

3. **By the Infinitive.**[1] This is often the best rendering

1) In Clauses denoting Purpose (**119**, 497) :

Contendit ut vincat, *he strives to conquer* (that he may conquer).
Decemvirī creātī sunt quī lēgēs scrīberent, *decemvirs were appointed
to prepare the laws* (who should prepare).

2) In Clauses denoting Result : hence after *dīgnus, in-
dīgnus, idōneus, aptus,* etc. (**123**, 500, 503) :

Nōn is sum quī hīs ūtar, *I am not such a one as to use* (he who may
use) *these things.* Fābulae dīgnae sunt quae legantur, *the fables are
worthy to be read* (which, *or* that they, should be read).

Infinitive.

XXV. The Infinitive has a much more extensive use in
Latin than in English. The following points require notice.

1. The Infinitive with a Subject is rendered by a *Finite*
verb with *that :*

Dīxit sē rēgem vīdisse, *he said that he had seen the king.*

2. The Historical Infinitive[2] is rendered by the Imperfect
Indicative :

Īram pater dissimulāre, *the father concealed his anger.*

---

[1] Observe, however, that the Infinitive here is not the translation of
the Subjunctive alone, but of the Subjunctive with its subject and con-
nective ; ut vincat, *to conquer* (literally, *that he may conquer*); quī ūtar,
as to use (literally, *who should* or *may use*).

[2] In lively descriptions the Present Infinitive is sometimes used for the
Imperfect or the *Perfect Indicative.* It is then called the **Historical In-
finitive**, and, like a finite verb, has its subject in the Nominative.

3. The Infinitive is sometimes best rendered by a *Participial noun* with *of*, *with*, etc.

Īnsimulātur mystēria violāsse, *he is accused of having violated the mysteries.*

Miscellaneous Idioms.

XXVI. The following Miscellaneous Idioms are added:

1. *Certiōrem facere* should be rendered, *to inform*, and *certior fierī*, *to be informed:*

Caesar certior factus est, *Caesar was informed.*

2. *Inter sē*, literally *between themselves*, is often best rendered, *from each other*, *from one another*, *to each other*, *to one another*, *together.*

Omnēs inter sē differunt, *they all differ from one another.*

3. *Nē — quidem*, with one or more words between the parts, should be rendered, *not even*, or *even — not:*

Nē nōmen quidem, *not even the name.*

4. When two or more verbs stand together in the same compound tense, the copula (*sum*) is generally expressed with the last only, but in rendering, the copula should be expressed with the first only:

Captus et in vincula cōjectus est, *he was taken and thrown into chains.*

5. *Quantō — tantō*, literally, *by as much as — by so much*, is often best rendered before comparatives, *the — the:*

Quantō diūtius cōnsīderō, tantō rēs vidētur obscūrior, *the longer* (by as much as the longer) *I consider the subject, the more obscure* (by so much the more obscure) *does it appear.*

6. A Clause with *quōminus*, 'by which the less,' or 'that the less,' may generally be rendered by a *Clause* with *that*, by the *Infinitive*, or by a *Participial noun* with *from*.

Per eum stetit quōminus dīmicārētur, *it was owing to him* (stood through him) *that the engagement was not made.* Nōn recūsāvit quōminus poenam subīret, *he did not refuse to submit to punishment.* Rēgem impedīit quōminus pūgnāret, *he prevented the king from fighting.*

ABBREVIATIONS.

---

abl.	ablative.
acc.	accusative.
adj.	adjective.
adv.	adverb.
comp.	comparative.
conj.	conjunction.
f.	feminine.
gen.	genitive.
impers.	impersonal.
indef.	indefinite.
interj.	interjection.
interrog.	interrogative.
lit.	literally.
m.	masculine.
n.	neuter.
nom.	nominative.
p.	page.
part.	participle.
pers.	personal.
pl.	plural.
pos.	positive.
prep.	preposition.
pron.	pronoun.
sing.	singular.
sup.	superlative.
w.	with.

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

A.

Ā, ab, *prep. w. abl. From ; by, in the direction of ; on.*

Abeō, ire, iī, itum. *To go away, depart.*

Abstineō, ēre, uī, tentum. *To abstain, refrain.* ABSTAIN.[1]

Absum, esse, āfuī. *To be absent, distant.* ABSENT.

Abundō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To abound, to be well supplied with.* ABOUND.

Āc, *conj. And.*

Acceptus, a, um, *part and adj. Acceptable.* ACCEPT.

Accidō, ere, ī. *To fall to, befall, happen ; accidit, it happens, comes to pass ;* 281, 301. ACCIDENT.

Accipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptum. *To accept, receive, take, admit.* ACCEPT.

Accommodātus, a, um, *part. and adj. Fitted, adapted.* ACCOMMODATE.

Accurrō, ere, currī *and* cucurrī, cursum. *To run to, hasten to.*

Accūsātiō, ōnis, *f. Accusation.*

Accūsātor, ōris, *m. Accuser.* ACCUSATION.

Accūsō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To accuse, censure, upbraid.* ACCUSE.

Ācer, ācris, ācre. *Sharp, severe.*

Aciēs, ēī, *f. Edge, line ; line of battle ;* aciem instruere, *to form the line of battle.*

Ācriter, *adv. Sharply, briskly, severely, vigorously, violently, harshly ;* ācriter pūgnātur, *a severe battle is fought;* 281, 301.

Acūtus, a, um, *part. and adj. Sharpened, sharp.*

Ad, *prep. w. acc. To, toward, for ; at, on, near, in the vicinity of ; according to.*

Adamō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To be greatly pleased with, to like very much.*

Addūcō, ere, duxī, ductum. *To lead to, lead, bring, induce.* ADDUCE.

Adeō, īre, iī, itum. *To go to, arrive at, reach, visit.*

Adequitō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To ride toward, ride.*

Adficiō, ere, fēcī, fectum. *To affect, visit.* AFFECT.

---

[1] The words thus added to the definition in SMALL CAPITALS are such as from their form readily suggest the corresponding Latin word.

14

**Adfīnĭtās, ātĭs, *f.* *Connection, re-
lationship.* AFFINITY.**

**Adflīctŏ, āre, āvī, ātum.   *To
trouble; to strand.* AFFLICT.**

**Adflīgŏ, ere, flīxī, flīctum.   *To
crush, damage.* AFFLICT.**

**Adhūc, *adv.* *Hitherto, as yet,
thus far.***

**Adĭgŏ, ere, ēgī, āctum. *To drive,
impel, hurl, throw.***

Adĭtus, ūs, *m.* *Approach.*

**Adjungŏ, ere, junxī, junctum.
To join, add, unite. ADJOIN.**

**Administrŏ, āre, āvī, ātum.   *To
administer, manage, execute,
direct, perform.* ADMINISTER.**

**Admīttŏ, ere, mīsī, missum.   *To
send to, send on, let go, admit;
to commit; equŏ admissŏ, with
his horse at full speed.* ADMIT.**

**Adŏrĭor, īrī, ortus sum.   *To rise
upon, attack.***

**Aduātŭcī, ōrum, *m.* *pl.* *The
Aduatuci,* a tribe of northern
Gaul.**

**Adŭlēscēns, entĭs, *m. and f.*
*Youth, young man, young wo-
man.* ADOLESCENCE.**

**Adventus, ūs, *m.* *Approach, ar-
rival.* ADVENT.**

**Aedĭfĭcĭum, ĭī, *n.* *Building, house.*
EDIFICE.**

**Aedĭfĭcŏ, āre, āvī, ātum. *To build.*
EDIFICE.**

**Aedŭī, ōrum, *m.* *pl.* *The Aedui*
or *Aeduans,* a tribe of central
Gaul.**

**Aedŭus, a, um. *Aeduan;* Aedŭus,
ī, *m.,* an *Aeduan,* one of the
Aedui.**

**Aegrē, *adv.*   *With   difficulty,
hardly, scarcely.***

**Aequĭtās, ātĭs, *f.* *Fairness, calm-
ness, kindness.* EQUITY.**

Aes, aeris, *n.* *Bronze, copper.*

Aestās, ātĭs, *f.* *Summer.*

Aestus, ūs, *m.* *Tide.* ESTUARY.

Aetās, ātĭs, *f.* *Age.*

**Agendĭcum, ī, *n.* *Agendicum,* a
town in central Gaul.**

**Ager, agrī, *m.* *Field;* agrī, *pl.,*
*fields, lands, country.***

**Aggrĕdĭor, ī, grēssus sum.   *To
attack, assail.* AGGRESSION.**

**Agmen, ĭnĭs, *n.* *Army on the
march, line of march;* extrē-
mum agmen, *the extremity of
the line, the rear;* novissimum
agmen, *the rear;* primum ag-
men, *the van.***

**Agŏ, ere, ēgī, āctum. *To lead,
drive; to do, act, perform; to
treat, plead, discourse, argue;*
grātĭās agere, *to return thanks,
thank.* ACT.**

**Agrĭcŏla, ae, *m.* *Husbandman,
farmer.* AGRICULTURE.**

Alcēs, ĭs, *f.* *Elk.*

**Alesĭa, ae, *f.* *Alesia,* a town in
central Gaul.**

**Aliēnus, a, um. *Another's; un-
favorable, unsuitable.* ALIEN.**

Aliquamdĭū, *adv.* *For a time.*

**Aliquis, qua, quid *and* quod. *Any,
any one.***

**Alius, a, ud. 42, 151. *Other, an-
other.* ALIAS.**

**Allobrŏgēs,, um, *m.* *pl.,* *sing.*
Allobrox, ŏgĭs, *The Allo-
broges,* a tribe of southeastern
Gaul.**

**Alŏ, ere, aluī, alĭtum *and* altum.
*To nourish, support.***

Alpēs, ĭum, *f. pl.* *Alps.*

Alter, tera, terum. **42, 151.** *The other* of two, *second.*

Altitūdō, inis, *f. Height, depth.*

Amicitia, ae, *f. Friendship.*

Amīcus, a, um. *Friendly;* amī-cus, ī, *m., friend.* AMICABLE.

Āmittō, ere, mīsī, missum. *To lose.*

Amō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To love.*

Amor, ōris, *m. Love.*

Amplus, a, um. *Ample, much.* AMPLE.

An, *conj. Or.*

Anceps, ancipitis. *Double, two-fold; doubtful, undecided.*

Ancora, ae, *f. Anchor.*

Angustiae, ārum, *f. pl. Narrow-ness; narrow pass, defile.*

Angustus, a, um. *Narrow; lim-ited, contracted; steep.*

Animadvertō, ere, ī, sum. *To turn the attention to, observe, notice.* ANIMADVERT.

Animal, ālis, *n. Animal.*

Animus, ī, *m. Mind, heart, soul.*

Annus, ī, *m. Year.* ANNUAL.

Annuus, a, um. *Annual, yearly, annually, for a year.* ANNUAL.

Ante, *adv.,* and *prep. w. acc. Before;* ante diem quīntum Kalendās Aprīlēs, *the 28th of March.*

Anteā, *adv. Before, formerly, previously.*

Antequam, *conj. Before.*

Antīquus, a, um. *Ancient, old, former.* ANTIQUE.

Ānulus, ī, *m. Ring.*

Apertus, a, um, *part.* and *adj. Open, exposed.*

Appellō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To call.* APPEAL.

Appetō, ere, īvī or ĭi, ĭtum. *To seek after, seek.* APPETITE.

Appropinquō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To approach.*

Aprīlis, e. *Of April;* ante diem quīntum Kalendās Aprīlēs, *the 28th of March.*

Apud, *prep. w. acc. In the pres-ence of, near, among, in, with, in the vicinity of; in the works of.*

Aquila, ae, *f. Eagle,* the stand-ard of the legion.

Aquilēia, ae, *f. Aquileia,* a town in northern Italy.

Aquilifer, erī, *m. Standard-bearer.*

Aquītānī, ōrum, *m. pl. The Aqui-tani* or *Aquitanians,* the in-habitants of the southwestern division of Gaul.

Arar, aris, *m.* **128.** *The Arar,* a river in southeastern Gaul, now the *Saône.*

Arbitror, ārī, ātus sum. *To think.* ARBITRATE.

Arcessō, ere, sīvī *or* sĭi, sītum. *To summon, invite.*

Ārdeō, ēre, ārsī, ārsum. *To burn; to be ardent, be eager.* ARDOR.

Āridum, ī, *n. Dry land.* ARID.

Ariovistus, ī, *m. Ariovistus,* a king of the Germans.

Arma, ōrum, *n. pl. Arms.*

Armō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To arm.*

Arō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To plough.*

Arrogantia, ae, *f. Arrogance.*

Artē, *adv. Closely; soundly.*

Artemīsia, ae, *f. Artemisia,* queen of Caria.

Artificium, iī, *n. Artifice.*

Arvernī, ōrum, *m. pl. The Ar-verni,* a tribe of southern Gaul.

Ārx, arcis, *f. Citadel.*

Ascendō, ere, ī, cēnsum. *To ascend.*

Athēnae, ārum, *f. pl. Athens.*

Athēniēnsis, is, *m. and f. Athenian.*

Atque, *conj. And.*

Atticus, ī, *m. Atticus,* a Roman name.

Attingō, ere, tigī, tāctum. *To touch, reach.*

Auctor, ōris, *m. Author, advocate.*

Auctōritās, ātis, *f. Authority, influence, reputation.*

Audācia, ae, *f. Audacity, boldness.* AUDACITY.

Audācter, *adv. Boldly.* AUDACITY.

Audeō, ēre, ausus sum. **319.** *To dare.*

Audiō, īre, īvī *or* iī, ītum. *To hear, hear of.* AUDIENCE.

Augeō, ēre, auxī, auctum. *To augment, increase.*

Aureus, a, um. *Golden, gold.*

Aurīga, ae, *m. Charioteer, driver.*

Aurum, ī, *n. Gold.*

Aut, *conj. Either, or;* aut . . . aut, *either . . . or.*

Autem,[1] *conj. But.*

Auxilium, iī, *n. Aid, help;* auxilia, *pl., auxiliaries.*

Avāritia, ae, *f. Avarice.*

Āvertō, ere, ī, sum. *To turn aside, turn away;* āversus, *turned away, in retreat, retreating.* AVERT.

Avis, is, *f. Bird.*

Avus, ī, *m. Grandfather.*

B.

Barbarus, a, um. *Barbarous, rude;* barbarus, ī, *m.,* a barbarian. BARBAROUS.

Beātus, a, um. *Blessed, happy, prosperous.*

Belgae, ārum, *m. pl. The Belgae* or *Belgians,* the inhabitants of the northern division of Gaul.

Bellicōsus, a, um. *Warlike.*

Bellō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To war, wage war, carry on war.*

Bellovacī, ōrum, *m. pl. The Bellovaci,* a tribe of northwestern Gaul.

Bellum, ī, *n. War.*

Beneficium, iī, *n. Benefit, favor.* BENEFICE.

Bibracte, is, *n. Bibracte,* the chief town of the Aedui.

Bibrax, actis, *n. Bibrax,* a town of the Remi.

Biennium, iī, *n. Two years, space of two years.* BIENNIAL.

Biturigēs, um, *m. pl. The Bituriges,* a tribe of central Gaul.

Boiī, ōrum, *m. pl. The Boii,* a tribe of central Gaul.

Bonitās, ātis, *f. Goodness, excellence.*

Bonus, a, um, *comp.* melior, *sup.* optimus. *Good.*

Breviter, *adv. Briefly.*

Britannī, ōrum, *m. pl. Britons.*

Britannia, ae, *f. Britain.*

Brūtus, ī, *m. Brutus,* a Roman name.

---

[1] *Autem* is postpositive, i. e. it is placed after one or more words in its clause.

C.

Cabillōnum, ī, n. *Cabillonum, a town in eastern Gaul.*

Cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsum. *To fall.*

Caedēs, is, f. *Slaughter.*

Caesar, aris, m. *Caesar, the celebrated general, statesman, and author.*

Calamitās, ātis, f. *Calamity, disaster.* CALAMITY.

Cantium, iī, n. *Kent.*

Cantus, ūs, m. *Singing, song.*

Capillus, ī, m. *Hair.* CAPILLARY.

Capiō, ere, cēpī, captum. *To take; cōnsilium capere, to take counsel, form a plan.*

Captīvus, ī, m. *Captive.*

Caput, itis, n. *Head.* CAPITAL.

Cāria, ae, f. *Caria, a country in Asia Minor.*

Carina, ae, f. *Keel, bottom of a vessel.*

Carō, carnis, f. *Flesh.* CARNAL.

Carrus, ī, m. *Cart, wagon.*

Cārus, a, um. *Dear.*

Cassius, iī, m. *Cassius, a Roman name.*

Castellum, ī, n. *Redoubt.* CASTLE.

Casticus, ī, m. *Casticus, a Sequanian chieftain.*

Castra, ōrum, n. pl. *Camp.*

Cāsus, ūs, m. *Accident, occurrence, emergency, vicissitude, fortune.*

Catēna, ae, f. *Chain.*

Catō, ōnis, m. *Cato, a Roman name.*

Causa, ae, f. *Cause, reason.* CAUSE.

Cecidī. *See cadō.*

Celeritās, ātis, f. *Celerity, speed.* CELERITY.

Celeriter, adv. *Quickly, speedily.* CELERITY.

Celtae, ārum, m. pl. *Celts, the inhabitants of the central division of Gaul.*

Cēnsus, ūs, m. *Census, enumeration.*

Centum, *indeclinable.* *Hundred.*

Centuriō, ōnis, m. *Centurion.*

Certē, adv. *Certainly, at least.* CERTAIN.

Certus, a, um. *Certain, fixed, appointed; certiōrem facere, to make more certain; to inform.* CERTAIN.

Cevenna, ae, m. *Cevenna, a mountain range in southern Gaul, now the Cévennes.*

Cicerō, ōnis, m. *Cicero; (1) the celebrated orator; (2) a lieutenant under Caesar.*

Circiter, adv., and prep. w. acc. *About.*

Circum, prep. w. acc. *Around, about, near, in the vicinity or neighborhood of.*

Circumdō, are, dedī, datum. *To place around; to surround.*

Circumsistō, ere, stitī. *To stand around, surround.*

Cis, prep. with acc. *On this side of.*

Citerior, us, comp. adj., sup. citimus. *Nearer; Gallia citerior, the Roman province of Gaul south of the Alps, Cisalpine Gaul.*

Citrā, prep. w. acc. *On this side of.*

Cīvis, is, m. and f. *Citizen.*

Cīvĭtās, ātis, *f.* *State; citizens; citizenship.*

Clāmĭtŏ, āre, āvī, ātum. *To exclaim, cry out.*

Clāmor, ōris, *m.* *Shout.*

Clārus, a, um. *Clear; illustrious, renowned.* CLEAR.

Clāssis, is, *f.* *Fleet.*

Claudō, ere, sī, sum. *To close, shut.* CLOSE.

Clēmentia, ae, *f.* *Clemency, mercy.* CLEMENCY.

Cliēns, entis, *m. and f.* *Client, dependant.* CLIENT.

Coëmŏ, ere, ēmī, ēmptum. *To buy up, buy, purchase, obtain by purchase.*

Coepī, isse.[1] *To begin.*

Coërceō, ēre, uī, itum. *To restrain, control.* COERCE.

Cōgnōscŏ, ere, nōvī, itum. *To ascertain.*

Cōgŏ, ere, ēgī, āctum. *To drive together, bring together, collect; to force, compel.*

Cohors, ortis, *f.* *Cohort,* a tenth of a legion.

Cohortātiŏ, ōnis, *f.* *Exhortation, encouragement.*

Cohortor, ārī, ātus sum. *To exhort, encourage.*

Cōiciō,[2] ere, jēcī, jectum. *To throw, hurl, cast.*

Collis, is, *m.* *Hill.*

Collocŏ, āre, āvī, ātum. *To place, station.* COLLOCATE.

Colloquium, iī, *n.* *Conversation, conference, interview.* COLLOQUY.

Colōnia, ae, *f.* *Colony.*

Combūrŏ, ere, ussī, ūstum. *To burn up, burn.* COMBUSTION.

Comes, itis, *m. and f.* *Companion.*

Commeātus, ūs, *m.* *Supplies, provisions.*

Commemorātiŏ, ōnis, *f.* *Mentioning, mention, remembrance.* COMMEMORATION.

Commemorŏ, āre, āvī, ātum. *To mention; to speak.* COMMEMORATE.

Commeŏ, āre, āvī, ātum. *To go back and forth, resort.*

Commīlitŏ, ōnis, *m. and f.* *Fellow-soldier.*

Committŏ, ere, mīsī, missum. *To commit;* proelium committere, *to engage in battle.*

Commius, iī, *m.* *Commius,* a chieftain of the Atrebates.

Commoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtum. *to move, disturb, alarm.* COMMOTION.

Commūniŏ, īre, īvī or iī, ītum. *To wall around, encompass, surround.*

Commūnis, e. *Common, general;* commūnis rēs, *common interest.*

Comparŏ, āre, āvī, ātum. *To prepare, raise.*

Compello, ere, pulī, pulsum. *To drive.* COMPEL.

Compleŏ, ēre, ēvī, ētum. *To fill, cover.* COMPLETE.

Complūrēs, plūra *or* plūria. *Very many, many, several.*

---

[1] Not used in the Present system.
[2] Pronounced as if spelled *cōjiciō.*

Comportō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To bring together, gather.*

Cōnātus, ūs, *m. Undertaking, attempt, purpose.*

Concēdō, ere, cēssī, cēssum. *To concede, grant, permit.* CON-CEDE.

Concidō, ere, ī. *To fall.*

Concīdō, ere, ī, sum. *To cut down, destroy, kill, slay.*

Conciliō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To win, secure.* CONCILIATE.

Concilium, iī, *n. Council, meeting.* COUNCIL.

Conclāmō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To shout, call out.*

Concursus, ūs, *m. Running together, running about, running to and fro, agitation.* CON-COURSE.

Condōnō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To condone, pardon, forgive.* CON-DONE.

Condūcō, ere, duxī, ductum. *To lead together.* CONDUCT.

Cōnferō, ferre, contulī, collātum. *To carry together, bring together, gather, collect.* CON-FER.

Cōnfertus, a, um. *Dense, crowded, compact.*

Cōnfestim, *adv. Hastily, speedily.*

Cōnficiō, ere, fēcī, fectum. *To make out, make, complete, accomplish, finish, bring to a close.*

Cōnfīdō, ere, fisus sum.[1] *To trust, be confident; to have confidence in, rely upon.* CONFIDE. (Fol-

lowed by the Ablative or by the Dative.)

Cōnfirmō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To confirm, strengthen, establish, assure, fix; to comfort.* CON-FIRM.

Cōnflīgō, ere, flīxī, flīctum. *To contend, fight.* CONFLICT.

Conjungō, ere, junxī, junctum. *To join, unite.* CONJOIN.

Conjunx, ugis, *m. and f. Spouse; husband; wife.*

Conjūrātiō, ōnis, *f. Conspiracy.*

Conjūrō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To conspire.*

Cōnor, ārī, ātus sum. *To attempt, try.*

Conquīrō, ere, sīvī *or* siī, sītum. *To search for, seek.*

Cōnscius, a, um. *Conscious, aware.* CONSCIOUS.

Cōnscrībō, ere, scripsī, scriptum. *To enrol, enlist.* CONSCRIPT.

Cōnsequor, ī, secūtus sum. *To pursue, follow, overtake.*

Cōnservō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To save, preserve, spare.* CON-SERVE.

Cōnsīdius, iī, *m. Considius,* an officer in Caesar's army.

Cōnsīdō, ere, sēdī, sēssum. *To sit down, settle, post one's self, encamp.*

Cōnsilium, iī, *n. Counsel, plan.* COUNSEL.

Cōnsimilis, e. *Similar, like.*

Cōnsistō, ere, stitī, stitum. *To get a footing, stand firm.* CONSIST.

Cōnspēctus, ūs, *m. Sight, view.* CONSPICUOUS.

---

[1] See 259.

Cōnspĭcĭō, ere, spĕxī, spĕctum. *To behold.* CONSPICUOUS.

Cōnstanter, *adv. Consistently, uniformly.* CONSTANT.

Cōnstantia, ae, *f. Constancy, steadfastness.* CONSTANCY.

Cōnstĭtŭō, ere, ŭī, ūtum. *To station, place; to determine, decide.* CONSTITUTE.

Cōnstō, āre, stĭtī, stātum. *To stand firm; to be established, be evident, be plain, be manifest, be admitted.* CONSTANT.

Cōnsŭēscō, ere, suēvī, suētum. *To become accustomed;* cōnsuēvī, *I have become accustomed, I am accustomed.*

Cōnsuētūdŏ, ĭnis, *f. Custom, usage.*

Cōnsul, ŭlis, *m. Consul,* one of the two presidents of the Roman commonwealth.

Cōnsŭlō, ere, ŭī, sultum. *To consult.*

Cōnsultō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To consult.*

Cōnsultum, ī, *n. Decree.*

Contendō, ere, ī, tentum. *To contend; to hasten.* CONTEND.

Contentus, a, um. *Content, contented, satisfied.* CONTENT.

Contĭnēns, entis, *f. Continent, mainland.* CONTINENT.

Continenter, *adv. Continually, incessantly.*

Contĭneō, ēre, ŭī, tentum. *To retain, restrain, confine, keep, enclose, surround.* CONTAIN.

Contĭnuus, a, um. *Continuous, successive.* CONTINUOUS.

Contrā, *adv., and prep. w. acc. Against, contrary to, over against, opposite, in opposition.* CONTRARY.

Contrahō, ere, traxī, tractum. *To contract.*

Contrōversia, ae, *f. Controversy, dispute.* CONTROVERSY.

Convĕnĭō, īre, vēnī, ventum. *To come together, meet, come.* CONVENE.

Conventus, ūs, *m. Convention, meeting, assembly, council.* CONVENTION.

Convertō, ere, ī, sum. *To turn, change.* CONVERT.

Convŏcō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To call together, assemble.* CONVOKE.

Cōpĭa, ae, *f. Abundance, supply, number; pl., supplies; forces, troops.* COPIOUS.

Cōpĭōsus, a, um. *Well-supplied, wealthy.* COPIOUS.

Corōna, ae, *f. Crown, garland.* CROWN.

Cotīdĭānus, a, um. *Daily.*

Cotīdĭē, *adv. Daily.*

Cotta, ae, *m. Cotta,* a lieutenant under Caesar.

Crassus, ī, *m. Crassus,* a Roman name.

Crēber, bra, brum. *Frequent.*

Crēdō, ere, dĭdī, dĭtum. *To believe.* CREED. (Followed by the Dative.)

Creō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To create, make, appoint, elect.* CREATE.

Crūdēlis, e. *Cruel.*

Crūdēlĭter, *adv. Cruelly.*

Culpa, ae, *f. Fault, blame.* CULPABLE.

Cultus, ūs, *m. Cultivation, refinement, civilization.*

Cum, *prep. w. abl. With.*

Cum, *conj. When, while; since, as; although.*

Cunctor, *āri, ātus sum. To hesitate.*

Cupidē, *adv. Eagerly.*

Cupidus, *a, um. Desirous.*

Cupiō, *ere, īvī or ii, ītum. To desire.*

Cūr, *conj. Why.*

Cūra, *ae, f. Care.*

Cūrō, *āre, āvī, ātum. To care, care for;* aliquid faciendum cūrō, *to have a thing done.*

Currus, *ūs, m. Chariot.*

Custōdiō, *īre, īvī or ii, ītum. To guard.* CUSTODY.

Cȳrus, *ī, m. Cyrus, king of Persia.*

D.

Dē, *prep. w. abl. Of, from; about, in regard to, concerning; in the course of; for.*

Dēbeō, *ēre, uī, itum. To owe; ought.* DEBT.

Decem, *indeclinable. Ten;* decem novem, *nineteen.*

Dēcernō, *ere, crēvī, crētum. To decide, decree.*

Dēcertō, *āre, āvī, ātum. To contend, struggle, fight.*

Decimus, *a, um. Tenth.* DECIMAL.

Dēcrētum, *ī, n. Decree, decision.*

Dēdūcō, *ere, duxī, ductum. To lead forth, conduct.* DEDUCE.

Dēfendō, *ere, ī, fēnsum. To defend.*

Dēfēnsor, *ōris, m. Defender.*

Dēfessus, *a, um. Tired, exhausted, weary.*

Dēficiō, *ere, fēcī, fectum. To fail, to be insufficient.* DEFICIENT.

Deinde, *adv. Then, in the next place.*

Dēlēctō, *āre, āvī, ātum. To delight, please.*

Dēleō, *ēre, ēvī, ētum. To destroy.*

Dēlīberō, *āre, āvī, ātum. To deliberate.*

Dēligō, *ere, lēgī, lēctum. To choose, elect, select.*

Dēligō, *āre, āvī, ātum. To fasten, moor.*

Dēlitēscō, *ere, lituī. To hide.*

Dēmetō, *ere, messuī, messum. To cut down, reap.*

Dēminuō, *ere, uī, ūtum. To diminish, lessen.*

Dēmōnstrō, *āre, āvī, ātum. To demonstrate, show.* DEMONSTRATE.

Dēmum, *adv. At length.*

Dēnique, *adv. Finally, at length.*

Dēpōnō, *ere, posuī, positum. To lay down, lay aside.* DEPOSE.

Dēpopulor, *āri, ātus sum. To ravage, lay waste.* DEPOPULATE.

Dēprecātor, *ōris, m. Pleader, spokesman, agent;* eō dēprecātōre, *by his intercession.* DEPRECATE.

Dēsīgnō, *āre, āvī, ātum. To designate, indicate.* DESIGNATE.

Dēsiliō, *īre, uī, sultum. To leap out, leap forth, leap down.*

Dēsistō, *ere, stitī, stitum. To desist, cease.* DESIST.

Dēstringō, *ere, strinxī, strictum. To unsheathe, draw.*

Dēsum, esse, fuī. *To be wanting, to fail.* (Followed by the Dative.)

Dēterreō, ēre, uī, ĭtum. *To deter.*

Dētineō, ēre, uī, tentum. *To detain.*

Dētrīmentum, ī, n. *Detriment, loss, disadvantage.* DETRIMENT.

Dīcō, ere, dixī, dictum. *To say, speak, mention, state; to appoint; causam dīcere, to plead a cause, make a defence.*

Diēs, ēī, m. *Day; time; multō diē, long after sunrise; ante diem quintum Kalendās Aprīlēs, the 28th of March.*

Difficilis, e. *Difficult.*

Difficultās, ātis, f. *Difficulty.*

Dīligenter, adv. *Diligently, attentively.* DILIGENT.

Dīligentia, ae, f. *Diligence, carefulness.* DILIGENCE.

Dionȳsius, iī, m. *Dionysius, tyrant of Syracuse.*

Discēdō, ere, cēssī, cēssum. *To withdraw, depart, swerve.*

Discipulus, ī, m. *Pupil.* DISCIPLE.

Disicĭō,[1] ere, jēcī, jectum. *To break asunder, separate.*

Dispergō, ere, sī, sum. *To scatter, disperse.* DISPERSE.

Dissentiō, ōnis, f. *Dissension, disagreement.* DISSENSION.

Distineō, ēre, tinuī, tentum. *To keep apart, separate.*

Diū, adv., comp. diūtius, sup. diūtissimē. *Long, for a long time.*

Dīves, ĭtis, comp. dīvĭtior or dītior, sup. dīvĭtissimus or dītissimus. *Rich, wealthy.*

Dīvicō, ōnis, m. *Divico, an Helvetian chieftain.*

Dīvĭdō, ere, vīsī, vīsum. *To divide, separate.* DIVIDE.

Dīvīnus, a, um. *Divine, religious.* DIVINE.

Dīvitiacus, ī, m. *Divitiacus, an Aeduan chieftain.*

Dō, dare, dedī, datum. *To give; in fugam dare, to put to flight.*

Doceō, ēre, uī, dōctum. *To teach, inform.*

Dōctrīna, ae, f. *Learning.* DOCTRINE.

Dōctus, a, um, part. and adj. *Learned.*

Dolor, ōris, m. *Pain, grief.*

Domus, ūs, f. *House; home; domī, at home.*

Dōnō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To present.*

Dōnum, ī, n. *Gift, present.*

Dormiō, īre, īvī or iī, ĭtum. *To sleep.* DORMANT.

Druidēs, um, m. pl. *Druids, the priests of the Gauls.*

Dubitō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To doubt, hesitate.*

Ducentī, ae, a. *Two hundred.*

Dūcō, ere, duxī, ductum. *To lead.* DUCT.

Dum, conj. *While; until.*

Dumnorix, igis, m. *Dumnorix, an Aeduan chieftain.*

Duo, ae, o. **97, 175.** *Two.*

Duodecim, indeclinable. *Twelve.*

Duodēquadrāgintā, indeclinable. *Thirty-eight.*

---

[1] Pronounced as if spelled *disjiciō.*

a

Duplex, icis. *Double.*

Duplicō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To double.* DUPLICATE.

Dux, ducis, m. *and* f. *Leader.*

E.

Ē, prep. w. abl. See *Ex.*

Ēdūcō, ere, duxī, ductum. *To lead out.* EDUCE.

Effēminō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To effeminate, enervate.* EFFEMINATE.

Efficiō, ere, fēcī, fectum. *To make, construct, effect, produce, occasion, bring about.* EFFECT.

Ego, meī, pers. pron. **102, 184.** *I, myself.*

Ēgredior, ī, grēssus sum. *To go out, go forth, depart, disembark.* EGRESS.

Ēgregiē, adv. *Excellently.* EGREGIOUS.

Ēgregius, a, um. *Distinguished.* EGREGIOUS.

Ēiciō,[1] ere, jēcī, jectum. *To cast out, drive out, expel.* EJECT.

Enim,[2] conj. *For.*

Ēnūntiō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To announce, report, disclose.*

Eō, īre, īvī or iī, itum. **277, 295.** *To go.*

Epistula, ae, f. *Letter, epistle.* EPISTLE.

Eques, itis, m. *Horseman;* pl., *horsemen, cavalry.*

Equester, tris, tre. *Equestrian;* equestre proelium, *cavalry engagement.*

Equitātus, ūs, m. *Cavalry.*

Equus, ī, m. *Horse.*

Eram. See *Sum.*

Ērigō, ere, rēxī, rēctum. *To erect, raise;* sē ērigere, *to lift one's self, rise.* ERECT.

Ērudiō, īre, īvī or iī, ītum. *To instruct.* ERUDITE.

Esseda, ae, f. *War-chariot, chariot.*

Essedārius, iī, m. *Chariot-fighter, a warrior who fought in a war-chariot.*

Et, conj. *And;* et . . . et, *both . . . and.*

Etiam, adv. *Also, even.*

Etsī, conj. *Although.*

Ēvocō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To summon forth, call out.* EVOKE.

Ex, ē, prep. w. abl. *Out of, from, of.*

Excēdō, ere, cēssī, cēssum. *To withdraw.*

Excitō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To excite, arouse.* EXCITE.

Excruciō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To torture.* EXCRUCIATING.

Excursiō, ōnis, f. *Sally, sortie.* EXCURSION.

Excūsō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To excuse.*

Exemplum, ī, n. *Example.*

Exeō, īre, iī, itum. *To go out, go forth, depart.* EXIT.

Exercitus, ūs, m. *Army.*

Exigō, ere, ēgī, āctum. *To complete, finish, end.* EXACT.

Exiguitās, ātis, f. *Smallness, small size.*

---

[1] Pronounced as if spelled *ējiciō.*

[2] *Enim* is *postpositive;* see page 316, foot-note.

Exiguus, a, um. *Restricted, lim-ted, scanty, small, brief.*

Existimō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To think.*

Expedītus, a, um, *part. and adj. Unembarrassed, ready, quick.* EXPEDITE.

Expellō, ere, pulī, pulsum. *To expel, drive out.* EXPEL.

Explōrātor, ōris, *m. Scout.* EXPLORER.

Explōrō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To explore, investigate.* EXPLORE.

Expōnō, ere, posuī, positum. *To expose, arrange.* EXPOSE.

Expūgnō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To take by storm, storm.*

Exspectō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To expect, await.* EXPECT.

Exspoliō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To rob, deprive.*

Exsul, ulis, *m. and f. Exile.*

Exterus, a, um, *comp.* exterior, *sup.* extrēmus *and* extimus. *Outer ;* extrēmus, *extreme ; outermost extremity of.*

Extrā, *prep. w. acc. Beyond, outside of.*

Exūrō, ere, ūssī, ūstum. *To burn up, burn.*

F.

Fabius, iī, *m. Fabius,* a cele-brated general.

Fābula, ae, *f. Fable, story.* FABLE.

Facile, *adv. Easily.* FACILE.

Facilis, e, *comp.* facilior, *sup.* facillimus. *Easy.* FACILE.

Facinus, oris, *n. Misdeed, crime.*

Faciō, ere, fēcī, factum. *To do, make ;* iter facere, *to march ;* vim facere, *to use force.* FACT.

Facultās, ātis, *f. Ability, op-portunity, means ; pl., means, wealth.* FACULTY.

Falsus, a, um. *False.*

Familiāris, e. *Domestic, private ;* rēs familiāris, *private property.* FAMILIAR.

Faveō, ēre, fāvī, fautum. *To favor.* (Followed by the Dative.)

Fēliciter, *adv. Happily, success-fully.* FELICITOUS.

Fēlix, īcis. *Happy, fortunate.*

Ferāx, ācis. *Productive, fertile.*

Ferē, *adv. Almost, nearly.*

Ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum. 269, 292. *To bear, carry, present, bring ; to endure ;* lēgem ferre, *to pro-pose a law.*

Fertilis, e. *Fertile.*

Fertilitās, ātis, *f. Fertility.*

Ferus, a, um. *Fierce, savage.*

Fidēlis, e. *Faithful.* FIDELITY.

Fidēs, ēī, *f. Faith, confidence, trust ; pledge.*

Fidus, a, um. *Faithful.*

Figūra, ae, *f. Figure, form, shape.* FIGURE.

Filia, ae, *f. Daughter.* FILIAL.

Filius, iī, *m.* 36, 51, 5. *Son.* FILIAL.

Fingō, ere, finxī, fictum. *To form, fashion ;* vultum fingere, *to control the countenance.*

Fīniō, īre, īvī *or* iī, ītum. *To bound, limit, end.* FINAL.

Finis, is, *m. and f. End, limit ;* finēs, *m. pl., boundaries ; terri-tory.*

Fīnītimus, a, um. *Neighboring.*

Fīō, fierī, factus sum. 277, 294. *To be made ; to happen, come to pass.*

Firmiter, *adv. Firmly.*

Flaccus, ī, *m. Flaccus*, a Roman name.

Flāgitō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To demand.*

Flūctus, ūs, *m. Wave.* FLUCTU-ATE.

Flūmen, inis, *n. Stream, river.*

Fluō, ere, flūxī, flūxum. *To flow.*

Fore. See **140**, 204, 2.

Forsitan, *adv. Perhaps.*

Fortis, e. *Brave.*

Fortiter, *adv. Bravely, courageously.*

Fortitūdŏ, inis, *f. Fortitude, courage.* FORTITUDE.

Fortūna, ae, *f. Fortune.*

Fŏssa, ae, *f. Ditch, moat.* FOSS.

Frangō, ere, frēgī, frāctum. *To break, crush, wreck.* FRACT-URE.

Frāter, tris, *m. Brother.* FRA-TERNAL.

Fremitus, ūs, *m. Din, noise.*

Frētus, a, um. *Relying on, trusting to.*

Frūmentārius, a, um. *Pertaining to grain;* rēs frūmentāria, *grain, supplies.*

Frūmentātiō, ōnis, *f. Foraging, provisioning.*

Frūmentor, ārī, ātus sum. *To gather grain, forage.*

Frūmentum, ī, *n. Grain.*

Fuga, ae, *f. Flight;* in fugam dare, *to put to flight.*

Fugitīvus, ī, *m. Runaway, deserter.* FUGITIVE.

Funda, ae, *f. Sling.*

Futūrus, a, um. *See Sum.*

G.

Gabīnius, iī, *m. Gabinius*, a Roman name.

Gāius, iī, *m. Gaius*, a Roman name.

Galba, ae, *m. Galba*, a lieutenant under Caesar.

Gallia, ae, *f. Gaul.*

Gallicus, a, um. *Gallic.*

Gallus, ī, *m. Gaul, a Gaul.*

Gemma, ae, *f. Gem.*

Genāva, ae, *f. Geneva.*

Gener, erī, *m. Son-in-law.*

Gēns, gentis, *f. Race, tribe, nation.*

Genus, eris, *n. Kind, class.*

Germānia, ae, *f. Germany.*

Germānus, a, um. *German;* Germānus, ī, m., *a German.*

Gerō, ere, gessī, gestum. *To bear, conduct, carry on, wage, do; to hold.*

Gladius, iī, *m. Sword.*

Glōria, ae, *f. Glory.*

Gnaeus, ī, *m. Gnaeus*, a Roman name.

Graecia, ae, *f. Greece.*

Graecus, a, um. *Greek, Grecian.*

Grātia, ae, *f. Gratitude, favor;* pl., *thanks.* GRACE.

Grātulor, ārī, ātus sum. *To congratulate; to thank.* (Followed by the Dative.)

Grātus, a, um. *Acceptable, pleasing.*

Gravis, e. *Heavy, severe, grave.* GRAVE.

Graviter, *adv. Severely, grievously.*

Gubernātor, ōris, *m. Pilot.* GU-BERNATORIAL.

H.

Habeō, ēre, uī, ĭtum. *To have, hold, regard, regard as.*

Habĭtō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To reside, live, dwell.*

Hannibal, alis, *m.* *Hannibal,* a celebrated Carthaginian general. .

Harūdēs, um, *m. pl.* *The Harudes,* a tribe of southwestern Germany.

Helvētiī, ōrum, *m. pl.* *The Helvetii* or *Helvetians,* a people inhabiting Switzerland.

Helvētius, a, um. *Helvetian.*

Hērēdĭtās, ātis, *f.* *Inheritance.*

Hērodotus, ī, *m.* *Herodotus,* a Greek historian.

Hīberna, ōrum, *n. pl.* *Winter quarters.*

Hīc, haec, hōc. **102,** 186. *This, this one, the latter, he, she, it.*

Hiemō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To winter, pass the winter.*

Hiems, emis, *f.* *Winter.*

Historia, ae, *f.* *History.*

Homō, ĭnis, *m. and f.* *Man, human being, person.*

Honor, ōris, *m.* *Honor.* ,

Hōra, ae, *f.* *Hour.*

Hortor, ārī, ātus sum. *To exhort, urge.*

Hospes, itis, *m. and f.* *Guest; host.*

Hostis, is, *m. and f.* *Enemy.*

Hūc, adv. *Hither; to this place.*

Hūmānĭtās, ātis, *f.* *Culture, refinement.* HUMANITY. ,

Hūmānus, a, um. *Humane; civilized.* HUMANE.

I.

Ibī, *adv.* *There.*

Īdem, eadem, idem. **102,** 186. *Same, the same.*

Idōneus, a, um. *Suitable, fit, proper.*

Īdūs, uum, *f. pl.* *Ides,* the 15th day of March, May, July, and October; in other months the 13th.

Ieram. See *Eō.*

Igitur, *conj.* *Therefore.*

Ignis, is, *m.* *Fire.*

Iī. See *Eō.*

Ille, a, ud. **102,** 186. *That, that one, the former, he, she, it.*

Illō, *adv.* *Thither, to that place.*

Impedimentum, ī, *n.* *Impediment, hinderance, embarrassment; pl., hinderances; baggage* of an army. IMPEDI-MENT.

Impedĭō, īre, īvī or iī, ītum. *To impede, hinder, embarrass.* IM-PEDE.

Impedītus, a, um, *part. and adj.* *Impeded, hindered, embarrassed; entangled.* IMPEDED.

Impendeō, ēre. *To overhang.* IMPEND. (Followed by the Dative.)

Imperātor, ōris, *m.* *General, commander.* .

Imperātum, ī, *n.* *Order, bidding, command;* imperātum facere, *to do one's bidding, execute one's order.*

Imperītus, a, um. *Unskilful, ignorant.*

Imperium, iī, *n.* *Command, sway, government, empire.* .

Imperŏ, āre, āvī, ātum. *To order, command.*

Impetrŏ, āre, āvī, ātum. *To obtain one's request.*

Impetus, ūs, *m.* *Attack, charge.* IMPETUOUS.

Importŏ, āre, āvī, ātum. *To bring in, import.* IMPORT.

Improbus, a, um. *Wicked, unprincipled.*

Imprōvīsus, a, um. *Unforeseen, unexpected;* dē imprōvīsō, *unexpectedly, suddenly.*

In, *prep. w. acc. and abl.; see page 58, foot-note 1. In, into, to; for; over, across.*

Incendium, iī, *n.* *Fire, burning, conflagration.* INCENDIARY.

Incendŏ, ere, ī, cēnsum. *To set on fire, fire, burn.* INCENSE.

Incitŏ, āre, āvī, ātum. *To impel, urge on, urge forward.* INCITE.

Incōgnitus, a, um. *Unknown.*

Incolŏ, ere, uī, cultum. *To inhabit, dwell.*

Incolumis, e. *Unharmed, safe.*

Incommodum, ī, *n.* *Misfortune, disaster, defeat.*

Incrēdibilis, e. *Incredible.*

Inde, *adv.* *Thence, from that place.*

Indīcŏ, ere, dīxī, dictum. *To appoint.*

Indignus, a, um. *Unworthy.*

Indūcŏ, ere, dūxī, ductum. *To lead into, lead on, induce.* INDUCE.

Ineŏ, īre, iī, itum. *To go into, enter upon, begin, initiate, undertake.*

Inermus, a, um. *Unarmed.*

Īnfēlīx, īcis. *Unhappy, unfortunate.*

Īnferŏ, ferre, intulī, illātum. *To bear into, wage into, wage against, wage upon, wage; to inflict upon, inflict.*

Īnficiŏ, ere, fēcī, fectum. *To stain, color, dye.*

Īnfluŏ, ere, flūxī, flūxum. *To flow into, empty, flow.*

Ingrātus, a, um. *Ungrateful, unpleasant, disagreeable.*

Inimīcus, ī, *m.* *Enemy.* **296.** INIMICAL.

Inīquus, a, um. *Unequal; unfair, unjust; unfavorable, disadvantageous.*

Initium, iī, *n.* *Beginning.* INITIATE.

Injūria, ae, *f.* *Injury, wrong.* INJURY.

Inopia, ae, *f.* *Lack, want, need, scarcity.*

Inquam.[1] *I say;* inquit, *present:* he says; *perfect:* he said, said he.

Īnsequor, ī, secūtus sum. *To follow close upon, follow up, follow, pursue.*

Īnsignis, e. *Marked, signal, remarkable.*

Īnsimulŏ, āre, āvī, ātum. *To accuse.*

Īnsinuŏ, āre, āvī, ātum. *To introduce, insinuate;* sē īnsin-

---

[1] Inquam is a *defective* verb. It is used in a few parts only of the active voice.

uāre, *to make one's way, force one's self.* INSINUATE.

Īnsistō, ere, stitī. *To stand, get a foothold.* INSIST.

Īnstituō, ere, uī, ūtum. *To begin, proceed; to train, instruct.* INSTITUTE.

Īnstō, āre, stitī, stātum. *To be near, be at hand.* IN-STANT.

Īnstruō, ere, strūxī, strūctum. *To construct, draw up, array;* aciem īnstruere, *to form the line of battle.*

Īnsuētus, a, um. *Unaccustomed.*

Īnsula, ae, f. *Island.*

Integritās, ātis, f. *Integrity, uprightness.* INTEGRITY.

Intellegō, ere, lēxī, lēctum. *To understand.* INTELLECT.

Inter, *prep. w. acc. Among;* inter sē, *among themselves; with each other, with one another, together;* inter sē dare, *to exchange.*

Intercēdō, ere, cēssī, cēssum. *To come between, intervene.* IN-TERCEDE.

Interclūdō, ere, sī, sum. *To cut off.*

Interdīcō, ere, dīxī, dictum. *To forbid, prohibit, exclude.* IN-TERDICT. See 332, foot-note 2.

Intereā, *adv. Meantime, in the meanwhile.*

Intereō, īre, iī, ītum. *To perish.*

Interficiō, ere, fēcī, fectum. *To kill, slay, put to death.*

Interim, *adv. Meanwhile, in the mean time.*

Interior, us, comp. adj. 86, 166. *Interior, inner.*

Intermittō, ere, mīsī, missum. *To send between; to intermit, interrupt; pass., to be brought between, to intervene.* INTERMIT.

Interpōnō, ere, posuī, positum. *To interpose, suggest, present.* IN-TERPOSE.

Intersum, esse, fuī. *To be between, intervene;* interest, *impersonal, it interests, concerns.* INTEREST.

Intervallum, ī, n. *Interval, space between.*

Inūsitātus, a, um. *Unwonted, unfamiliar, strange.*

Inūtilis, e. *Useless.*

Invītus, a, um. *Unwilling.*

Ipse, a, um. 102, 186. *Self, he, she, it.*

Īrācundus, a, um. *Passionate, violent.*

Īre. See eō.

Irrumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptum. *To break in, rush in.* IRRUP-TION.

Is, ea, id. 102, 186, *That, this, that one, this one, he, she, it.*

Iste, a, ud. 102, 186. *That of yours, that, that one, he, she, it.*

Ita, *adv. So, in such a way, thus.*

Ītalia, ae, f. *Italy.*

Itaque, *conj. And so, therefore.*

Item, *adv. Also, likewise.*

Iter, itineris, n. *March, journey; way, route;* māgna itinera, *forced marches;* iter facere, *to march.*

J.

Jaciō, ere, jēcī, jactum. *To throw.*

Jam, *adv. Already, now.*

Jubeō, ēre, jŭssī, jŭssum. *To order, command.*

Jūdex, icis, *m. and f. Judge.*

Jūdicium, iī, *n. Judgment, decision.*

Jūdicō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To judge.*

Jugum, ī, *n. Yoke; ridge, height.*

Jūmentum, ī, *n. Draught animal, beast of burden.*

Jūra, ae, *m. Jura, a mountain range in western Gaul.*

Jūssī. See *jubeō.*

Jūstitia, ae, *f. Justice.*

Juvenis, is, *m. and f. Youth, a youth.* JUVENILE.

Juvō, āre, jūvī, jūtum. *To aid, help, assist.*

K.

Kalendae, ārum, *f. pl. Calends,* the first day of the month; ante diem quīntum Kalendās Aprīlēs, *the 28th of March.* CALENDAR.

Karthāgō, inis, *f. Carthage.*

L.

Labiēnus, ī, *m. Labienus,* a lĭutenant under Caesar.

Labor, ōris, *m. Labor, toil, effort, exertion.*

Labōrō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To labor, struggle, to be in trouble.* LABOR.

Lacessō, ere, sīvī *or* sīī, sītum. *To harass, provoke, assail, attack.*

Lacrima, ae, *f. Tear.*

Lacrimō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To weep.*

Lacus, ūs, *m. Lake.*

Lapis, idis, *m. Stone.*

Largior, īrī, ītus sum. *To bestow, make gifts.*

Largiter, *adv. Largely, widely, extensively;* largiter pōsse, *to have extensive influence.*

Lātē, *adv. Widely;* longē lātēque, *far and wide.*

Latīnus, ī, *m. Latinus,* king of the Laurentians in central Italy.

Latīnus, a, um. *Latin.*

Lātitūdō, inis, *f. Width, breadth.* LATITUDE.

Latrō, ōnis, *m. Robber, brigand.*

Lātus, a, um. *Broad, wide, extensive.*

Latus, eris, *n. Side.*

Laudō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To praise.* LAUD.

Lāvinia, ae, *f. Lavinia,* daughter of King Latinus.

Lēgātiō, ōnis, *f. Embassy.*

Lēgātus, ī, *m. Ambassador; lieutenant.* LEGATE.

Legiō, ōnis, *f. Legion.*

Legō, ere, lēgī, lēctum. *To read.*

Lemannus, ī, *m. Lemannus, Leman, Lake of Geneva.*

Lēnitās, ātis, *f. Smoothness, gentleness.*

Leō, ōnis, *m. Lion.*

Levitās, ātis, *f. Levity, fickleness, impulsiveness.* LEVITY.

Lēx, lēgis, *f. Law.*

Libenter, *adv. Willingly, gladly.*

Liber, brī, *m. Book.*

Līber, era, erum. *Free.*

Līberālitās, ātis, *f. Liberality.*

Līberī, ōrum, m. pl. Children.

Līberō, āre, āvī, ātum. To liberate, free. LIBERATE.

Lībertās, ātis, f. Liberty, freedom. LIBERTY.

Liceor, ērī, itus sum. To bid at auction.

Licet, ēre, licuit, impers. It is lawful, is permitted, one may.

Ligārius, iī, m. Ligarius, a prominent Roman in whose behalf Cicero pleaded before Caesar.

Liger, is, m. The Liger, a river in southwestern Gaul, now the Loire.

Lingonēs, um, m. pl. The Lingones, a tribe of central Gaul.

Lingua, ae, f. Tongue, language.

Liscus, ī, m. Liscus, a chieftain of the Aedui.

Litavicus, ī, m. Litavicus, an Aeduan chieftain.

Littera, ae, f. Letter; pl., letters; a letter, epistle.

Lītus, oris, n. Shore.

Locus, ī, m., pl. loca, ōrum, n. Place, position. LOCAL.

Longē, adv. Long, far, by far. LONG.

Longinquus, a, um. Distant, remote.

Longus, a, um. Long.

Lūcius, iī, m. Lucius, a Roman name.

Lūna, ae, f. Moon. LUNAR.

Lutetia, ae, f. Lutetia, a town in central Gaul, now Paris.

Lūx, lūcis, f. Light, daylight; prima lūx, daybreak.

M.

Magistrātus, ūs, m. Magistracy; magistrate.

Māgnitūdō, inis, f. Size, magnitude, height. MAGNITUDE.

Māgnus, a, um, comp. mājor, sup. māximus. Great, large; numerous; loud; mājōrēs, m. and f. pl., elders; ancestors, forefathers.

Maleficium, iī, n. Mischief, harm.

Mālō, mālle, mālui. 273, 293. To prefer.

Mandō, āre, āvī, ātum. To commission, order, entrust, consign, commit, betake. MANDATE.

Maneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsum. To remain. MANSE.

Manus, ūs, f. Hand; band; in manibus, in hand; at hand, close at hand.

Mārcus, ī, m. Marcus, a Roman name.

Mare, is, n. Sea.

Maritimus, a, um. Maritime, pertaining to the sea; ōra maritima, sea-coast. MARITIME.

Matara, ae, f. Javelin, pike.

Māter, tris, f. Mother.

Māteria, ae, f. Timber. MATERIAL.

Matiscō, ōnis, m. Matisco, a town in southwestern Gaul.

Mātrimōnium, iī, n. Marriage; in mātrimōnium dūcere, to marry. MATRIMONY.

Mātūrē, adv. Early, promptly. MATURE.

Mātūrō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To hasten.* MATURE.

Mātūrus, a, um. *Early.* MATURE.

Mausōlus, ī, m. *Mausolus,* king of Caria.

Māximē, *sup. adv. Most, very greatly, chiefly, especially.*

Māximus, a, um. *See magnus.*

Medius, a, um. *Middle, middle of; 191,* foot-note.

Melodūnum, ī, n. *Melodunum,* a town in central Gaul.

Memoria, ae, f. *Memory, recollection.* MEMORY.

Menapii, ōrum, m. pl. *The Menapii,* a tribe of northern Gaul.

Mēns, mentis, f. *Mind, intellect.* MENTAL.

Mēnsis, is, m. *Month.*

Mercātor, ōris, m. *Merchant, trader.*

Meridiēs, ēī, m. *Midday, noon.* MERIDIAN.

Meritō, adv. *Deservedly.* MERIT.

Messālla, ae, m. *Messala,* a Roman name.

Mētior, īrī, mēnsus sum. *To measure, allot.*

Metō, ere, messuī, messum. *To reap, harvest, gather grain.*

Meus, a, um. 185. *My, mine.*

Mīles, itis, m. and f. *Soldier.* MILITIA.

Mīlitāris, e. *Military; rēs mīlitāris, military affairs.*

Mīlle, pl. mīlia, ium, n. 247, foot-note. *Thousand;* mīlle passūs, *a thousand paces, a (Roman) mile.*

Minus, comp. adv. *Less;* sup. minimē, *least, very little, by no means.*

Mittō, ere, mīsī, missum. *To send.* MISSION.

Mōbilitās, ātis, f. *Mobility, rapidity.* MOBILITY.

Modestē, adv. *Modestly.* MODEST.

Modo, adv. *Only.*

Modus, ī, m. *Measure; manner.*

Molestē, adv. *With trouble;* molestē ferre, *to be vexed at, annoyed at.*

Moneō, ēre, uī, itum. *To advise, warn.*

Mōns, montis, m. *Mountain.* MOUNT.

Morinī, ōrum, m. pl. *The Morini,* a tribe of northern Gaul.

Moror, ārī, ātus sum. *To tarry, delay, wait.*

Mors, mortis, f. *Death.* MORTAL.

Mōtus, ūs, m. *Movement, motion,* MOTION.

Moveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtum. *To move, remove.* MOVE.

Mulier, eris, f. *Woman.*

Multitūdō, inis, f. *Multitude; the multitude, common people, populace.* MULTITUDE.

Multō, adv. *By much, by far.*

Multum, adv., comp. plūs, sup. plūrimum. *Much.*

Multus, a, um, comp. plūs, n. (pl. plūrēs, plūra,) sup. plūrimus. *Much; many;* multō diē, *long after day break.*

Mūniō, īre, īvī or iī, ītum. *To fortify.* MUNITION.

Mūnītiō, ōnis, f. *Fortification;* opus mūnītiōnis, *fortified work.* MUNITION.

Mūrus, ī, m. *Wall.*

N.

Nactus, a, um. See *nanciscor.*

Nam, namque, *conj.* For; for indeed.

Nanciscor, ī, nactus sum. To get, obtain, secure.

Narbō, ōnis, *m.* Narbo, a town in southern Gaul.

Nātiō, ōnis, *f.* Nation.

Nātūra, ae, *f.* Nature.

Nauta, ae, *m.* Sailor.

Nāvālis, e. Naval.

Nāvigium, iī, *n.* Vessel, ship.

Nāvigō, āre, āvī, ātum. To sail. NAVIGATE.

Nāvis, is, *f.* Ship, vessel; nāvis longa, *ship of war*; nāvis onerāria, *transport vessel, transport.* NAVY.

-Ne, *conj.* Interrogative particle. See 106, 351, 1 and 2.

Nē, *adv. and conj.* With the Imperative or the Subjunctive of Desire, *not;* with the Subjunctive of Purpose, *that not, lest;* after words of *fearing, lest, that.*

Necesse, 286. Necessary.

Neglegō, ere, lēxī, lēctum. To neglect, disregard.

Negō, āre, āvī, ātum. To deny, refuse; to say not.

Negōtium, iī, *n.* Business, occupation; negōtium dare, *to entrust a task* or *enterprise.*

Nēmō,[1] inis, *m. and f.* No one, nobody.

Nepōs, ōtis, *m.* Grandson.

Nēquāquam, *adv.* By no means.

Neque, *conj.* Neither, nor, and not; neque . . . neque, neither . . . nor.

Nervii, ōrum, *m. pl.* The Nervii, a tribe of northern Gaul.

Nēve, *conj.* Nor, and not.

Nex, necis, *f.* Death, putting to death.

Nihil, *indeclinable,* nihilum, ī, *n.* Nothing.

Nisi, *conj.* Unless.

Nōbilis, e. Noble, of high birth. NOBLE.

Nōbilitās, ātis, *f.* Nobility; the nobility, nobles. NOBILITY.

Noctū, *adv.* By night.

Nocturnus, a, um. Nocturnal, by night. NOCTURNAL.

Nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, 273, 293. To be unwilling, not to be willing, not to wish.

Nōmen, inis, *n.* Name; suō nōmine, *on his own account.* NOMINAL.

Nōminō, āre, āvī, ātum. To name. NOMINATE.

Nōn, *adv.* Not.

Nōndum, *adv.* Not yet.

Nōnne, *conj.* Interrogative particle. Not? See 106, 351, note 2.

Nōnnūllī, ae, a. Some.

Nōnnūnquam, *adv.* Sometimes.

Nōnus, a, um. Ninth.

Nōscō, ere, nōvī, nōtum. To become acquainted with; nōvī, I have become acquainted with = I know.

---

[1] *Nēmō* generally wants the Genitive and Ablative; they are supplied by these cases of *nūllus.*

Noster, tra, trum. **102, 185.** *Our, ours.*

Nōtus, a, um, *part. and adj. Known.*

Novem, *indeclinable. Nine;* decem novem, *nineteen.*

Noviodūnum, ī, *n. Noviodunum,* a town of northwestern Gaul.

Novus, a, um. *New;* rēs novae, *change of affairs, revolution;* novissimum agmen, *rear.*

Nox, noctis, *f. Night.*

Nūbēs, is, *f.* Cloud.

Nūbō, ere, nūpsī, nūptum. *To veil one's self; to assume the bridal veil for =* to *marry.* NUPTIAL. (Followed by the Dative.)

Nūdō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To bare, expose, strip.*

Nūllus, a, um. **42, 151.** *Not any, no, none.*

Num, *conj.* Interrogative particle. For meaning in direct questions, see **106,** 351, 1, note 3; in indirect questions, *whether.*

Numa, ae, *m. Numa,* the second of the legendary kings of Rome.

Numerus, ī, *m. Number.*

Nunc, *adv. Now, at this time.*

Nūnquam, *adv. Never.*

Nūntiō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To announce.*

Nūntius, iī, *m. Messenger; tidings.*

Nūper, *adv. Recently, of late.*

Nūtrīx, īcis, *f. Nurse.*

O.

Ob, *prep. w. acc. On account of, for.*

Obiciō,[1] ere, jēcī, jectum. *To throw against, throw up.* OBJECT.

Observō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To observe, keep, comply with.* OBSERVE.

Obses, idis, *m. and f. Hostage.*

Obsideō, ēre, sēdī, sessum. *To besiege.*

Obsidiō, ōnis, *f. Siege, blockade.*

Obsīgnō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To seal, sign and seal.*

Obtineō, ēre, uī, tentum. *To obtain, hold.* OBTAIN.

Occāsus, ūs, *m. Setting;* sōlis occāsus, *sun-set.*

Occīdō, ere, ī, sum. *To kill, slay.*

Occultō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To hide.* OCCULT.

Occupō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To occupy, seize, take possession of; to busy.* OCCUPY.

Ōceanus, ī, *m. Ocean, the Atlantic Ocean.*

Octāvus, a, um. *Eighth.* OCTAVE.

Octo, *indeclinable. Eight.*

Octōdecim, *indeclinable. Eighteen.*

Octōdūrus, ī, *m. Octodurus,* a town of the Veragri, now *Martigny.*

Ōdī, isse. **308.** *To hate, detest.*

Officium, iī, *n. Duty, allegiance.* OFFICE.

Omnīnō, *adv. In all, only.*

Omnis, e. *All.*

---

[1] Pronounced as if spelled *objiciō.*

Onerārius, a, um. *Pertaining to burdens, carrying cargoes; onerāria nāvis, a transport vessel, transport.*

Opera, ae, f. *Work;* operam dare, *to take pains, endeavor.*

Oportet, ēre, uit, *impers. It behooves, is proper, is necessary, is fitting; one ought.*

Oppidum, ī, n. *Town.*

Opportūnus, a, um. *Opportune, appropriate.* OPPORTUNE.

Oppūgnātiō, ōnis, f. *Assault, attack.*

Oppūgnō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To assault, attack.*

Optimus, a, um. See *bonus.*

Opus, eris, n. *Work, task; art;* operis mūnītiō, *fortified work;* māgnō opere, *greatly.*

Ōra, ae, f. *Coast.*

Ōrātiō, ōnis, f. *Oration, speech.* ORATION.

Ōrātor, ōris, m. *Orator.*

Orbis, is, m. *Circle, circuit;* orbis terrae, orbis terrārum, *the world.* ORB.

Ōrdō, inis, m. *Rank.* ORDER.

Orgetorix, igis, m. *Orgetorix,* an Helvetian chieftain.

Ōrnāmentum, ī, n. *Ornament, honor.* ORNAMENT.

Ōrō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To ask, beg, plead.*

Ostendō, ere, ī, tentum *or* tēnsum. *To show, explain, make known, declare.*

P.

Pābulātiō, ōnis, f. *Foraging.*

Pābulum, ī, n. *Fodder.*

Paene, adv. *Almost, nearly.*

Paenitet, ēre, uit, *impers. It causes regret;* mē paenitet, *I repent.*

Pāgus, ī, m. *Division, canton.*

Pār, paris. *Equal, a match for.*

Parātus, a, um, *part. and adj. Prepared, ready.*

Parcō, ere, peperci, parsum. *To spare.* (Followed by the Dative.)

Pāreō, ēre, uī, itum. *To obey.* (Followed by the Dative.)

Parō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To prepare.*

Pars, partis, f. *Part, division; quarter, direction.* PART.

Passus, ūs, m. *Pace;* mīlle passūs, *a* (Roman) *mile;* duo mīlia passuum, *two miles.*

Pāstor, ōris, m. *Shepherd.*

Pater, tris, m. *Father.* PATERNAL.

Patienter, adv. *Patiently.*

Patior, ī, passus sum. *To suffer, permit.*

Patria, ae, f. *Native country, one's country, country.*

Paucī, ae, a. *Few.*

Paucitās, ātis, f. *Fewness, small number.*

Paulātim, adv. *Little by little, by degrees, gradually.*

Paulō, adv. *A little.*

Paulum, adv. *A little, somewhat.*

Pāx, pācis, f. *Peace.*

Pedes, itis, m. *Foot-soldier;* pl., *foot-soldiers; infantry.*

Peditātus, ūs, m. *Infantry.*

Pedius, iī, m. *Pedius,* a lieutenant under Caesar.

Pellis, is, f. *Skin.*

Pellō, ere, pepuli, pulsum. *To drive, rout.*

Pendō, ere, pependī, pēnsum. *To weigh; to pay.*

Per, *prep. w. acc. Through, by, over, by means of; on account of.*

Perdūcō, ere, duxī, ductum. *To lead through, extend, construct.*

Perequitō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To ride through, ride.*

Perfacilis, e. *Very easy.*

Perferō, ferre, tulī, lātum. *To endure.*

Perficiō, ere, fēcī, fectum. *To accomplish.* PERFECT.

Perfringō, ere, frēgī, frāctum. *To break through.*

Perfuga, ae, m. *Deserter, fugitive.*

Perfugiō, ere, fūgī. *To flee for refuge, flee, escape.*

Perīculōsus, a, um. *Perilous, dangerous.* PERILOUS.

Perīculum, ī, n. *Peril, danger.* PERIL.

Perītus, a, um. *Skilful, skilled, expert.*

Permaneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsum. *To continue to remain, to remain.* PERMANENT.

Permoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtum. *To move, induce, influence; to disturb, daunt, alarm.*

Perpetuus, a, um. *Perpetual, endless, uninterrupted;* in perpetuum, *for ever.* PERPETUAL.

Perrumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptum. *To break through, force a passage, force one's way.*

Persequor, ī, secūtus sum. *To follow up, pursue, persecute; to avenge.* PERSECUTE.

Perseverō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To persevere, persist.* PERSEVERE.

Persolvō, ere, ī, solūtum. *To pay.*

Perspiciō, ere, spēxī, spectum. *To examine, investigate, perceive.* PERSPICUOUS.

Persuādeō, ēre, sī, sum. *To persuade.*

Perterreō, ēre, uī, itum. *To terrify greatly, terrify, frighten.*

Pertineō, ēre, uī, tentum. *To pertain, tend; to extend, reach.* PERTAIN.

Perturbātiō, ōnis, f. *Disturbance, agitation.* PERTURBATION.

Perturbō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To disturb, throw into confusion.* PERTURB.

Perveniō, īre, vēnī, ventum. *To arrive, come, reach.*

Pēs, pedis, m. *Foot;* pedibus, *on foot;* pedem referre, *to retreat.* PEDAL.

Petō, ere, īvī or iī, itum. *To seek, request, ask.*

Phalanx, angis, f. *Phalanx, line.*

Pilum, ī, n. *Javelin, spear.*

Pīsistratus, ī, m. *Pisistratus, tyrant of Athens.*

Pīsō, ōnis, m. *Piso,* a Roman name.

Placeō, ere, uī, itum. *To please.* (Followed by the Dative.)

Plānitiēs, ēī, f. *Plain.*

Plānus, a, um. *Flat, level.* PLANE.

Platō, ōnis, m. *Plato,* a celebrated Greek philosopher.

Plēbs, ēbis, f. *The common people, populace.* PLEBEIAN.

Plēnus, a, um. *Full.*

Plērumque, *adv. As a general thing, generally.*

Plērusque, aque, umque. *The larger or greater part, the most.*

Plūrēs, a. *See plūs.*

Plūrimum, *adv. See plūs.*

Plūs, plūris, *n., pl.* plūrēs, plūra, *comp. of* multus. *More; several.* **PLURAL.**

Plūs, *adv., comp. of* multum, *sup.* plūrimum. *More;* plūs pōsse, *to have greater power or influence;* plūrimum pōsse, *to have very great power or influence.*

Poena, ae, *f. Penalty, punishment, satisfaction.*

Poēta, ae, *m. Poet.*

Polliceor, ērī, itus sum. *To promise.*

Pompēius, iī, *m. Pompey,* a celebrated general and statesman.

Pōns, pontis, *m. Bridge.*

Populātiō, ōnis, *f. Ravaging, devastating, laying waste.*

Populus, ī, *m. People, a people.*

Porta, ae, *f. Gate.* **PORTAL.**

Portō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To carry, bring, take.*

Portōrium, iī, *n. Tax, toll, duty* on imports or exports.

Portus, ūs, *m. Port, harbor.* `PORT.

Poscō, ere, poposcī. *To demand.*

Possum, pōsse, potuī. **269, 290.** *To be able; can;* multum pōsse, *to have great power or influence.*

Post, *adv. After, afterward.*

Post, *prep. w. acc. After, behind.*

Posteā, *adv. Afterward.*

Posteāquam, *conj. After.*

Posterus, a, um, *comp.* posterior, *sup.* postrēmus *and* postumus. *Subsequent, following, next.*

Postquam, *conj. After.*

Postrīdiē, *adv. On the following day.*

Postulō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To demand.*

Potēns, entis. *Powerful.* **POTENT.**

Potentātus, ūs, *m. Power, dominion, control.*

Potentia, ae, *f. Power, influence.* **POTENCY.**

Poteram. *See* possum.

Potestās, ātis, *f. Power.*

Potior, īrī, ītus sum. *To gain — take — obtain possession of, to obtain.*

Potuī. *See* possum.

Praecēdō, ere, cēssī, cēssum. *To surpass.* **PRECEDE.**

Praeceps, ipitis. *Precipitate, headlong.* **PRECIPITATE.**

Praecipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptum. *To enjoin upon, direct.* **PRECEPT.**

Praecipitō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To precipitate, throw, hurl.* **PRECIPITATE.**

Praedicō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To assert, state.* **PREDICATE.**

Praeficiō, ere, fēcī, fectum. *To place in command of, in charge of, over.* (Followed by the Dative.)

Praemittō, ere, mīsī, missum. *To send on — ahead — forward — in advance.*

Praemium, iī, *n. Reward.* **PREMIUM.**

Praepōnō, ere, posuī, positum. *To place over or in command of.* (Followed by the Dative.)

Praesēns, entis. *Present.*

Praesentia, ae, *f. Presence ;* in praesentiā, *at present, for the present.*

Praesidium, iī, *n. Garrison, defence, guard, safeguard, protection.*

Praestō, āre, stitī, stitum *or* stātum. *To stand before, excel ; to furnish, discharge, fulfil, present, manifest, show, put forth.*

Praesum, esse, fuī. *To be in charge* or *command of, to superintend.* (Followed by the Dative.)

Praeter, *prep. w. acc. Except.*

Praeterquam, *adv. Except.*

Praetor, ōris, *m. Praetor,* a Roman magistrate.

Premō, ere, pressī, pressum. *To press, press hard, distress.* PRESS.

Pretiōsus, a, um. *Precious, valuable.* PRECIOUS.

Pretium, iī, *n. Price.*

Primō, *adv. First, at first.* PRIME.

Primum, *sup. adv., pos. wanting,* comp. prius. *First.* PRIME.

Primus, a, um, *sup., pos. wanting,* comp. prior. *First ; the first part of ;* primum agmen, *the van ;* prima lūx, *daybreak.* PRIME.

Princeps, ipis. *First ;* princeps, ipis, *m., leader, chief, chieftain.* PRINCIPAL.

Principātus, ūs, *m. Sovereignty, dominion.*

Prior, us, *comp. adj., pos. wanting, sup.* primus. *Former.*

Pristinus, a, um. *Ancient, pristine.* PRISTINE.

Prius, *comp. adv., pos. wanting, sup.* primum. *Before, sooner ;* prius quam, *sooner than, before.*

Priusquam, *conj. Before.*

Privātim, *adv. Privately, in a private capacity.* PRIVATE.

Privātus, a, um, *part and adj. Private ;* privātus, ī, *m., private citizen.* PRIVATE.

Privō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To deprive.*

Prō, *prep. w. abl. For ; in proportion to, considering ; before.*

Probō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To prove ; to approve.* PROBATE.

Prōcēdō, ere, cēssī, cēssum. *To proceed, advance.* PROCEED.

Procillus, ī, *m. Procillus,* a prominent Gaul.

Prōditiō, ōnis, *f. Treason.*

Prōditor, ōris, *m. Traitor.*

Prōdō, ere, didī, ditum. *To betray.*

Prōdūcō, ere, duxī, ductum. *To lead forth, lead on ; to protract.* PRODUCE.

Proelior, ārī, ātus sum. *To fight.*

Proelium, iī, *n. Battle, engagement.*

Profectiō, ōnis, *f. Departure, starting, setting out.*

Prōficiō, ere, fēcī, fectum. *To accomplish, effect.*

Proficiscor, ī, profectus sum. *To start, set out, depart, proceed.*

Profugiō, ere, fūgī. *To flee away, flee, escape.*

Prōgredior, ī, grēssus sum. *To go forward, advance.* PROGRESS,

15

Prŏhĭbĕō, ēre, uī, ĭtum. *To pro-hĭbĭt, check, prevent, keep.* PROHIBIT.

Prōĭcĭō,[1] ĕre, jēcī, jectum. *To cast forth, throw forward, throw down.* PROJECT.

Prōmissus, a, um, *part. and adj. Hanging down, long.*

Prōnūntĭō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To proclaim, state.* PRONOUNCE.

Prŏpe, adv., comp. propĭus, *sup.* prŏxĭmē. *Near.*

Prŏpe, prep. w. acc. *Near.*

Prōpellō, ere, ulī, ulsum. *To drive forward, repulse, rout.* PROPEL.

Prŏpĭor, us, comp. adj., pos. wanting, sup. prŏxĭmus. *Nearer.*

Prōpōnō, ere, posuī, positum. *To set forth.* PROPOSE.

Propter, prep. w. acc. *On account of.*

Propterĕā, adv. *For this reason;* propterĕā quod, *for this reason, that; because.*

Prōpulsō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To repulse.*

Prōra, ae, f. *Prow.*

Prōsequor, ī, secūtus sum. *To follow up, pursue.* PROSECUTE.

Prōspĭcĭō, ere, spēxī, spĕctum. *To look forward; to look out for.* (Followed by the Dative.) PROSPECT.

Prōvĭdĕō, ēre, vīdī, vīsum. *To look out for, provide.* (Followed by the Dative.) PROVIDE.

Prōvincĭa, ae, f. *Province.*

Prŏxĭmē, sup. adv., pos. prope. *Most recently, last.*

Prŏxĭmus, a, um, sup. adj., pos. wanting, comp. propĭor. *Nearest, next, adjacent.*

Pūblĭcus, a, um. *Public.*

Pūblĭus, ĭī, m. *Publius,* a Roman name.

Pudor, ōris, m. *Shame, respect.*

Puella, ae, f. *Girl.*

Puer, erī, m. *Boy.* PUERILE.

Pūgna, ae, f. *Fight, fighting, battle.*

Pūgnō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To fight.*

Pulcher, chra, chrum. *Beautiful.*

Pulsus, a, um. See *pellō.*

Pulvis, eris, m. *Dust.*

Putō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To think.*

Q.

Quaerō, ere, sīvī *or* **sĭī, sītum.** *To inquire, ask, seek.* QUEST.

Quam, adv. *How;* w. sup., *as . . . as possible;* quam primum, *as soon as possible.*

Quam, conj. *Than.*

Quantus, a, um. *How great; as great.*

Quārē, conj. *Wherefore, why.*

Quartus, a, um. *Fourth;* quartus decimus, *fourteenth.*

Quattuor, indeclinable. *Four.*

-Que, conj. enclitic. 103. *And.*

Queror, ī, questus sum. *To complain.*

Quī, quae, quod. 106, 187. *Who, that, which.*

Quīdam, quaedam, quiddam *or* **quoddam. 106, 190.** *A certain, a certain one, some.*

Quin, conj. *That not, but, that.*

---

[1] Pronounced as if spelled *prōjĭcĭō.*

Quindecim, *indeclinable.* *Fifteen.*

Quingentī, ae, a. *Five hundred.*

Quinī, ae, a. **97, 172, 3.** *Five by five, five each, five.*

Quinque, *indeclinable.* *Five.*

Quintus, a, um. *Fifth;* ante diem quintum Kalendās Aprilēs, *the 28th day of March.*

Quintus, ī, m. *Quintus, a Roman name.*

Quis, quae, quid, *interrog. pron.* **106, 188.** *Who, what, which?*

Quis, quae, quid, *indef. pron.* **106, 190.** *One, any one, anything.*

Quisquam, quaequam, quicquam, *indef. pron.* *Any, anyone.*

Quisque, quaeque, quodque *and* quidque, *indef. pron.* *Each, every, each one, every one.*

Quō, *adv.* *Whither, to which place, to what place.*

Quō, *conj.* *That;* quō minus, *that not, so that not.* **327.**

Quoad, *conj.* *Until.*

Quod, *conj.* *That; because.*

Quoque, *adv.* *Also.*

Quot, *indeclinable.* *How many.*

R.

Rapīna, ae, f. *Robbery, pillaging.* RAPINE.

Ratiō, ōnis, f. *Reasoning, reason; account, reckoning; method, way.*

Rebelliō, ōnis, f. *Rebellion.*

Receptus, ūs, m. *Retreat.*

Recipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptum. *To recover, retake, betake; to receive;* sē recipere, *to retire, return, betake one's self.*

Recūsō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To reject.*

Reddō, ere, didi, ditum. *To give back, restore, return.*

Redeō, īre, iī, itum. *To go back, return.*

Redimō, ere, ēmī, ēmptum. *To buy up, buy, purchase.* REDEEM.

Reditiō, ōnis, f. *Going back, return.*

Reditus, ūs, m. *Return.*

Redūcō, ere, duxī, ductum. *To lead back.*

Referō, ferre, rettulī, relātum. *To draw back, bring back;* pedem referre, *to retreat.*

Reficiō, ere, fēcī, fectum. *To repair.*

Refugiō, ere, fūgī. *To flee back, flee.* REFUGE.

Rēgīna, ae, f. *Queen.*

Regiō, ōnis, f. *Direction; region.* REGION.

Rēgnō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To reign, rule.* REIGN.

Rēgnum, ī, n. *Kingdom, regal power.* REIGN.

Regō, ere, rēxī, rēctum. *To rule.*

Rēiciō,[1] ere, jēcī, jectum. *To drive back, repulse.* REJECT.

Relinquō, ere, līquī, lictum. *To leave.* RELINQUISH.

Reliquus, a, um. *Remaining, the rest of, the other, left.*

Remaneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsum. *To remain.*

Rēmī, ōrum, m. pl. *The Remi, a tribe of northern Gaul.*

---

[1] Pronounced as if spelled *rējiciō.*

Reminiscor, ī. *To remember.* RE-
  MINISCENCE.

Removeō, ēre, mōvī, mōtum. *To
  remove.*

Rēmus, ī, *m. Oar.*

Renovō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To renew.*
  RENOVATE.

Renūntiō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To re-
  port.* RENOUNCE.

Repellō, ere, reppulī, repulsum.
  To drive back, repel, repulse.
  REPEL.

Reperiō, īre, repperī, repertum.
  To find, discover.

Repetō, ere, īvī, or iī, ītum. *To
  seek, exact.* REPEAT.

Reportō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To carry
  back.* REPORT.

Rēs, rĕī, *f. Thing, affair ; rea-
  son ; rēs* militāris, *military
  affairs.*

Rescīscō, ere, scīvī *or* sciī, scītum.
  To learn, ascertain.

Respiciō, ere, spēxī, spēctum.
  To regard, look upon. RE-
  SPECT.

Respondeō, ēre, ī, spōnsum. *To
  answer.* RESPOND.

Restituō, ere, uī, ūtum. *To re-
  store.* RESTITUTION.

Retineō, ēre, uī, tentum. *To re-
  tain, keep.* RETAIN.

Rettulī. See *referō.*

Revertor, ī, revertī, reversum.[1]
  To return. REVERT.

Rēx, rēgis, *m. King.* REGAL.

Rhēnus, ī, *m. The Rhine.*

Rhodanus, ī, *m. The Rhone.*

Rīpa, ae, *f. Bank.* RIPARIAN.

Rōbur, oris, *n. Oak.*

Rogō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To ask.*

Rōma, ae, *f. Rome.*

Rōmānus, a, um. *Roman ;* Rō-
  mānus, ī, *m., a Roman.*

Rōmulus, ī, *m. Romulus,* the
  legendary founder of Rome.

Rota, ae, *f. Wheel.* ROTATE.

Rūmor, ōris, *m. Rumor, report.*

Rūrsus, *adv. Again.*

S.

Sabīnus, ī, *m. Sabinus,* a lieu-
  tenant under Caesar.

Sacrificium, iī, *n. Sacrifice.*

Saepe, *adv. Often.*

Sagitta, ae, *f. Arrow.*

Salūs, ūtis, *f. Safety, salvation,
  escape.*

Santonēs, um, *m. pl.* The San-
  tones or *Santoni,* a tribe of
  central Gaul.

Sānus, a, um. *Sound, sane.*
  SANE.

Sapiēns, entis. *Wise.*

Sapienter, *adv. Wisely.*

Sapientia, ae, *f. Wisdom.*

Satis, *adv. Enough ;* satis ha-
  bēre *or* dūcere, *to regard it as
  sufficient.*

Scapha, ae, *f. Skiff, boat.*

Schola, ae, *f. School.*

Scientia, ae, *f. Knowledge, skill.*
  SCIENCE.

Sciō, īre, īvī *or* iī, ītum. *To
  know.*

Scrībō, ere, scrīpsī, scrīptum. *To
  write.* SCRIBE.

---

[1] *Revertor* is deponent in the present system. The other forms are in
the active voice.

Secundus, a, um. *Second.*

Sed, *conj. But.*

Sēdēs, is, *f. Seat, abode;* locus āc sēdēs, *place of abode.* SEAT.

Sēditiōsus, a, um. *Seditious.*

Segusiānī, ōrum, *m. pl. The Segusiani,* a tribe of southeastern Gaul.

Sēmentis, is, *f. Sowing, planting.*

Semper, *adv. Always, ever.*

Senātus, ūs, *m. Senate.*

Sēnī, ae, a. **97,** 172, 3. *Six by six, six each, six.*

Senonēs, um, *m. pl. The Senones,* a tribe of central Gaul.

Sententia, ae, *f. Thought, opinion, plan.* SENTENCE.

Sentiō, īre, sēnsī, sēnsum. *To think.* SENSE.

Septem, *indeclinable. Seven.*

Septimus, a, um. *Seventh.*

Sepultūra, ae, *f. Burial.* SEPULTURE.

Sēquanī, ōrum, *m. pl. The Sequani* or *Sequanians,* a tribe of eastern Gaul.

Sēquanus, a, um. *Sequanian;* Sēquanus, ī, *m., a Sequanian, one of the Sequani.*

Sequor, ī, secūtus sum. *To follow.* SEQUENCE.

Sermō, ōnis, *m. Discourse, conversation.* SERMON.

Serviō, īre, īvī *or* iī, ītum. *To serve, subserve, be devoted to.* SERVE.

Servitūs, ūtis, *f. Servitude, slavery.* SERVITUDE.

Servō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To keep, preserve.*

Servus, ī, *m. Slave.* SERVE.

Sēsē. See **102,** 184, 4.

Seu, *conj. Or if;* seu . . . sīve, *either . . . or.*

Sevērus, a, um. *Severe.*

Sex, *indeclinable. Six.*

Sexāgintā, *indeclinable. Sixty.*

Sextus, a, um. *Sixth.*

Sī, *conj. If.*

Sicilia, ae, *f. Sicily.*

Sīgnificō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To signify, indicate.* SIGNIFY.

Sīgnum, ī, *n. Standard;* signa ferre, *to carry the standards =* to advance. SIGN.

Silva, ae, *f. Wood, forest.* SYLVAN.

Similis, e. *Like.* SIMILAR.

Simpliciter, *adv. Simply.*

Simul, simul atque, *conj. As soon as.*

Sīn, *conj. But if.*

Sincērē, *adv. Truthfully.* SINCERE.

Sine, *prep. w. abl. Without.*

Singulāris, e. *Single, singly, individual, separate; singular, remarkable.* SINGULAR.

Sīve, *conj. Or if;* sīve . . . sīve, *either . . . or.*

Socer, erī, *m. Father-in-law.*

Sōcratēs, is, *m. Socrates,* a celebrated Greek philosopher.

Sōl, sōlis, *m. Sun.*

Sōlum, *adv. Only, alone.*

Solvō, ere, ī, solūtum. *To loose;* with nāvēs expressed or understood, *to set sail.* SOLVE.

Spatium, iī, *n. Space, interval, distance; time.* SPACE.

Speciēs, ēī, *f. Look, appearance.*

Spēs, spēī, *f. Hope.*

Spīritus, ūs, *m. Breath; pl., airs, haughtiness.* SPIRIT.

Spoliō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To de-spoil, rob, deprive.* SPOIL.

Spōns, spontis, *f. Used in gen. and abl. sing. only.* Sponte, suā sponte, *by one's own agency, by one's self, unassisted.*

Stabilitās, ātis, *f. Stability, firmness.* STABILITY.

Statim, *adv. Immediately.*

Statiō, ōnis, *f. Station, post, guard.* STATION.

Statuō, ere, uī, ūtum. *To determine, decide.*

Stīpendium, iī, *n. Tax, tribute.* STIPEND.

Stō, āre, stetī, stātum. *To stand.*

Strepitus, ūs, *m. Din, noise.*

Studeō, ēre, uī. *To desire.* STUDY. (Followed by the Dative.)

Studium, iī, *n. Desire, zeal.* STUDY.

Sub, *prep. w. acc. and abl. Under, up to, towards.*

Subdūcō, ere, duxī, ductum. *To draw up; to withdraw, lead off.*

Subeō, īre, iī, itum. *To undergo.*

Subiciō,[1] ere, jēcī, jectum. *To throw under, cast under, throw, thrust; to subject.* SUBJECT.

Subitō, *adv. Suddenly.*

Sublātus, a, um. *See* tollō.

Sublevō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To assist, support.*

Subministrō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To furnish, supply.*

Submittō, ere, mīsī, missum. *To send up to, send.* SUBMIT.

Submoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtum. *To remove, dislodge.*

Subsequor, ī, secūtus sum. *To follow close upon, follow.* SUBSEQUENT.

Subsidium, iī, *n. Support, reënforcement, aid.* SUBSIDIARY.

Subsistō, ere, stitī. *To make a stand;* audācius subsistere, *to make a bolder stand.* SUBSIST.

Subveniō, īre, vēnī, ventum. *To come to the help of, succor, aid.*

Succēdō, ere, cēssī, cēssum. *To go up, come up, approach, succeed.* SUCCEED.

Sudēs, is, *f. Stake.*

Suēbī, ōrum, *m. pl. The Suebi, Suevi* or *Suabians, a powerful German tribe.*

Suessiōnēs, um, *m. pl. The Suessiones, a tribe of northern Gaul.*

Suī. **102, 184.** *Of himself, of herself, of itself, of themselves, of him, of her, of it, of them.*

Sulla, ae, *m. Sulla, a celebrated Roman general and statesman.*

Sulpicius, iī, *m. Sulpicius, a lieutenant under Caesar.*

Sum, esse, fuī. **140, 204.** *To be.*

Summa, ae, *f. Sum, sum total, total.* SUM.

Summus, a, um, *sup. of* superus. *Highest, greatest; the summit of, top of.*

Sūmō, ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum. *To take.* See **328,** sentence 9.

Sūmptus, ūs, *m. Expense.*

Superbus, a, um. *Proud.* SUPERB.

Superior, us, *comp. of* superus. *Upper, higher; superior; previous.*

---

[1] Pronounced as if spelled *subjiciō.*

Superō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To sur-pass; to conquer.*

Supersum, esse, fuī. *To sur-vive.*

Superus, a, um, *comp.* superior, *sup.* suprēmus *and* summus. *Upper.* See *superior* and *summus.*

Supplicātiō, ōnis, *f. Thanksgiving.*

Supplicium, iī, n. *Punishment.*

Suprā, *adv. Above.*

Suscipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptum. *To take up, undertake.*

Suspīciō, ōnis, *f. Suspicion.*

Suspicor, ārī, ātus sum. *To sus-pect.*

Sustineō, ēre, uī, tentum. *To sus-tain, resist, withstand.* SUS-TAIN.

Suus, a, um. *His, her, hers, its, their.*

T.

Tabula, ae, *f. Table, tablet, rec-ord, document.* TABLE.

Taceō, ēre, uī, itum. *To be silent, to keep silent.* TACIT.

Tam, *adv. So, to such an ex-tent.*

Tamen, *adv. Yet, still, neverthe-less.*

Tamesis, is, m. *Thames.*

Tametsī, *conj. Although.*

Tantus, a, um. *So great; as great.*

Tardō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To retard, check, hinder, impede.* TARDY.

Tēlum, ī, n. *Dart, weapon.*

Temerārius, a, um. *Rash.*

Temere, *adv. Rashly, unneces-sarily.*

Temperantia, ae, *f. Temperance, self-control.* TEMPERANCE.

Tempestās, ātis, *f. Weather; tempest, storm.* TEMPEST.

Templum, ī, n. *Temple.*

Tempus, oris, n. *Time.*

Teneō, ēre, uī, tentum. *To hold.*

Tentō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To try.*

Tenuis, e. *Thin; feeble.*

Tergum, ī, n. *Back;* terga ver-tere, *to turn the back* = *to re-treat, flee.*

Terra, ae, *f. Earth; land.*

Terreō, ēre, uī, itum. *To terrify, frighten.* TERROR.

Terror, ōris, m. *Terror, dread.*

Tertius, a, um. *Third.*

Testāmentum, ī, n. *Will.* TES-TAMENT.

Testis, is, m. *and f. Witness.*

Tigurīnus, ī, m. *Tigurinus,* one of the four cantons of the Hel-vetii.

Timeō, ēre, uī. *To fear.* TIMID.

Timor, ōris, m. *Fear.* TIMID.

Titūrius, iī, m. *Titurius,* a lieu-tenant under Caesar.

Titus, ī, m. *Titus,* a Roman name.

Tollō, ere, sustulī, sublātum. *To lift up; to remove, take away; to exalt, encourage.*

Tolōsa, ae, *f. Tolosa,* a town in southern Gaul.

Tormentum, ī, n. *A military engine* for throwing heavy mis-siles.

Tōtus, a, um. 42, 151. *All, the whole of.* TOTAL.

Trādō, ere, didī, ditum. *To give up, surrender.* TRADITION.

Trāgula, ae, *f. Javelin, dart.*

Trājectus, ūs, m. *Passage, crossing.*

Trānō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To swim across.*

Trāns, *prep. w. acc. Across, over, beyond.*

Trānsdūcō, ere, duxī, ductum. *To lead across, lead, conduct.*

Trānseō, īre, iī, itum. *To go over, cross.* TRANSIT.

Trānsiciō,[1] ere, jēcī, jectum. *To pierce, transfix.*

Trānsportō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To carry over, take over, bring over, transport.* TRANSPORT.

Trēs, tria. **97,** 175. *Three.*

Trēverī, ōrum, m. pl. *The Treveri,* a tribe of northeastern Gaul.

Tribūnus, ī, m. *Tribune,* one of the six principal officers of the legion.

Triduum, ī, n. *Three days, space of three days.*

Trigintā, *indeclinable. Thirty.*

Trīnī, ae, a. **97,** 172, 3. *Three by three, three each, threefold, triple, three.*

Triplex, icis. *Threefold, triple.* TRIPLE.

Tū, tuī. **102,** 184. *Thou, you.*

Tullia, ae, f. *Tullia,* a Roman name.

Tum, *adv. Then.*

Turma, ae, f. *Troop.*

Turris, is, f. *Tower.*

Tūtō, *adv. Safely.*

Tūtus, a, um. *Safe.*

Tuus, a, um. **102,** 185. *Thy, thine, your, yours.*

Tyrannus, ī, m. *Tyrant.*

U.

Ubī, *adv. and conj. Where; when.*

Ubiī, ōrum, m. pl. *The Ubii,* a tribe of western Germany.

Ulcīscor, ī, ultus sum. *To take vengeance on, punish; to avenge.*

Ūllus, a, um. **42,** 151. *Any, any one.*

Ūlterior, us, comp. adj. **86,** 166. *Farther;* Gallia Ūlterior, *Farther Gaul, Transalpine Gaul.*

Ūnā, *adv. Together.*

Unde, *adv. Whence, from which place, from which.*

Ūndecimus, a, um. *Eleventh.*

Undique, *adv. On every side, on all sides; from every side, from all sides.*

Ūniversus, a, um. *All, all together.* UNIVERSE.

Ūnquam, *adv. Ever, at any time.*

Ūnus, a, um. **97,** 175. *One, single.* UNIT.

Urbs, urbis, f. *City.* URBANE.

Usipetēs, um, m. pl. *The Usipetes,* a tribe of northwestern Germany.

Usque, *adv. Even.*

Ūsus, ūs, m. *Use, usage, experience; advantage.* USE.

Ut, utī, *conj. That, in order that.*

Ut, *adv. As.*

Uter, tra, trum. **42,** 151. *Which (of two).*

Uterque, utraque, utrumque, *inflected like uter. Each; both.*

Ūtilis, e. *Useful.* UTILITY.

---

[1] Pronounced as if spelled *trānsjiciō.*

Ūtilitās, ātis, *f.* *Usefulness; interest, expediency.* UTILITY.

Utinam, interj. *O that! would that!*

Ūtor, ī, ūsus sum. *To use.*

Utrum, *conj.* *Whether;* utrum . . . an, *whether . . . or.*

Uxor, ōris, *f.* *Wife.*

V.

Vacō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To be without, be free from; to be vacant, empty, unoccupied.* VACATE.

Vacuus, a, um. *Vacant, empty, deserted, abandoned.*

Vadum, ī, *n.* *Ford; shoal.*

Valeō, ēre, uī, itum. *To avail, prevail, have force or influence.*

Vallum, ī, *n.* *Rampart.*

Vastō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To lay waste.*

-Ve, *conj.* enclitic.[1] *Or.*

Vectīgal, ālis, *n.* *Tax; revenue.*

Vel, *conj.* *Either; or;* vel . . . vel, *either . . . or.*

Vellem. See volō.

Venetī, ōrum, *m. pl.* *The Veneti,* a tribe of western Gaul.

Venetia, ae, *f.* *Venetia,* the country of the Veneti.

Veniō, īre, vēnī, ventum. *To come, arrive.*

Ventus, ī, *m.* *Wind.*

Vēr, vēris, *n.* *Spring.* VERNAL.

Veragrī, ōrum, *m. pl.* *The Veragri,* a tribe of southeastern Gaul.

Verbigēnus, ī, *m.* *Verbigenus,* one of the four cantons of the Helvetii.

Verbum, ī, *n.* *Word.* VERB.

Vercingetorix, igis, *m.* *Vercingetorix,* a Gallic chieftain.

Vergobretus, ī, *m.* *Vergobretus,* the title of the chief magistrate of the Aedui.

Vērō, *adv.* and *conj.* *In truth, indeed; but.*

Versor, ārī, ātus sum. *To be busied, occupied, engaged.* VERSED.

Vertō, ere, ī, sum. *To turn;* terga vertere, *to turn the back* = *to retreat, flee.*

Vērum, ī, *n.* *Truth.*

Vērus, a, um. *True.*

Vesontiō, ōnis, *m.* *Vesontio,* a town in eastern Gaul, now *Besançon.*

Vesper, erī, *m.* *Evening.*

Vester, tra, trum, **102,** 185. *Your, yours.*

Vēstiō, īre, īvī *or* iī, ītum. *To clothe.*

Veterānus, a, um. *Veteran.*

Vetus, eris. *Old, ancient; former.*

Via, ae, *f.* *Way.*

Viātor, ōris, *m.* *Traveller.*

Vicis, *gen.,* nom. wanting, *f.* *Turn;* in vicem, *in turn.*

Victor, ōris, *m.* *Conqueror.*

Victōria, ae, *f.* *Victory.*

Victōria, ae, *f.* *Victoria.*

Vicus, ī, *m.* *Village.*

Videō, ēre, vīdī, vīsum. *To see.*

Videor, ērī, vīsus sum.[2] *To seem.*

Vigilia, ae, *f.* *Watch.*[3] VIGIL.

Vigintī, *indeclinable.* *Twenty.*

[1] See 103, foot-note 2.　　[2] See 274.　　[3] See 278.

Vincĭŏ, ire, vinxī, vinctum. *To bind, confine.*

Vincō, ere, vicī, victum. *To conquer.*

Vinculum, ĭ, *n.* *Fetter, bond, chain.*

Vindex, ĭcĭs, *m. and f.* *Defender.*

Vĭr, vĭrī, *m.* *Man.*

Virgŏ, ĭnĭs, *f.* *Maiden.* VIRGIN.

Virtŭs, ūtĭs, *f.* *Virtue, valor, courage, bravery.* VIRTUE.

Vĭs, vĭs, *f.* *Force, violence;* vim facere, *to use violence;* vīrēs, ium, *pl., strength.*

Vīsus, a, um. *See* vidĕō.

Vīta, ae, *f.* *Life.* VITAL.

Vītō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To avoid, shun.*

Vitrum, ĭ, *n.* *Woad, a plant used for dyeing blue.*

Vīvō, ere, vixī, victum. *To live.*

Vocō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To call, summon.*

Volŏ, velle, voluī. **273**, **293**. *To wish, to be willing.*

Voluntās, ātĭs, *f.* *Wish, goodwill, consent.* VOLUNTARY.

Volusēnus, ĭ, *m.* *Volusenus,* an officer in Caesar's army.

Vŏx, vōcĭs, *f.* *Voice, utterance.* VOICE.

Vulgō, *adv.* *Commonly, as a general thing, universally.*

Vulnerō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To wound.*

Vulnus, erĭs, *n.* *Wound.*

Vultĭs. *See* volŏ.

Vultŭs, ūs, *m.* *Countenance, face;* vultum fingere, *to control the countenance.*

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.

A.

A. *See page 18, foot-note 4.*

Able, to be able. *Possum, pŏsse, potuī.* **269, 290.**

About, concerning. *Dē,* prep. w. abl. About, around, *circum,* prep. w. acc.

Above. *Suprā,* adv.

Acceptable. *Grātus, a, um; acceptus, a, um.*

Accomplish. *Perfĭciō, ere, fēcī, fectum; cōnfĭciō, ere, fēcī, fectum.*

Accordance, in accordance with. Often expressed by the Ablative. **158, 413.**

Accuse. *Accūsō, āre, āvī, ātum; īnsĭmulō, āre, āvī, ātum.* **285, 409.**

Across, over, *a bridge* across or over *a river. In,* prep. w. abl. To lead across, *trānsdūcō, ere, duxī, ductum.* See **275,** sentence 19.

Adopt. *Capiō, ere, cēpī, captum; ineō, īre, iī, itum.*

Advise. *Moneō, ēre, uī, itum.*

Aedui. *Aeduī, ōrum,* m. pl.

Affair. *Rēs, rĕī,* f.; military affairs, *rēs mīlitāris.*

After. *Post,* adv.; *posteāquam, postquam,* conj. **337, 518.**

Against. *Contrā,* prep. w. acc.; *in,* prep. w. acc.; to wage against, *īnferō, ferre, intulī, illātum.*

Ahead, to send ahead. *Praemittō, ere, mīsī, missum.*

Aid. *Auxilium, iī,* n. To aid, *juvō, āre, jūvī, jūtum.*

All. *Omnis, e; tōtus, a, um,* **42, 151;** *ūniversus, a, um;* on all sides, *undique.*

Alone. *Sōlum,* adv.

Already. *Jam,* adv.

Also. *Etiam,* adv. and conj.; *quoque,* adv.

Although. *Etsī, tametsī,* conj. **254, 515.**

Always. *Semper,* adv.

Ambassador. *Lēgātus, ī,* m.

Among. *Apud,* prep. w. acc.; *in,* prep. w. acc. and abl.

An. *See page 18, foot-note 4.*

Ancient. *Prīstinus, a, um; antīquus, a, um.*

And. *Et; que,* **103;** *atque, āc;* conj.

Animal. *Animal, ālis,* n.

Announce. *Nūntiō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

Answer. *Respondeō, ēre, ī, spōn-sum.*

Any. *Ūllus, a, um,* **42,** 151; anything, n. of *quis* or *aliquis,* **106,** 190.

Appoint. *Indīcō, ere, dixī, dictum.*

Approach. *Adventus, ūs,* m. To approach, *succēdō, ere, cēssī, cēssum.*

Approve. *Probō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

Aquitani. *Aquitānī, ōrum,* m. pl.

Arar. *Arar, aris,* m. **128.**

Ariovistus. *Ariovistus, ī,* m.

Arms. *Arma, ōrum,* n. pl.

Army. *Exercitus, ūs,* m.

Arouse. *Excitō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

Arrival. *Adventus, ūs,* m.

Arrogance. *Arrogantia, ae,* f.

Art, work. *Opus, eris,* n.

Artemisia. *Artemīsia, ae,* f.

As. *Ut;* as not to, *ut nōn,* **123,** 500; as soon as, *simul, simul atque,* conj. **337,** 518.

Ascend. *Ascendō, ere, ī, scēnsum.*

Ascertain. *Cōgnōscō, ere, nōvī, nitum.*

Ask. *Rogō, āre, āvī, ātum;* to ask for, *rogō.*

Assail. *Aggredior, ī, grēssus sum.*

Assault. *Oppūgnō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

Assemble, come together. *Conveniō, īre, vēnī, ventum.*

Assist. *Juvō, āre, jūvī, jūtum.*

Assure. *Cōnfīrmō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

At. *Ad,* prep. w. acc.; *in,* prep. w. abl.; often expressed by the Locative or by the Locative Ablative, **185,** 425; at length, *dēmum,* adv.

Attack. *Impetus, ūs,* m. To attack, *oppūgnō, āre, āvī, ātum; aggredior, ī, grēssus sum.*

Attempt. *Cōnātus, ūs,* m. To attempt, *cōnor, ārī, ātus sum.*

Audacity. *Audācia, ae,* f.

Authority. *Auctōritās, ātis,* f.

Avail. *Valeō, ēre, uī, itum.*

Avoid. *Vītō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

Avenge. *Persequor, ī, secūtus sum.*

Await. *Exspēctō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

B.

Back, to lead back. *Redūcō, ere, duxī, ductum;* to drive back, *repellō, ere, reppulī, repulsum; repulsō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

Band. *Manus, ūs,* f.

Bank. *Rīpa, ae,* f.

Barbarian. *Barbarus, ī,* m.

Barbarous. *Barbarus, a, um.*

Battle. *Proelium, iī,* n.; *pūgna, ae,* f.; line of battle, *aciēs, ēī,* f.; a battle takes place, *pūgnātur.*

Be. *Sum, esse, fuī,* **140,** 204; to be able, *possum, pōsse, potuī,* **269,** 290; to be eager, *ārdeō, ēre, ārsī, ārsum;* to be free from, *vacō, āre, āvī, ātum;* to be from, to be distant from, *absum, abesse, āfuī;* to be greatly pleased with, *adamō, āre, āvī, ātum;* to be in command of, *praesum, esse, fuī;* to be silent, *taceō, ēre, uī, itum;* to be unwilling, *nōlō, nōlle, nōluī,* **273,** 293; to be well supplied, *abundō, āre, āvī, ātum;* to be willing, *volō, velle, voluī,* **273,** 293.

Bear. *Ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum.* **269**, **292**.

Beautiful. *Pulcher, chra, chrum.*

Because. *Quod,* conj. **334**, **516**.

Before. *Ante,* adv., and prep. w. acc.; *prō,* prep. w. abl.; *antequam, priusquam,* conj. **341**, **520**.

Beg. *Ōrō, āre, āvī, ātum; rogō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

Beginning. *Initium, iī,* n.

Behind. *Post,* prep. w. acc.

Belgae, Belgians. *Belgae, ārum,* m. pl.

Believe. *Crēdō, ere, didī, ditum.* (Followed by the Dative of the person.)

Besiege. *Obsideō, ēre, sēdī, sēssum.*

Betake one's self. *Sē mandō, āre, āvī, ātum ; sē recipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptum.*

Beyond, across. *Trāns,* prep. w. acc.

Bid. *Liceor, ērī, itus sum.*

Bird. *Avis, is,* f.

Bituriges. *Biturigēs, um,* m. pl.

Blame. *Culpa, ae,* f.

Book. *Liber, brī,* m.

Boundary, natural boundaries. *Nātūra locī.*

Boy. *Puer, erī,* m.

Brave. *Fortis, e.*

Bravely. *Fortiter,* adv.

Bravery. *Virtūs, ūtis,* f.

Bridge. *Pōns, pontis,* m.

Bring. *Portō, āre, āvī, ātum ;* to bring over, *trānsportō, āre, āvī, ātum ;* to bring to an end, *cōnficiō, ere, fēcī, fectum.*

Britons. *Britannī, ōrum,* m. pl.

Brother. *Frāter, tris,* m.

Build. *Aedificō, āre, āvī, ātum ;* to make, *faciō, ere, fēcī, factum.*

Burn. *Exūrō, ere, ūssī, ūstum ; combūrō, ere, ūssī, ūstum ;* to set on fire, *incendō, ere, ī, cēnsum.*

But. *Autem,* conj., see foot-note, p. 316; *sed,* conj.

Buy up. *Redimō, ere, ēmī, ēmptum.*

By. *Ā, ab,* prep. w. abl.; often expressed by the Ablative alone; **78**, **420**; by far, *longē, multō,* adv.

C.

Caesar. *Caesar, aris,* m.

Calamity. *Calamitās, ātis.* f.

Call, name. *Appellō, āre, āvī, ātum ; nōminō, āre, āvī, ātum ;* to call together, *convocō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

Camp. *Castra, ōrum,* n. pl.

Can. *Possum, pōsse, potuī.* **269**, **290**.

Canton. *Pāgus, ī,* m.

Captive. *Captīvus, ī,* m.

Carry, take. *Portō, āre, āvī, ātum ;* to bear, *ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum ;* to carry over, *trānsportō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

Carthage. *Karthāgō, inis,* f.

Cassius. *Cassius, iī,* m.

Cause. *Causa, ae,* f.

Celts. *Celtae, ārum,* m. pl.

Censure. *Accūsō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

Centurion. *Centuriō, ōnis,* m.

Check. *Tardō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

Chief. *Princeps, ipis ; summus, a, um ;* a chief, chieftain, *princeps, ipis,* m.

Cicero. *Cicerŏ, ōnis,* m.

Citizen. *Cīvis, is,* m.

City. *Urbs, urbis,* f.

Civilization. *Hūmānitās, ātis,* f.

Civilized. *Hūmānus, a, um.*

Close. *Claudō, ere, sī, sum.*

Clothe. *Vēstiō, īre, īvī* or *iī, ītum.*

Cloud. *Nūbēs, is,* f.

Collect. *Cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctum.*

Come. *Veniō, īre, vēnī, ventum.*

Command. *Jubeō, ēre, jūssī, jūssum; imperō, āre, āvī, ātum;* to be in command, *praesum, esse, fuī;* to place in command, *praeficiō, ere, fēcī, fectum;* under one's command, *dux* in Ablative Absolute.

Commander. *Imperātor, ōris,* m.

Commit. *Admittō, ere, mīsī, missum.*

Companion. *Comes, itis,* m. and f.

Compel. *Cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctum.*

Concerning. *Dē,* prep. w. abl.

Conduct. *Dēdūcō, ere, duxī, ductum.*

Confidence. *Fidēs, ēī,* f.

Congratulate. *Grātulor, ārī, ātus sum.* (Followed by the Dative.)

Conquer. *Superō, āre, āvī, ātum; vincō, ere, vīcī, victum.*

Conqueror. *Victor, ōris,* m.

Consider, think. *Putō, āre, āvī, ātum; arbitror, ārī, ātus sum; existimō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

Conspire. *Conjūrō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

Consul. *Cōnsul, ulis,* m.

Consult. *Cōnsulō, ere, uī, sultum.*

Contented. *Contentus, a, um.*

Continually. *Continenter,* adv.

Contrary to. *Contrā,* prep. w. acc.

Convention. *Conventus, ūs,* m.

Conversation. *Sermŏ, ōnis,* m.

Council. *Concilium, iī,* n.; *conventus, ūs,* m.

Counsel. *Cōnsilium, iī,* n.

Country. *Terra, ae,* f.; fields, *agrī, ōrum,* m. pl.; one's country, native country, *patria, ae,* f.

Courage. *Virtūs, ūtis,* f.

Crassus. *Crassus, ī,* m.

Crime. *Facinus, oris,* n.

Cross. *Trānseō, īre, iī, itum.*

Crown. *Corōna, ae,* f.

Custom. *Mōs, mōris,* m.

Cut off. *Interclūdō, ere, sī, sum.*

D.

Daily. *Cotīdiē,* adv.

Danger. *Perīculum, ī,* n.

Dare. *Audeō, ēre, ausus sum.* See **259,** *cōnfīdo.*

Dart. *Tēlum, ī,* n.

Daughter. *Fīlia, ae,* f.

Daunt. *Perterreō, ēre, uī, itum.*

Day. *Diēs, ēī,* m. and f.

Daybreak. *Prīma lūx.*

Daylight. *Lūx, lūcis,* f.

Dear. *Cārus, a, um.*

Death. *Mors, mortis,* f.; to put to death, *interficiō, ere, fēcī, fectum.*

Decide. *Cōnstituō, ere, uī, ūtum; statuō, ere, uī, ūtum.*

Defeat. *Superō, āre, āvī, ātum; vincō, ere, vīcī, victum.*

Defence, in defence of. *Prō,* prep. w. abl.

Defend. *Dēfendō, ere, ī, fēn-sum.*

Deliberate. *Dēlīberō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

Deliberation. Gerund of *dēlīberō.*

Delight. *Dēlēctō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

Demand. *Postulō, āre, āvī, ātum; flāgitō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

Deserter. *Fugitīvus, ī, m.*

Deservedly. *Meritō,* adv.

Desire. *Studium, iī, n.* To desire, *studeō, ēre, uī* (followed by the Dative); *cupiō, ere, īvī* or *iī, ītum.*

Desirous. *Cupidus, a, um.*

Detain. *Dētineō, ēre, uī, tentum.*

Deter. *Dēterreō, ēre, uī, itum.*

Determine. *Cōnstituō, ere, uī, ūtum.*

Detest. *Ōdī, isse.* See **308.**

Devastate. *Vastō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

Difficulty. *Difficultās, ātis,* f.

Diminish. *Dēminuō, ere, ī, ūtum.*

Direction. *Pars, partis,* f.

Disposition. *Animus, ī,* m.

Distant, to be distant. *Absum, esse, āfuī.*

Distress. *Premō, ere, pressī, pressum.*

Disturb. *Perturbō, āre, āvī, ātum; commoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtum.*

Divide. *Dīvidō, ere, vīsī, vīsum.*

Divine. *Dīvīnus, a, um.*

Division. *Pars, partis,* f.

Divitiacus. *Dīvitiacus, ī,* m.

Do. *Faciō, ere, fēcī, factum; gerō, ere, gessī, gestum.*

Double. *Duplex, icis.*

Doubt. *Dubitō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

Draw up. *Īnstruō, ere, strūxī, strūctum.*

Drive back. *Repellō, ere, reppulī, repulsum;* to drive out, *ēiciō, ere, jēcī, jectum.*

Druids. *Druidēs, um,* m. pl.

Dumnorix. *Dumnorix, igis,* m.

During. Usually expressed by the Accusative. **98, 379.**

Dwell. *Incolō, ere, uī, cultum; habitō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

E.

Each. *Uterque, traque, trumque,* inflected like *uter,* **42, 151;** with each other, *inter sē.*

Eager, to be eager. *Ārdeō, ēre, ārsī, ārsum.*

Easily. *Facile,* adv.

Easy. *Facilis, e;* very easy, *perfacilis, e.*

Eight. *Octo,* indeclinable.

Eighth. *Octāvus, a, um.*

Either. *Aut,* conj.; either . . . or, *aut . . . aut.*

Embassy. *Lēgātiō, ōnis,* f.

Enclose. *Contineō, ēre, uī, tentum.*

End, to bring to an end. *Cōnficiō, ere, fēcī, fectum.*

Endure. *Ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum.* **269, 292.**

Enemy. *Hostis, is,* m. and f.; *inimīcus, ī,* m. See **296.**

Enervate. *Effēminō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

Enlist, enrol. *Cōnscrībō, ere, scrīpsī, scrīptum.*

Entangled. *Impedītus, a, um.*

Establish. *Cōnfirmō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

Even. *Etiam,* adv.

Ever, always. *Semper,* adv.

Excellently. *Ēgregiē,* adv.

Except. *Praeterquam,* adv. See 279, sentence 17.

Exchange. *Inter sē dō, dare, dedī, datum.*

Exile. *Exsul, ulis,* m. and f.

Expect. *Exspectō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

Expense. *Sūmptus, ūs,* m.

Experience. *Ūsus, ūs,* m.

Explore. *Explōrō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

Expose. *Nūdō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

F.

Faithful. *Fīdus, a, um ; fidēlis, e.*

False. *Falsus, a, um.*

Far. *Longē,* adv.

Father. *Pater, tris,* m.

Father-in-law. *Socer, eri,* m.

Favor. *Grātia, ae,* f. To favor, *faveō, ēre, fāvī, fautum.* (Followed by the Dative.)

Fear. *Timor, ōris,* m. To fear, *timeō, ēre, uī.*

Fertile. *Fertilis, e.*

Fertility. *Fertilitās, ātis,* f.

Few. *Paucī, ae, a.*

Field. *Ager, grī,* m.

Fierce. *Ferus, a, um.*

Fifth. *Quīntus, a, um.*

Fight. *Pūgnō, āre, āvī, ātum ;* fighting goes on, *pūgnātur;* 281, 301.

Fill. *Compleō, ēre, ēvī, ētum.*

Find. *Reperiō, īre, repperī, repertum.*

Finish. *Cōnficiō, ere, fēcī, fectum.*

Fire. *Ignis, is,* m; to set on fire, *incendō, ere, ī, cēnsum.*

First. *Prīmus, a, um.*

Five. *Quīnque,* indeclinable.

Flight. *Fuga, ae,* f.

Flow. *Fluō, ere, flūxī, flūxum.*

Foe. *Inimīcus, ī,* m.

Follow. *Sequor, ī, secūtus sum.*

Foot. *Pēs, pedis,* m.

Foot-soldier. *Pedes, itis,* m.

For. *Prō,* prep. w. abl. ; *ad,* prep. w. acc. ; for, on account of, *ob,* prep. w. acc. ; for *is often expressed by the Dative,* 54, 384; for, during, *per,* prep. w. acc. ; often expressed by the Accusative alone, 98, 379; to ask for, *rogō, āre, āvī, ātum ;* to wait for, *exspectō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

Force. *Cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctum.*

Forced marches. *Māgna itinera.*

Forces. *Cōpiae, ārum,* f. pl.

Forest. *Silva, ae,* f.

Form line of battle. *Aciem īnstruō, ere, strūxī, strūctum.*

Formerly. *Anteā,* adv.

Forth, to go forth. *Exeō, īre, iī, itum ;* to lead forth, *ēdūcō, ere, duxī, ductum.*

Fortification. *Mūnītiō, ōnis,* f.

Fortify. *Mūniō, īre, īvī or iī, ītum.*

Fortune. *Fortūna, ae,* f.

Forward, to send forward. *Praemittō, ere, mīsī, missum.*

Fourteenth. *Quartus decimus, quarta decima, quartum decimum.*

Free. *Līber, era, erum ;* to be free from, *vacō, āre, āvī, ātum.* To free, *līberō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

Freedom. *Lībertās, ātis,* f.

Frequent. *Crēber, bra, brum.*

Frequently. *Saepe,* adv.

Friend. *Amīcus, ī,* m.

Friendly. *Amīcus, a, um.*

Friendship. *Amīcitia, ae,* f.

From. *Ā, ab, dē,* prep. w. abl.;
to be distant from, *absum, esse,
āfuī.*

Front, in front of. *Prō,* prep. w.
abl.

Future. *Reliquum tempus;* for
the future, in future, *in reli-
quum tempus.*

G.

Galba. *Galba, ae,* m.

Garrison. *Praesidium, iī,* n.

Gate. *Porta, ae,* f.

Gaul, the country. *Gallia, ae,* f.
Gaul, a Gaul, *Gallus, ī,* m.

Gem. *Gemma, ae,* f.

General. *Imperātor, ōris,* m.

Geneva. *Genāva, ae,* f.

German. *Germānus, ī,* m.

Gift. *Dōnum, ī,* n.

Girl. *Puella, ae,* f.

Give. *Dō, dare, dedī, datum;*
to give up, *trādō, ere, didī,
ditum ; reddō, ere, didī, ditum.*

Glory. *Glōria, ae,* f.

Go. *Eō, īre, īvī* or *iī, itum,* **277,**
295; to go forth, *exeō, īre, iī,
itum;* fighting goes on, *pūgnā-
tur,* **281,** 301.

Gold. *Aurum, ī,* n.

Golden, gold. *Aureus, a, um.*

Good. *Bonus, a, um,* comp.
melior, sup. *optimus.*

Grain. *Frūmentum, ī,* n.

Grandson. *Nepōs, ōtis,* m.

Great. *Māgnus, a, um ;* so great,
tantus, a, um.

Greatly, to be greatly pleased
with. *Adamō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

Greece. *Graecia, ae,* f.

Greek. *Graecus, a, um ;* a Greek,
Graecus, ī, m.

Grief. *Dolor, ōris,* m.

Guard. *Custōdiō, īre, īvī* or *iī,
ītum.*

Guest. *Hospes, itis,* m. and f.

H.

Hand. *Manus, ūs,* f.

Happen. *Fīō, fierī, factus sum.*
277, 294.

Happily. *Fēlīciter,* adv.

Harbor. *Portus, ūs,* m.

Harm. *Maleficium, iī,* n.

Hasten. *Contendō, ere, ī, tum ;
mātūrō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

Have. *Habeō, ēre, uī, itum ;* to
have power, *possum, pōsse,
potuī,* **269,** 290; to have to,
*often expressed by the Gerund-
ive,* **266,** 234.

He. *Is, ea, id ; ille, illa, illud ;
hīc, haec, hōc;* **102,** 186; often
only implied in the ending of
the verb.

Hear. *Audiō, īre, īvī* or *iī, ītum.*

Height. *Altitūdō, inis,* f.

Help. *Auxilium, iī,* n. To help,
juvō, āre, jūvī, jūtum.

Helvetii. *Helvētiī, ōrum,* m. pl.

Hesitate. *Dubitō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

High. *Altus, a, um.*

Hill. *Collis, is,* m.

Himself. *Suī,* **102,** 184; *ipse, a,
um,* **102,** 186.

His. *Suus, a, um ;* sometimes ex-
pressed by the genitive of *is* or
ille ; sometimes not expressed
in Latin.

Hold. *Teneō, ēre, uī, tentum ;* to
regard, *habeō, ēre, uī, itum.*

Home. *Domus, ūs*, f.; at home, *domī*, **185, 426**; homeward, home, *domum*, **277, 380**.

Honor, ornament. *Ōrnāmentum, ī*, n.

Hope. *Spēs, spĕī*, f.

Horse. *Equus, ī*, m.

Horseman. *Eques, itis*, m.

Hostage. *Obses, idis*, m. and f.

Hour. *Hōra, ae*, f.

How. *Quam*, adv.; how large, *quantus, a, um*; how many, *quot*, indeclinable.

Hundred. *Centum*, indeclinable.

Hurl. *Cōiciō, ere, jēcī, jectum.*

I.

I. *Ego, meī*. **102, 184**.

If. *Sī*, conj. **250, 507**.

Implore. *Implōrō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

Import. *Importō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

In. *In*, prep. w. acc. and abl.; in front of, *prō*, prep. w, abl.; in regard to, *dē*, prep. w. abl.; in the vicinity of, *ad, apud, circum*, prep. w. acc.; *to plead in chains, ex vinculīs;* in such a way, *ita*, adv.

Incessantly. *Continenter*, adv.

Inflict. *Īnferō, ferre, intulī, illātum;* to inflict *punishment, sūmō, ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum;* see **328**, sentence 9; literally, *to take punishment.*

Inform. *Certiōrem faciō, ere, fēcī, factum;* to be informed, *certior fierī.*

Inhabit. *Incolō, ere, uī, cultum; habitō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

Inhabitant. *Is quī incolit,* literally, *he who inhabits.*

Inquire. *Quaerō, ere, sīvī or sīī, sītum.*

Intend. *In animō esse*, w. Dative; I intend, *mihī in animō est;* to intend *is often expressed by the future active participle,* **266, 233**.

Intention, it is my intention. *Mihī in animō est.*

Interest, to be for one's interest. *Interest, esse, fuit.* **281**, 301.

Interior of. *Interior, us,* in agreement with noun.

Into. *In*, prep. w. acc.

Island. *Īnsula, ae*, f.

It. *Is, ea, id; ille, a, ud; hīc, haec, hŏc;* **102, 186**; often only implied in the ending of the verb.

Italy. *Ĭtalia, ae*, f.

Its. *Suus, a, um;* sometimes expressed by the genitive of *is* or *ille;* sometimes not expressed in Latin.

J.

Judge. *Jūdex, icis*, m. and f. To judge, *jūdicō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

Justice. *Jūstitia, ae*, f.

K.

Keep. *Teneō, ēre, uī, tentum; contineō, ēre, uī, tentum; retineō, ēre, uī, tentum; habeō, ēre, uī, itum;* to prevent, *prohibeō, ēre, uī, itum.*

Kent. *Cantium, iī*, n.

King. *Rēx, rēgis*, m.

Know. *Sciō, īre, īvī or iī, ītum; intellegō, ere, lēxī, lēctum.*

Knowledge. *Scientia, ae, f.*

L.

Lake. *Lacus, ūs, m.*

Land. *Terra, ae, f.; lands, fields, agrī, ōrum, m. pl.*

Large. *Mágnus, a, um, comp. májor, sup. máximus; how large, quantus, a, um.*

Last, nearest. *Próximus, a, um.*

Latinus. *Latīnus, ī, m.*

Lavinia. *Lāvinia, ae, f.*

Law. *Lēx, lēgis, f.*

Lay waste. *Vastō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

Lead. *Dūcō, ere, duxī, ductum; to lead across, trānsdūcō, ere, duxī, ductum; to lead back, redūcō, ere, duxī, ductum; to lead out, ēdūcō, ere, duxī, ductum.*

Leader. *Prínceps, ipis, m. and f.; dux, ducis, m. and f.*

Learning. *Dōctrīna, ae, f.*

Leave. *Relinquō, ere, līquī, lictum.*

Legion. *Legiŏ, ōnis, f.*

Lemannus. *Lemannus, ī, m.*

Length, at length. *Dēmum, adv.*

Letter of the alphabet. *Littera, ae, f.; letter, epistle, epistula, ae, f.; litterae, ārum, f. pl.*

Liberty. *Libertās, ātis, f.*

Lieutenant. *Lēgātus, ī, m.*

Life. *Vīta, ae, f.*

Like very much. *Adamō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

Line. *Aciēs, ēī, f.; line of battle, aciēs; line of march, agmen, inis, n.*

Listen to. *Audiō, īre, īvī or iī, ītum.*

Live. *Vīvō, ere, vixī, victum.*

Long. *Longē, adv.; a long time,*

diū, comp. diūtius, sup. diūtissimē, adv.

Love. *Amor, ōris, m. To love, amō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

M.

Magistrate. *Magistrātus, ūs, m.*

Make. *Faciō, ere, fēcī, factum; to make war, gerō, ere, gessī, gestum; inferō, ferre, intulī, illātum.*

Man. *Homŏ, inis, m. and f.; vir, virī, m.*

Many, much. *Multus, a, um; how many, quot, indeclinable.*

March. *Iter, itineris, n.; forced marches, mágna itinera; line of march, agmen, inis, n. To march, iter faciō, facere, fēcī, factum.*

Marcus. *Mārcus, ī, m.*

Match, a match for. *Pār, paris.*

May. *Licet, ēre, licuit, 281, 301.*

Menapii. *Menapii, ōrum, m. pl.*

Merchant. *Mercātor, ōris, m.*

Messenger. *Nūntius, iī, m.*

Midday. *Merīdiēs, ēī, m.*

Mile. *Mīlle passŭs; 247, footnote.*

Military. *Mīlitāris, e; military affairs, rēs mīlitāris.*

Mind. *Animus, ī, m.; mēns, mentis, f.*

Moat. *Fŏssa, ae, f.*

Month. *Mēnsis, is, m.*

Mother. *Māter, tris, f.*

Mountain. *Mōns, montis, m.*

**Much, to like very much, adamō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

Must. Often expressed by the Gerundive. **266, 234.**

My. *Meus, a, um.* **102**, 185.
Myself. *Ego, mei,* **102**, 184; *ipse, a, um,* **102**, 186.

N.

Name. *Nōminō, āre, āvī, ātum.*
Nation. *Gēns, gentis,* f.; *nātiō, ōnis,* f.
Natural boundaries. *Nātūra locī.*
Nature. *Nātūra, ae,* f.
Navigate. *Nāvigō, āre, āvī, ātum.*
Navigation. Gerund of *nāvigō.*
Near. *Apud, ad,* prep. w. acc.
Nearer. *Propior, us.*
Nearly. *Ferē,* adv.; *paene,* adv.
Neighbor. *Fīnitimus, ī,* m.
Neighboring. *Fīnitimus, a, um; prōximus, a, um.*
Nervii. *Nerviī, ōrum,* m. pl.
Never. *Nūnquam,* adv.
New. *Novus, a, um.*
Next. *Prōximus, a, um.*
No. *Nūllus, a, um,* **42**, 151; *nihil* w. Partitive Genitive, **31**, 397.
Noble. *Nōbilis, e.*
Not. *Nōn,* adv.; w. imperative or subjunctive of desire, *nē,* adv.; not ? *nōnne ?* conj., interrogative particle; not yet, *nōndum,* adv.
Number. *Numerus, ī,* m.

O.

Obey. *Pāreō, ēre, uī, itum.* (Followed by the Dative.)
Observe. *Observō, āre, āvī, ātum.*
Obtain possession of. *Potior, īrī, ītus sum;* **258**, 421; to obtain one's request, *impetrō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

Occupy. *Occupō, āre, āvī, ātum.*
Octodurus. *Octōdūrus, ī,* m.
Of. *Dē, ē, ex,* prep. w. abl.; out of, *ē, ex ;* in front of, *prō,* prep. w. abl.
Off, to cut off. *Interclūdō, ere, sī, sum.*
Often. *Saepe,* adv.
On, at. *Ad,* prep. w. acc.; *in,* prep. w. abl.; on the side of, *ā, ab,* prep. w. abl.; on all sides, *undique,* adv.; fighting goes on, *pūgnātur,* **281**, 301.
One. *Ūnus, a, um ;* **97**, 175; that one, *is, ea, id ; ille, a, ud ;* **102**, 186.
Open. *Apertus, a, um.*
Opinion. *Sententia, ae,* f.
Or. *Aut,* conj.; in questions, *an,* conj.
Oration. *Ōrātiō, ōnis,* f.
Orator. *Ōrātor, ōris,* m.
Order. *Imperō, āre, āvī, ātum ; jubeō, ēre, jūssī, jūssum ;* in order that, *ut,* conj. **119**, 497.
Other. *Alius, a, ud ;* **42**, 151; the remaining, *reliquus, a, um ;* with each other, *inter sē.*
Ought. *Dēbeō, ēre, uī, itum ;* often expressed by the Gerundive, **266**, 234.
Our. *Noster, tra, trum.*
Out of. *Ex, ē,* prep. w. abl.; to lead out, *ēdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductum ;* to set out, *proficīscor, ī, profectus sum.*
Over. *Per, trāns,* prep. w. acc.; a bridge over, *in,* prep. w. abl.; to bring over, carry over, *trānsportō, āre, āvī, ātum.*
Owe. *Dēbeō, ēre, uī, itum.*
Own. *Suus, a, um.*

P.

Pain. *Dolor, ōris,* m.

Part. *Pars, partis,* f.

Pass the winter. *Hiemō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

Passionate. *Īrācundus, a, um.*

Patiently. *Patienter,* adv.

Peace. *Pāx, pācis,* f.

Pedius. *Pedius, iī,* m.

Penalty. *Poena, ae,* f.

People. *Populus, ī,* m.

Peril. *Perīculum, ī,* n.

Perilous. *Perīculōsus, a, um.*

Persuade. *Persuādeō, ēre, suāsī, suāsum.* (Followed by the Dative of the *person.*)

Pisistratus. *Pīsistratus, ī,* m.

Place. *Locus, ī,* m., pl. *loca, ōrum,* n.; a battle takes place, *pūgnātur.* To place, *pōnō, ere, posuī, positum; collocō, āre, āvī, ātum; cōnstituō, ere, uī, ūtum;* to place in command, *praeficiō, ere, fēcī, fectum.*

Plan. *Cōnsilium, iī,* n.; *sententia, ae,* f.

Plato. *Platō, ōnis,* m.

Plead. *Dīcō, ere, dīxī, dictum; agō, ere, ēgī, āctum.*

Pleased, to be greatly pleased with. *Adamō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

Plough. *Arō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

Poet. *Poēta, ae,* m.

Pompey. *Pompēius, iī,* m.

Populace. *Plēbs, plēbis,* f.

Position. *Locus, ī,* m., pl. *loca, ōrum,* n.

Possess. *Habeō, ēre, uī, itum; sum, esse, fuī* in w. abl.; he possesses wisdom, *sapientia in eō est.*

Possession, to obtain possession of. *Potior, īrī, ītus sum,* **258, 421**; to take possession of, *occupō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

Power. *Potentia, ae,* f.; regal power, *rēgnum, ī,* n.; to have power, *possum, pōsse, potuī,* **269, 290.**

Praise. *Laudō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

Prefer. *Mālō, mālle, māluī.* **273, 293.**

Prepare. *Parō, āre, āvī, ātum; comparō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

Prepared. *Parātus, a, um.*

Present. *Dōnō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

Present, for the present. *In praesentiā.*

Prevail. *Valeō, ēre, uī, itum.*

Prevent. *Prohibeō, ēre, uī, itum.*

Previously. *Anteā,* adv.

Price. *Pretium, iī,* n.

Propose *a law. Ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum,* **269, 292.**

Protect, fortify. *Mūniō, īre, īvī* or *iī, ītum.*

Protection. *Praesidium, iī,* n.

Provide. *Prōspiciō, ere, spēxī, spēctum; prōvideō, ēre, vidī, vīsum.* (Followed by the Dative.)

Province. *Prōvincia, ae,* f.

Provisions. *Cibāria, ōrum,* n. pl.

Punishment. *Supplicium, iī,* n.

Pupil. *Discipulus, ī,* m.

Purpose. *Cōnsilium, iī,* n.; *cōnātus, ūs,* m.; for the purpose of, *causā* w. Genitive.

Pursue. *Sequor, ī, secūtus sum; īnsequor, ī, secūtus sum; persequor, ī, secūtus sum.*

Put to death. *Interficiō, ere, fēcī, fectum; occīdō, ere, ī, sum.*

Q.

Quarters, winter quarters. *Hi-berna, ōrum,* n. pl.
Queen. *Rēgina, ae,* f.
Quickly. *Celeriter,* adv.

R.

Rampart. *Vallum, ī,* n.
Rash. *Temerārius, a, um.*
Rather than. *Quam,* conj.
Ravage. *Dēpopulor, ārī, ātus sum.*
Reach, arrive at. *Adeō, īre, iī, itum; veniō, īre, vēnī, ventum; perveniō, īre, vēnī, ventum;* to extend, *pertineō, ēre, uī, tentum.*
Read. *Legō, ere, lēgī, lēctum.*
Readily. *Facile,* adv.
Ready. *Parātus, a, um.*
Rear. *Novissimum agmen, novissimī agminis,* n.
Reason. *Causa, ae,* f.; *rēs, rĕī,* f.
Recollection. *Memoria, ae,* f.
Reference, with reference to. *Dē,* prep. w. abl.
Refinement. *Cultus, ūs,* m.
Regal power. *Rēgnum, ī,* n.
Regard, to regard as. *Habeō, ēre, uī, itum prō* w. abl.; in regard to, *dē,* prep. w. abl.
Region. *Regiō, ōnis,* f.
Reject. *Recūsō, āre, āvī, ātum.*
Rely upon. *Cōnfīdō, ere, fīsus sum.* See **259.**
Remain. *Maneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsum; permaneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsum; remaneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsum;* to remain silent, *taceō, ēre, uī, itum.*

Remember. *Reminīscor, ī.* **307, 406.**
Remi. *Rēmī, ōrum,* m. pl.
Remove. *Moveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtum; removeō, ēre, mōvī, mōtum.*
Renew. *Renovō, āre, āvī, ātum.*
Renowned. *Clārus, a, um.*
Repent. *Paenitet, ēre, uit;* I repent, *mē paenitet.* **281, 301; 285, 409.**
Report. *Rūmor, ōris,* m. To report, *nūntiō, āre, āvī, ātum; ēnūntiō, āre, āvī, ātum.*
Repulse. *Prōpulsō, āre, āvī, ātum; repellō, ere, reppulī, repulsum.*
Reputation. *Auctōritās, ātis,* f.
Request, to obtain one's request. *Impetrō, āre, āvī, ātum.*
Reside. *Habitō, āre, āvī, ātum.*
Rest of. *Reliquus, a, um.*
Restore. *Restituō, ere, uī, ūtum.*
Retain. *Retineō, ēre, uī, tentum.*
Retard. *Tardō, āre, āvī, ātum.*
Return. *Redeō, īre, iī, itum; revertor, ī, revertī, reversum,* deponent in present system.
Revenue. *Vectīgal, ālis,* n.
Revolution. *Rēs novae.*
Rhine. *Rhēnus, ī,* m.
Rhone. *Rhodanus, ī,* m.
Ride toward. *Adequitō, āre, āvī, ātum.*
River. *Flūmen, inis,* n.
Roman. *Rōmānus, a, um;* a Roman, *Rōmānus, ī,* m.
Rome. *Rōma, ae,* f.
Romulus. *Rōmulus, ī,* m.
Route. *Iter, itineris,* n.
Rule. *Regō, ere, rēxī, rēctum.*
Rumor. *Rūmor, ōris,* m.

S.

Safe. *Tūtus, a, um.*

Safeguard. *Praesidium, ii, n.*

Safety. *Salūs, ūtis, f.*

Same. *Īdem, eadem, idem.* **102, 186.**

Santones. *Santonēs, um, m. pl.*

Say. *Dīcō, ere, dīxī, dictum.*

School. *Schola, ae, f.*

Scout. *Explōrātor, ōris, m.*

Sea. *Mare, is, n.*

Second. *Secundus, a, um.*

Secure, win. *Conciliō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

See. *Videō, ēre, vīdī, vīsum.*

Seek. *Petō, ere, īvī or iī, ītum; quaerō, ere, sīvī or siī, sītum.*

Seize. *Occupō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

Select. *Dēligō, ere, lēgī, lēctum.*

Senate. *Senātus, ūs, m.*

Send. *Mittō, ere, mīsī, missum;* to send ahead, send forward, *praemittō, ere, mīsī, missum.*

Separate. *Dīvidō, ere, vīsī, vīsum.*

Servitude. *Servitūs, ūtis, f.*

Set fire to. *Incendō, ere, ī, cēnsum.*

Set out. *Proficiscor, ī, profectus sum.*

Setting. *Occāsus, ūs, m.*

Setting out. *Profectiō, ōnis, f.*

Settle. *Cōnsīdō, ere, sēdī, sessum.*

Seventh. *Septimus, a, um.*

Several. *Complūrēs, a or ia, ium.*

Severe. *Ācer, cris, cre; sevērus, a, um.*

Severely. *Ācriter,* adv.; *graviter,* adv.

Shepherd. *Pāstor, ōris, m.*

Ship. *Nāvis, is, f.; nāvigium, ii, n.;* ship of war, *longa nāvis.*

Shut in. *Contineō, ēre, uī, tentum.*

Side, part. *Pars, partis, f.;* on all sides, *undique,* adv.

Sight. *Cōnspectus, ūs, m.*

Signal. *Īnsignis, e.*

Silent, to be silent, to remain silent. *Taceō, ēre, uī, itum.*

Since. *Cum,* conj.

Singing. *Cantus, ūs, m.*

Single, one. *Ūnus, a, um.* **97, 175.**

Six. *Sex,* indeclinable.

Sixth. *Sextus, a, um.*

Skilful. *Perītus, a, um.*

Skin. *Pellis, is, f.*

Slave. *Servus, ī, m.*

Slavery. *Servitūs, ūtis, f.*

Slay. *Occīdō, ere, ī, sum; interficiō, ere, fēcī, fectum.*

Sleep. *Dormiō, īre, īvī or iī, ītum.*

Small. *Parvus, a, um.* **86, 165.**

So, to such an extent. *Tam,* adv.; in such a way, *ita,* adv.; so great, *tantus, a, um.*

Soldier. *Mīles, itis, m. and f.*

Son. *Fīlius, ii, m.* **31, 51, 5.**

Son-in-law. *Gener, erī, m.*

Soon, as soon as. *Simul, simul atque,* conj. **337, 518.**

Soul. *Animus, ī, m.*

Soundly. *Artē,* adv.

Sovereignty. *Prīncipātus, ūs, m.*

Space. *Spatium, ii, n.; locus, ī, m.*

Spare. *Parcō, ere, pepercī, parsum.* (Followed by the Dative.)

Speak. *Dīcō, ere, dīxī, dictum.*

Speedily. *Celeriter,* adv.

Spirit. *Animus, ī, m.*

State. *Cīvitās, ātis, f.* To state, say, *dīcō, ere, dīxī, dictum.*

Station. *Colloco, āre, āvī, ātum;* *cōnstituō, ere, uī, ūtum.*

Stone. *Lapis, ĭdis,* m.

Storm. *Tempestās, ātis,* f.; to take by storm, *expūgnō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

Story. *Fābula, ae,* f.

Stricken with fear. *Timōre perterritus, a, um.*

Strip. *Nŭdō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

Successfully. *Fēlĭcĭter,* adv.

Successive. *Continuus, a, um.*

Such, so great. *Tantus, a, um;* in such a way, *ĭta,* adv.

Suebi. *Suēbī, ōrum,* m. pl.

Suffer. *Pătior, ī, passus sum.*

Summer. *Aestās, ātis,* f.

Summon. *Vocō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

Sun. *Sōl, sōlis,* m.

Sunset. *Sōlis occāsus, ūs,* m.

Supplied, to be well supplied. *Abundō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

Supply, supplies. *Commeātus, ūs,* m.; supply of grain, supplies, *rēs frūmentāria.*

Support. *Alō, ere, uī, alĭtum* and *altum.*

Surpass. *Praecēdō, ere, cēssī, cēssum; praestō, āre, stĭtī, stĭtum* and *stātum.*

Surround. *Contineō, ēre, uī, tentum.*

Suspicion. *Suspīciō, ōnis,* f.

Sustain. *Sustineō, ēre, uī, tentum.*

T.

Take. *Căpiō, ere, cēpī, captum; sūmō, ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum;* to carry, *portō, āre, āvī, ātum;* to take by storm, *expūgnō, āre, āvī, ātum;* to take possession of, *occupō, āre, āvī, ātum;* to take from, *efferō, ferre, extulī, ēlātum;* to take vengeance on, *ulcīscor, ī, ultus sum;* a battle takes place, *pūgnātur,* **281,** 301.

Teach. *Doceō, ēre, uī, dōctum.*

Tell. *Dīcō, ere, dīxī, dictum.*

Temple. *Templum, ī,* n.

Ten. *Decem,* indeclinable.

Tend. *Pertineō, ēre, uī, tentum.*

Tenth. *Decimus, a, um.*

Terrify. *Terreō, ēre, uī, ĭtum;* to terrify greatly, *perterreō, ēre, uī, ĭtum.*

Territory. *Fīnēs, ium,* m. pl.

Thames. *Tamesis, is,* m.

Than. *Quam,* conj.

That. *Ille, a, ud; is, ea, id;* **102,** 186; that of yours, *iste, a, ud,* **102,** 186; that, *relative, quī, quae, quod,* **106,** 187; that, repeating a previous noun, is often not to be rendered into Latin; that, in order that, *ut, quō, quōminus,* conj. **119,** 497.

The. See page 18, foot-note 4.

Their. *Suus, a, um;* sometimes expressed by the genitive of *is* or *ille,* **102,** 186; sometimes not expressed in Latin.

Then. *Tum,* adv.

There. *Ibĭ,* adv.

Therefore. *Igĭtur,* conj.

Thing. *Rēs, rĕī,* f.

Think. *Putō, āre, āvī, ātum; arbitror, ārī, ātus sum; exīstimō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

Third. *Tertius, a, um.*

This. *Hĭc, haec, hŏc.* **102,** 186.

Thou. *Tŭ, tuī.* **102,** 184.

Three. *Trēs, tria.* **97,** 175.

Through. *Per,* prep. w. acc.

Throw. *Jaciō, ere, jēcī, jactum.*

Tidings. *Nūntius, iī, m.*

Time. *Tempus, oris,* n.; *diēs, ēī,* f. (although, when meaning *day,* usually masculine); for a long time, *diū,* comp. *diūtius,* sup. *diūtissimē,* adv.

To. *Ad,* prep. w. acc.; *often expressed by the Dative,* **54, 384**; with reference to, *dē,* prep. w. abl.; to set fire to, *incendō, ere, ī, cēnsum.*

Together. *Ūnā,* adv.; to call together, *convocō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

Top of. *Summus, a, um.*

Toward. *Ad,* prep. w. acc.

Tower. *Turris, is,* f.

Town. *Oppidum, ī,* n.

Traitor. *Prōditor, ōris,* m.

Traveller. *Viātor, ōris,* m.

Treason. *Prōditiō, ōnis,* f.

Tribe. *Gēns, gentis,* f.

Tribune. *Tribūnus, ī,* m.

Triple. *Triplex, icis.*

True. *Vērus, a, um.*

Truth. *Vērum, ī,* n.

Try. *Tentō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

Tullia. *Tullia, ae,* f.

Two. *Duo, ae, o,* **97, 175.**

Tyrant. *Tyrannus, ī,* m.

U.

Under. *Sub,* prep. w. acc. and abl.; under the command of, *dux,* in the Ablative Absolute; under the command of Caesar, *Caesare duce.*

Understand. *Intellegō, ere, lēxī, lēctum.*

Undertake. *Suscipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptum.*

Unfortunate. *Īnfēlix, icis.*

Unite. *Conjungō, ere, junxī, junctum.*

Unless. *Nisi,* conj. **250, 507.**

Unskilled. *Imperītus, a, um.*

Until. *Dum, quoad,* conj. **337, 519.**

Unwilling, to be unwilling. *Nōlō, nōlle, nōluī.* **273, 293.**

Unworthy. *Indignus, a, um.*

Up, to draw up. *Īnstruō, ere, strūxī, strūctum;* to give up, *trādō, ere, didī, ditum.*

Upbraid. *Accūsō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

Upon. *In,* prep. w. acc. and abl.; against, *in, contrā,* prep. w. acc.

Urge. *Hortor, ārī, ātus sum.*

Use. *Ūsus, ūs,* m. To use, *ūtor, ī, ūsus sum.*

Useful. *Ūtilis, e.*

Usipetes. *Usipetēs, um,* m. pl.

V.

Valor. *Virtūs, ūtis,* f.

Valuable. *Pretiōsus, a, um.*

Veneti. *Veneti, ōrum,* m. pl.

Vengeance, to take vengeance on. *Ulciscor, ī, ultus sum.*

Vergobretus. *Vergobretus, ī,* m.

Very. *Often expressed by the sup.;* very easy, *perfacilis, e;* to like very much, *adamō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

Vessel. *Nāvis, is,* f.

Vicinity, in the vicinity of. *Apud, ad, circum,* prep. w. acc.

Victoria. *Victōria, ae,* f.

Victory. *Victōria, ae,* f.

Village. *Vīcus, ī,* m.

Virtue. *Virtūs, ūtis,* f.

Voice. *Vōx, vōcis,* f.

16

W.

Wage. *Gerō, ere, gessī, gestum ;*
to wage against, *inferō, ferre,*
intulī, illātum.

Wait for. *Exspectō, āre, āvī,*
ātum.

Wall. *Mūrus, ī, m.*

Want. *Inopia, ae, f.*

War. *Bellum, ī, n. ;* ship of war,
nāvis longa.

Warlike. *Bellicōsus, a, um.*

Warn. *Moneō, ēre, uī, itum.*

Waste, to lay waste. *Vastō, āre,*
āvī, ātum.

Way, in such a way. *Ita, adv.*

Weaken. *Effēminō, āre, āvī,*
ātum.

Well, to be well supplied. *Ab-*
undō, āre, āvī, ātum.

What ? *Quis, quae, quid ; quī,*
quae, quod. **106, 188.**

When. *Cum, conj.* **341, 521.**

Whether. *Num,* in a single ques-
tion ; *utrum,* in a double ques-
tion.

Which, who. *Quī, quae, quod,*
106, 187; which ? who ? *quis,*
quae, quid ; quī, quae, quod ;
106, 188.

Whole. *Omnis, e ; tōtus, a, um,*
42, 151; *ūniversus, a, um.*

Why. *Quārē, cūr, adv.*

Width. *Lātitūdō, inis, f.*

Willing, to be willing. *Volō,*
velle, voluī. **273, 293.**

Winter. *Hiems, emis, f. ;* winter
quarters, *hiberna, ōrum, n. pl.*

To winter, pass the winter,
hiemō, āre, āvī, ātum.

Wisdom. *Sapientia, ae, f.*

Wise. *Sapiēns, entis.*

Wish. *Cupiō, ere, īvī* or *iī,*
ītum ; volō, velle, voluī. **273,**
293.

With. *Cum,* prep. w. abl. ; among,
apud, prep. w. acc. ; with ref-
erence to, *dē,* prep. w. abl. ;
with each other, with one an-
other, *inter sē ;* to be greatly
pleased with, *adamō, āre, āvī,*
ātum.

Withdraw. *Subdūcō, ere, duxī,*
ductum ; redūcō, ere, duxī, duc-
tum ; dēdūcō, ere, duxī, duc-
tum.

Without. *Sine,* prep. w. abl.

Withstand. *Sustineō, ēre, uī,*
tentum.

Witness. *Testis, is, m.* and f.

Word. *Verbum, ī, n.*

Would that. *Utinam,* interj. **114,**
483, 1.

Wound. *Vulnus, eris, n.* To
wound, *vulnerō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

Write. *Scrībō, ere, scripsī, scrip-*
tum.

Wrong. *Injūria, ae, f.*

Y.

Yet, not yet. *Nōndum,* **adv.**

Yoke. *Jugum, ī, n.*

You, thou. *Tū, tuī.* **102, 184.**

Your. *Vester, tra, trum ;* thy,
tuus, a, um.

TABLE

ALBERT HARKNESS'S

BOOKS FOR THE STUDY OF LATIN.

Arnold's First Latin Book. 12mo. $1.30.

Arnold's Second Latin Book and Reader. 12mo. $1.10.

Introductory Latin Book. 12mo. $1.10.

Elements of Latin Grammar. 12mo. $1.10.

Latin Grammar (Standard). Revised edition of 1881. One vol. 12mo. Half leather, $1.40.

Latin Grammar. Edition of 1874. 12mo. $1.30

Latin Reader. 12mo. $1.10.

New Latin Reader. 12mo. $1.10.

Latin Reader. With Exercises. 12mo. $1.30.

Introduction to Latin Prose Composition. 12mo. $1.30.

Preparatory Course in Latin Prose Authors, comprising Four Books of Cæsar's Gallic War, Sallust's Catiline, and Eight Orations of Cicero. With Notes, Illustrations, a Map of Gaul, and a Special Dictionary. 12mo. $1.75.

Sallust's Catiline. With Notes and a Special Dictionary. 12mo. $1.15.

Cæsar's Commentaries. With Special Dictionary. 12mo $1.30.

Cicero's Select Orations. 12mo. $1.30.

Cicero's Select Orations. With Dictionary. 12mo. $1.50.

FOR THE STUDY OF GREEK.

First Greek Book. With Reader, Notes, and Vocabulary. 12mo. Cloth, $1.30.

For sale by all booksellers; or sent by mail, post-paid, on receipt of price.

New York: D. APPLETON & CO., 1, 3, & 5 Bond Street.

BOOKS FOR THE STUDY OF LATIN.

BY

HENRY S. FRIEZE,

Professor of Latin in the University of Michigan.

I.

The Complete Works of Vergil. With Notes and Special Dictionary.

II.

The Aeneid of Vergil. With Notes, etc. Large type.

III.

The Aeneid of Vergil. With Notes and Dictionary.

IV.

The Bucolics and Georgics, and Six Books of the Aeneid. With Notes and Dictionary. 12mo.

V.

The Bucolics and the First Eight Books of the Aeneid of Vergil. With Notes and a Vergilian Dictionary.

VI.

A Vergilian Dictionary. Embracing all the words found in the Eclogues, Georgics, and Aeneid of Vergil, with numerous references to the text verifying and illustrating the definitions.

VII.

The Tenth and Twelfth Books of Quintilian. With Notes. 12mo.

New York: D. APPLETON & CO., 1, 3, & 5 Bond Street.

D. APPLETON & CO.'S

School and College Text-Books.

LATIN, GREEK, SYRIAC, HEBREW.

LATIN.

Arnold, T. K. First and Second Latin Book and Practical Grammar. By SPENCER. 12mo. $1.10.

Arnold, T. K. Latin Prose Composition. 12mo. $1.10.

Arnold, T. K. Cornelius Nepos, with Notes. 12mo. $1.30.

Beza. Latin Testament. 12mo. $1.10.

Butler, Noble, and Sturgus, Minard. Sallust's Jugurtha and Catiline, with Notes and Vocabulary. Revised edition. 12mo. $1.50.

Crosby, W. H. Quintus Curtius Rufus. Life and Exploits of Alexander the Great. With English Notes. 12mo. $1.30.

Frieze, H. S. The Tenth and Twelfth Books of Quintilian. With Notes. 12mo. $1.30.

Frieze, H. S. The Complete Works of Vergil. With Notes and a Special Dictionary. 12mo. $2.00.

Frieze, H. S. A Vergilian Dictionary, embracing all the Words found in the Eclogues, Georgics, and Aeneid of Vergil. With numerous References to the Text, verifying and illustrating the Definitions. 12mo. $1.00.

Frieze, H. S. The Bucolics, and the First Eight Books of the Aeneid of Vergil. With Notes and a Vergilian Dictionary. 12mo. $1.50.

Frieze, H. S. The Bucolics and Georgics, and Six Books of the Aeneid, with Notes and Dictionary. 12mo.

Frieze, H. S. Vergil's Aeneid. With Notes and a Special Dictionary. New edition. $1.60.

Frieze, H. S. Vergil's Aeneid. With Notes, etc. $1.70.

Harkness's Arnold's First Latin Book. 12mo. $1.30.

Harkness's Arnold's Second Latin Book and Reader. 12mo. $1.10.

Harkness's Introductory Latin Book. 12mo. $1.10.

Harkness's Latin Reader. 12mo. $1.10.

Harkness's New Latin Reader. 12mo. $1.10.

Harkness's Latin Reader. With Exercises. 12mo. $1.30.

Harkness's Elementary Latin Grammar. 12mo. $1.10.

Harkness's Latin Grammar (Standard). Revised edition of 1881. One vol., 12mo. Half leather, $1.40.

Harkness's Latin Grammar. Edition of 1874. 12mo. $1.30.

Harkness's Preparatory Course in Latin Prose Authors, comprising Four Books of Cæsar's Gallic War, Sallust's Catiline, and Eight Orations of Cicero. With Notes, Illustrations, a Map of Gaul, and a Special Dictionary. 12mo. $1.75.

Harkness's Introduction to Latin Prose Composition. 12mo. $1.30.

Hadley, James. Greek Grammar. $1.70.

Hadley, James. Elements of Greek Grammar. $1.30.

Hadley, James. Greek Verbs. Paper, 25 cents.

Hahn, Augustus. Novum Testamentum Græce. With Notes by ROBINSON. 12mo. $1.70.

Harkness, Albert. First Greek Book. With Reader, Notes, and Vocabulary. 12mo. $1.30.

Johnson, Henry C. Homer's Iliad. First Three Books. Notes and References. $1.25.

Johnson, Herman M. Herodoti Orientalia Antiquiora. Revised edition. 12mo. $1.30.

Kendrick, Asahel C. Greek Ollendorff. 12mo. $1.50.

Kuhner, Raphael. Greek Grammar. EDWARDS and TAYLOR's Translation. Revised edition. 8vo. $1.70.

Owen, John L. Acts of the Apostles, in Greek, with Lexicon. 12mo. $1.50.

Owen, John L. Anabasis of Xenophon. With Notes and References to Crosby's, Hadley's, and Kuhner's Grammars. 12mo. $1.70.

Owen, John L. Cyropædia of Xenophon, with Notes, etc. Eighth edition. 12mo. $2.20.

Owen, John L. Greek Reader. 12mo. $1.70.

Owen, John L. Homer's Iliad, with Notes. 12mo. $1.70.

Owen, John L. Homer's Odyssey, with Notes. Tenth edition. 12mo. $1.70.

Owen, John L. Thucydides, with Notes, Map, etc. 12mo. $2.20.

Robbins's Memorabilia of Xenophon, with Notes. Revised edition. 12mo. $1.70.

Silber, William B. Progressive Lessons in Greek. With Notes and References to the Grammars of Sophocles, Hadley, and Crosby; also, Vocabulary and Epitome of Greek Grammar, for Beginners. 12mo. $1.10.

Smead, M. J. The Antigone of Sophocles, with Notes. 12mo. $1.50.

Smead, M. J. The I, II, III Philippics of Demosthenes, with Historical Introductions, and Notes. New enlarged edition. 12mo. $1.30.

Tyler, W. S. Plato's Apology and Crito, with Notes. 12mo. $1.30.

Tyler and Hackett. Plutarch on the Delay of the Deity in Punishing the Wicked, with Notes. 12mo. $1.30.

Whiton, John M. First Lessons in Greek: the Beginner's Companion to Hadley's Grammar. 12mo. $1.30.

Uhlemann. Syriac Grammar. Translated from the German by ENOCH HUTCHINSON. With a Course of Exercises in Syriac Grammar, a Chrestomathy, and brief Lexicon, prepared by the Translator. Second edition, with Corrections and Additions. 8vo. $4.40.

Gesenius. Hebrew Grammar. Edited by RODIGER. Translated from the last (the 17th) German edition by CONANT. With an Index. 8vo. $2.60.

CLASSICAL WRITERS.

Edited by JOHN RICHARD GREEN, M. A., LL. D.

16mo, flexible cloth . . . . . 60 cents each.

MILTON. By Stopford A. Brooke.

"The life is accompanied by careful synopses of Milton's prose and poetical works, and by scholarly estimates and criticisms of them. Arranged in brief paragraphs, and clothed in a simple and perspicuous style, the volume introduces the pupil directly to the author it describes, and not only familiarizes him with his method of composition, but with his exquisite fancies and lofty conceptions, and enables him to see practically and intelligently what an expressive and sonorous instrument our tongue is in the hands of one of its mightiest masters."—*Harper's Magazine.*

LIVY. By the Rev. W. W. Capes, M. A.

"Well deserves attentive study on many accounts, especially for the variety of its theme and the concise perspicuity of its treatment."—*London Saturday Review.*

VERGIL. By Professor Nettleship.

"The information is all sound and good, and no such hand-book has before been within the reach of the young student. Any one who wishes to read Vergil intelligently, and not merely to cram so many books of the ' Æneid ' for an examiation, should buy Professor Nettleship's scholarly monograph."—*London Athenæum.*

EURIPIDES. By Professor Mahaffy.

"A better book on the subject than has previously been written in English. He is scholarly and not pedantic, appreciative and yet just."—*London Academy.*

SOPHOCLES. By Professor L. Campbell.

"We are not close without again recommending the little book to all lovers of Sophocles, as an able and eloquent picture of the life and work of one of the greatest dramatic writers the world has ever seen."—*London Athenæum.*

DEMOSTHENES. By S. H. Butcher, Fellow of University College, Oxford.

"This is an admirable little book. Mr. Butcher has brought his finished scholarship to bear on a difficult but most interesting chapter of Greek literary history ; . . . the primer is as fresh and attractive in form as it is ripe in learning and thorough in method."—*The Academy.*

Other volumes to follow.

New York: D. APPLETON & CO., 1, 3, & 5 Bond Street.

APPLETONS' READERS.

SOME DISTINGUISHING FEATURES.

Modern Methods made easy.—Education is a progressive science. Methods of the last century must be discarded. The question "How shall we teach reading?" is fully answered in these books, and teachers who have adopted and followed this method have greatly improved their schools.

Word and Phonic Method.—By taking at first words with which the child is quite familiar, and which contain sounds easily distinguished and continually recurring, both teacher and pupil will find the sounds a great help in reading new words as well as in acquiring a distinct articulation.

Spelling.—Words selected from the lessons are given for spelling with each piece, thus affording the best opportunity for oral and written spelling-lessons as well as for definitions. In the Third, Fourth, and Fifth Readers, graded exercises in spelling analysis, together with daily lessons of words often misspelled or mispronounced, are placed in the Appendix for constant study. With these Readers no "Speller" will be needed.

Illustrations.—The illustrations are beautiful and attractive, and are well adapted to serve as a basis for the language and thought lessons that are so prominent in these books.

Helps for Teachers.—Teachers will find in these books a simple plan that will greatly aid them; while the notes, questions, and suggestions will help the teacher to impart the most instruction and the best culture, which makes the reading-lesson something more than a mere naming of words.

Oral Reading.—Proper oral expression depends on the sense. Get the sense of each extract and the correct oral expression will be an easy matter. This is the key-note to Professor Bailey's excellent lessons on accent, emphasis, inflection, and general vocal expression, that are placed as reading-lessons in the Third, Fourth, and Fifth Readers.

Selections.—The selections embrace gems of literature from leading authors. No other readers include such a wide range of thought, showing from the simple stories for children in the earlier books, to the extracts from the best authors in the Fourth and Fifth, unity of design and a just appreciation of the needs of our schools.

Great Success.—Since the publication of these Readers, their sale has averaged nearly a million a year, which is unprecedented in the sale of school-books.

Endorsements.—These Readers have received the endorsement of nearly every educator of note in the United States, but the best proof of their merits is found in the great improvement manifested everywhere they are used.

D. APPLETON & CO., Publishers,
New York, Boston, Chicago, and San Francisco.